COMMENTATIO
De
HONORATISSIMO
ORDINE MILITARI
de
BALNEO,
Cujus
Origo, Progressus, Restauratio, Regularis Forma,
Summaque Dignitas exponuntur,
ut &
HONORATISSIMORUM EQUITUM,
Variis illorum INDICI adpositis TABULIS,
NOMINA, TITULI, & INSIGNIA
æri incisa, exhibentur.
Accedunt
STATUTA
Idiomate Anglico & Latine versa,
Opera

JUSTI CHRISTOPH. DITHMARI,
Juris Nat. & Gent. Histor. atque Oeconomico-Cameralium in Academia
Regia Viadr. Prof. Publ. Societ. Scient. Berol. Sod.

FRANCOFURTI ad VIADRUM,
Impensis JOHANNIS GODOFREDI CONRADI 1729.

COMMENTATIO
De
HONORATISSIMO
ORDINE MILITARI
de
BALNEO.
Cujus
Origo, Progressus, Reformatio, Regularis Forma,
Summique Dignitas explicantur,
ac de
HONORATISSIMORUM MUTUIS,
Variis illorum INDICI aptatis TABULIS,
NOMINA, TITULI, & INSIGNIA
ari incisa, exhibentur.
Accedunt
STATUTA
Italorum Antiquo & Latine versa,
Opera
JUSTI CHRISTOPH. DITTMARI
Juris Nat. & Gent. Hiftor. atque Oeconomico-Cameralium in Academia
Regia Viadr. Prof. Publ. Societ. Scient. Berol. Soc.

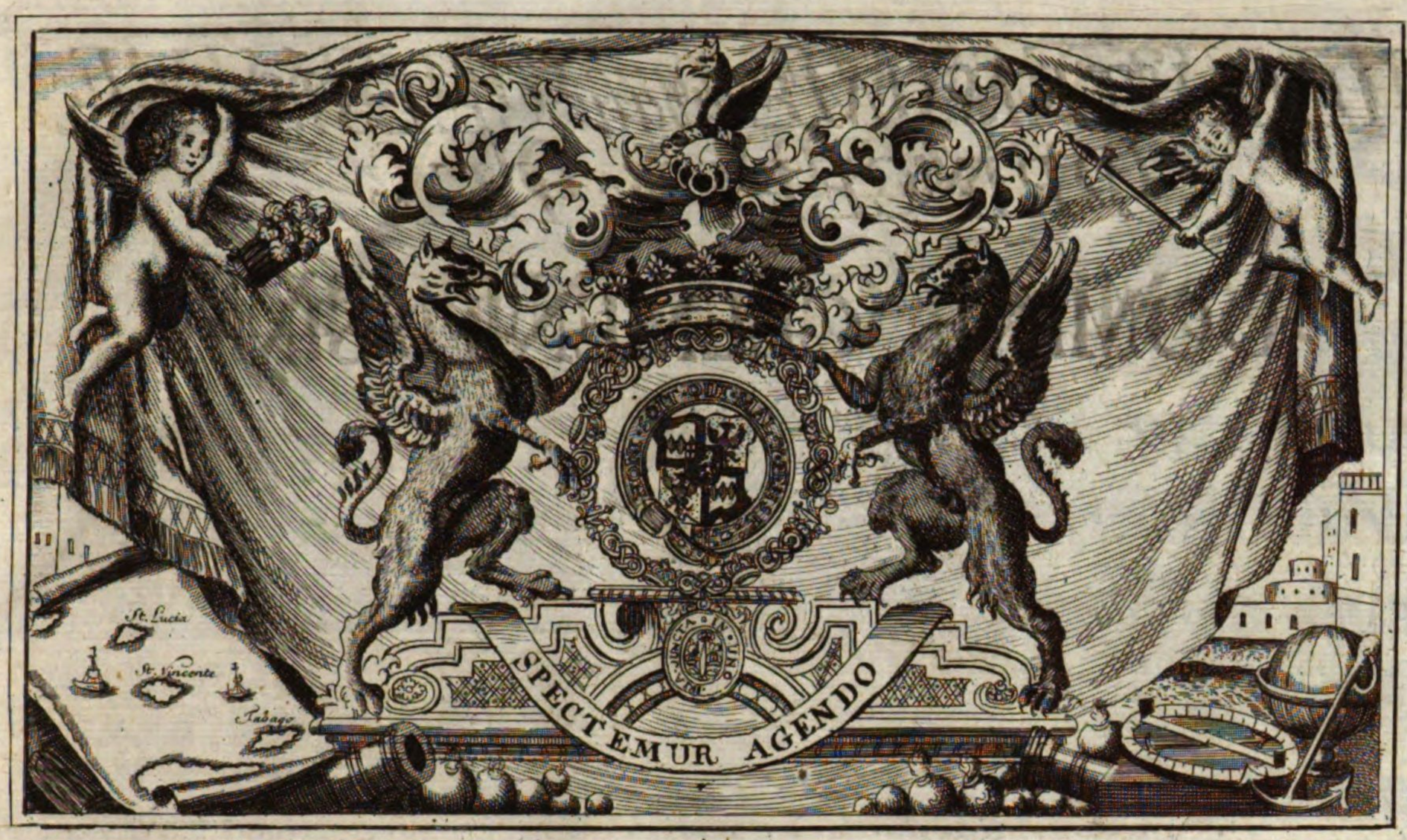
BIBLIOTHECA
REGIA
MONACENSIS

Imperatis JOHANNIS GODOFREDI CONRADI

PRÆFATIO
AD
Benevolum Lectorem.

Etsi multa illustris Argumenti, de quo nunc egimus, commendatione TE morari nolim, quod Dignitas ac Præstantia ejus ex ipso hoc opusculo satis undequaque eluceat; Est tamen, ut instituti nostri occasionem, & quæ præstita à nobis sint, paucis Tibi exponamus. Quum nempe ante tres, & quod excurrit, annos MAGNÆ BRITANNIÆ REX, GEORGIUS I. Glorioſisſimæ Memoriæ, Antiquisſimum ORDINEM de BALNEO restauraret, ac multi ejus Ordinis Notitiam sibi tradi vehementer cuperent, Originem & Progressum illius Dissertatione quadam describere tum constituebam, tantoque magis operæ pretium me facturum censebam, quod Rei Equestris Scriptores illum Ordinem valde leviter attigerint, atque circa Originem ejus admodum inter se discreparent. Ex quo autem Generosisſimum Virum, JOHANNEM ANSTISIUM, Nobilisſimi Ordinis Perisſcelidis Principalem Regem Armorum, idem jam egisse intelligebam, filum statim abrupi, quod ab Amplisſimo illo Viro, in tali præcipue argumento, nihil nisi maxime elaboratum exspectandum esse, *Introductio in Historiam Ordinis Perisſcelidis*, ab ipso edita, satis abunde præsagiebat; Cœpto quoque penitus desistendum duxi, postquam Vir ille Generosisſimus, de Consilio meo per Amicos certior factus, Libri sui, sub Titulo *Observations Introductory to an Historical Essay upon the Order of the Bath* editi, exemplum, quo nomine Ipsi maximas ago gratias, mihi transmisisset. Summa enim cum voluptate isto libro perlecto, tam solidè ejus argumentum excussum vidi, ut, quod illi addi posset, vix succurreret. Monitus tamen non ita pridem, ut telam, quam cœpissem, absolverem, STATUTIS quoque Honoratisſimi Ordinis de Balneo una cum illius Equitum INSIGNIBUS, Summo CELSISSIMI DUCIS de MONTAGU Favore, mecum communicatis, calamum tandem resumsi, ab illis saltem, qui Linguam Anglicam ignorant, gratiam me initurum ratus. Hac ergo, quam Tibi, B. L. siltimus, de Honoratisſimo illo Ordine COMMENTATIONE non Originem solum & Progressum ejus, sed & Restaurationem, atque Formam Regularem, à *Divo* RESTAURATORE ipsi præscri-

præſcriptam, aliaque, quorum CONSPECTUS huic libro præmiſſus eſt, expoſuimus. Neque Antiquos tantum, ſed & Primos reſtaurati illius Ordinis Equites, è Principibus Procerum Angliæ Familiis electos, juxta INDICEM illorum, Lingua Gallica nobiſcum communicatum, recenſuimus, variis inſuper adjectis TABULIS, quibus horum Equitum pariter ac illorum Armigerorum INSIGNIA, æri inciſa, repræſentantur. His accedunt ejusdem Ordinis STATUTA Anglico, quo publicata ſunt, ſermone, atq; Latinè verſa, quam per nonnullos Linguæ Anglicæ Idiotiſmos fieri potuit, accurate. Habent enim Angli atque hæc Statuta quædam vocabula, quæ à Latinis difficulter exprimuntur, cujuſmodi ſunt *Lord*, *Noble*, *Gentleman*, quorum primum quidem voce *Dominus* vulgo ſolet verti, proprie autem illis Angliæ Proceribus tantum tribuitur, qui Jure Suffragii in Superioris Parliamenti Conſeſſu gaudent; alterum quoque valdè differt à Latinorum *Nobilis*, atque Anglis Regni ſolum Pares, eosdemque, quos vocabulum *Lord*, denotat; ultimum denique *Gentleman*, à Gallorum *Gentilhomme*, illis tribuitur, qui titulo carent, atque à Nobilibus valde diverſi ſunt, ut SELDENUS de *Tit. Hon.* & alii, qui *Notitias M. Britanniæ* ediderunt, pluribus Te B. L. edocere poterunt. Vocabulum ergo *Lord* aliorum exemplo nonnumquam voce *Dominus* reddidimus, ſæpe etiam retinuimus; Vocem *Nobilis* ſenſu Anglorum accipimus; Vocabulum vero *Gentleman* per *Generoſum* vertimus. FIGURA in fronte hujus libri Sereniſſimum Principem Regium, WILHELMUM, Primum ac Principalem Ordinis de Balneo Equitem, Ornatu ſuo Equeſtri repræſentat, Galero cum Plumis erectis ad latus ſepoſito. Quæ in hujus libri titulo apparet, atque Reſtaurati Ordinis Diplomati eſt præfixa, Regis Magnæ Britanniæ, *Divi* GEORGII I. Effigiem, atque varia Ordinis Symbola continet; Reliquæ nonnullas Inaugurationis Equitum de Balneo ceremonias referunt. Poſt Rerum præcipuarum INDICEM in fine hujus libri SCHEMA Splendidi Operis, quod in Anglia paratur, atque Equitum de Balneo ſolemnem Inaugurationem, die 17. Junii 1725. factam, figuris æri inciſis viginti Tabulis repræſentabit, in eorum gratiam, qui ad Magnificentiam illius Solemnitatis penitius cognoſcendam, ejus Operis exempla ſibi comparare velint, adjecimus. Ceterum ſicubi in Titulis vel alias à nobis erratum fuerit, id moniti alii tempori corrigendum reſervamus. Quæ vero nunc adhuc vel monenda vel emendanda ſunt, Rerum præcipuarum Indici hujus Opuſculi ſubjunximus. Vale, Dabam Francofurti propter Viadrum ipſis Calendis Martii M DCC XXIX.



ILLUSTRISSIMO atque CELSISSIMO
PRINCIPI ac DOMINO,

DOMINO JOHANNI,

DUCI DE MONTAGU, MARCHIONI DE MONTHERMER, COMITI DE MONTAGU, VICECOMITI DE MONTHERMER, BARONI MONTAGU DE BOUGHTON,
REI VESTIARIÆ REGIÆ,
ET
PROVINCIARUM NORTHAMTON. ET WARWICENSIS
SUMMO PRÆFECTO,
INSULARUM S. LUCIÆ ET S. VINCENTII IN AMERICA
DOMINO ET CAPITANEO GENERALI,
NOBILISSIMI ORDINIS PERISCELIDIS EQUITI
atque
HONORATISSIMI ORDINIS DE BALNEO
MAGNO MAGISTRO,
DOMINO SUO
OMNI OBSEQUIO COLENDO.

ILLUSTRISSIME atque CELSISSIME
PRINCEPS ac DUX,

DOMINE CLEMENTISSIME.

Quod Celsissimo Nomini Tuo hunc Librum consecrare, atque gravissimas, quibus pro Regni Magnæ Britanniæ Salute districtus es, occupationes Tuas interpellare, homo peregrinus ausus fuerim, imprudentissimum atque temerarium facinus merito reputari posset, nisi Officii mei Religione id a me postulari arbitra-

arbitratus fuiſſem. Neque enim, ut illud mihi ſumſerim, me tantum commovit Celebratiſſimus TUUS in Rem Literariam ejusque Cultores Favor, ſed & Libri hujus Argumentum id plane exigere mihi viſum fuit. Cum enim de Rebus Antiquiſſimi ORDINIS MILITARIS de BALNEO hoc libro agere ſuſceperim, TUO quoque, CELSISSIME PRINCEPS, qui MAGNUM illius Ordinis MAGISTERIUM ſplendidiſſime geris, Arbitrio atque Patrocinio eum ſubjiciendum putavi, omne punctum me tuliſſe ratus, modo hoc meum Inſtitutum TIBI non penitus diſplicuerit. Accedit, quod omne, quicquid hoc Opuſculum pretii habet, TIBI, CELSISSIME PRINCEPS, acceptum ſit ferendum, quippe CUJUS ſingulari in me Gratia factum, ut, quæ potiſſimum hunc Librum exornant, quam benevole mecum fuerint communicata. Uti ergo maximi iſtius Beneficii nomine TIBI, CELSISSIME

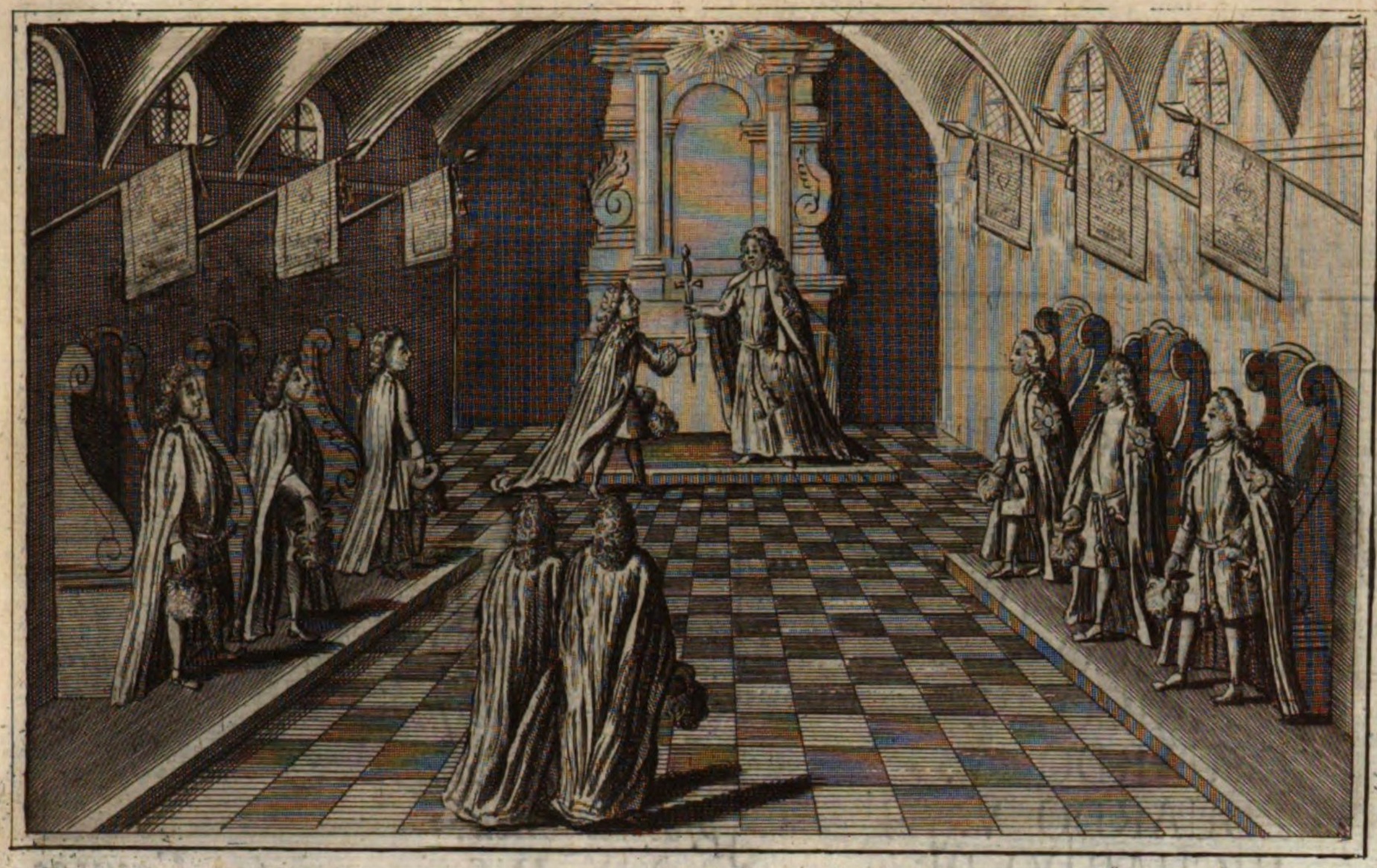
PRIN-

PRINCEPS, demisſisſima reverentia gratias perſolvo, ita, ut hoc, quicquid eſt, opuſculi Propitia TUTELA TUA digneris, atque in animi mei TIBI devotiſſimi Documentum clementiſſime accipias, ſupplex oro, Deum optimum Maximum, ut TE, CELSISSIME PRINCEPS, in multos annos ſoſpitem, atque Illuſtriſſimam DOMUM TUAM in ſeram Poſteritatem quam florentiſſimam eſſe ſinat, ex interiori animi mei ſententia veneratus.

ILLUSTRISSIMI atque CELSISSIMI
NOMINIS TUI

Devotisſimus Cultor

JUST. CHRISTOPH. DITHMAR.



COMMENTATIONIS de ORDINE de BALNEO

Conſpectus.

I. *ORdinum Equeſtrium ſive Militarium ratio & præſtantia.*

II. *Origo illorum a Germanis arceſſita.*

III. *Inſtituti illius ad alios populos propagatio, atque de ſingulorum Ordinibus Militaribus ſummatim.*

IV. *De Anglorum Ordinibus* TABULÆ ROTUNDÆ, PERISCELIDIS *&* *de* BALNEO.

V. *Variæ de Origine* ORDINIS *de* BALNEO *ſententiæ.*

VI. *Generoſiſſimi Viri* JOH. ANSTISII *ſententia confirmatur, adducto Inaugurationis Equeſtris Exemplo ſub Angliæ Regibus* SAXONICIS,

VII. *Progreſſus ejus Rei ſub* NORMANNICÆ *Stirpis Regibo.*

VIII. *Sub Regibus Familiæ* PLANTAGENETICÆ.

HENRICO II.
JOHANNE I.
EDUARDO I.
EDUARDO II.
EDUARDO III.

RI-

RICHARDO II.
IX. *Sub* LANCASTRICÆ & EBORACENSIS *ſtirpis Regibus;*
HENRICO IV.
HENRICO V.
HENRICO VI.
EDUARDO IV.
EDUARDO V.
RICHARDO III.
X. *Sub* TUDORENSIS *Familiæ Regibus atque Reginis.*
HENRICO VII.
HENRICO VIII.
EDUARDO VI.
MARIA
ELISABETHA.
XI. *Sub* STUARTICÆ *Familiæ Regibus.*
JACOBO I.
CAROLO I.
CAROLO II.
XII. *Reſtauratio Ordinis de Balneo, ejusque in Regularem Ordinem mutatio ſub Primo* HANOVERANÆ *Familiæ Rege, Divo* GEORGIO I.
XIII. *De Ordinis illius Nomine.*
XIV. *De Supremo ejus Domino, Magno Magiſtro, atque Novis Equitibus, cum illorum Indice atque Inſignibus Gentilitiis æri inciſis.*
XV. *De Scutariis* (*Gallis* Ecuyers, *Anglis* Esquiers) *ſive Armigeris.*
XVI. *De Officialibus.*
XVII. *De Equitum Electione atque Requiſitis.*
XVIII. *Tempus & modus ipſos eligendi.*
XIX. *Diſcrimen inter Equites* Banerettos *&* Bacalarios. *Gryphii de illis error.*
XX. *De Inauguratione Equitum, ejusque Ceremoniis antiquis ex Charta & Tabula vetuſta.*
XXI. *Similes Equites creandi ritus apud Hiſpanos, Gallos, & Italos.*
XXII. *Ceremoniæ hodie uſitatæ.*
XXIII. *Ornatus & Inſignia Equitum.*
XXIV. *De Diebus illorum Feſtis & Capitulis.*
XXV. *De Honoribus, qui vivis & defunctis Equitibus habentur.*
XXVI. *De Exauctoratione Equitum.*
XXVII. *De Summa Ordinis Dignitate.*

I. Ordi-

I.

Rdinum Militarium atque Equeſtrium nomine Illuſtres intelligi Societates, quas Viri Nobili genere orti Religionis, Juſtitiæ atque Reipublicæ tuendæ cauſa ſub Principum ſuorum Auſpiciis conſtituunt, uti vulgo conſtat, ita nihil iſto inſtituto præclarius eſt atque illuſtrius. Quemadmodum enim cujusque Boni Civis officium in eo præcipue verſatur, ut ſe ſuaque omnia ad communem ſalutem componat, ita de Republica optime inprimis merentur, qui ejus conſervationi ſolemni ratione ſe conſecrant, atque devovent. Veteres ſane omnis Meriti atque Dignitatis fundamentum in officiis erga Rempublicam poſitum atque alios aliis eo tantum, quo plus ad Publicum emolumentum contulerint, Nobiliores eſſe, optima ratione (*a*) crediderunt.

II. Miſſis vero, qui Rei Equeſtris Originem vel ab (*b*) Ægyptiis, vel a Romanis, horumque ſive Ordine (*c*) Equeſtri, ſive præmiis (*d*) quibus ob res fortiter geſtas conſpicuos ornarunt; ſive more Principum filios toga Virili (*e*) inaugurandi; ſive denique ſervos per vindictam (*f*) manumittendi ritu derivant; Germanos potius, Gentem Bellicoſiſſimam præclari

iſtius uſus Bellicos ſolum elegerat, ita qui originem ex illis ſumſit *Ordo Equeſtris*, non tam *Militarem* quam *Civilem* rationem habuit, *Senatorio* quippe & *Plebejo* oppoſitus, annulique inſignibus & aliis rebus ab utroque illorum diſtinctus, ex quo *Judicia* ad ſe traxerat, ut plurib. oſtendit *CHRIST. WILH. EYBENIUS Diſſ. de Ordine Equeſtri Vet. Rom.* ſimul cum patris ipſius Scriptis p. 877. edita.

(*a*) Eam ex vetuſtiſſima Ægyptiorum traditione Deorum gentilium originem, *atque Deos fuiſſe homines mortales, ſed propter ſapientiam & publica in homines beneficia immortalitate potitos eſſe, DIOD. SIC. Bibl. Hiſt.* lib. 1. 13. tradit, eoque *ad tuendam Rempublicam CIC.* in *Somnio Scipionis.* C. 3. ſic excitat: *Omnibus, qui patriam conſervaverint, adjuverint, auxerint, certum eſſe in cœlo definitum locum, ubi beati ævo ſempiterno fruantur,* & mox: *Certatim Rectores & Conſervatores hinc profecti, huc revertuntur.*

(*b*) Ita BERNH. JUSTINIANI in *Hiſt. Chron. Ordin. Equeſtr.* contendit, quod *Pharao annulum è manu ſua detractum indiderit in manum Joſephi, juſſeritque ipſum indui veſtibus Xylinis & torquem aureum collo ejus appoſuerit. GENES. XLI. 24.* Aſt non minus ineptè, quam ſi Mardochæum propter ſimilem fere ipſi honorem habitum, ut ESTHERÆ C. VII. 2. refertur, ab Ahasvero Equitem creatum fuiſſe diceres.

(*c*) Uti enim Romulus trecentos illos Equites, qui *Celeres* quoque appellati fuerunt, ad cuſtodiam corporis, aliosque

(*d*) *Bullis* videlicet ſive globis aureis atque concavis; item *Cingulo* bullis aliisque ornamentis inſignito; *Armillis, Haſtis puris, Añulis, Torquibus* & aliis præmiis, de quib. vid. PLIN. L. VII. 28. XXXIII. 1. MACROB. *Saturn.* l. 1. 6. LIPSIUS de *Milit. Rom.* L. V.

(*e*) Principum nempe filii quando *Togam Virilem* ſumebant, parmis & haſtis donabantur, Caji & Lucii Cæſarum exemplo, de quo DIO CASS. lib. L. V. *Corpora,* ait, *Caji & Lucii Cæſarum à Tribunis militum Romam apportata ſunt, parmæque & haſtæ, quas aureas ab equitibus acceperant in curia ſuſpenſæ ſunt.* vid. quoque TACIT. *An-*

iſtius inſtituti Auctores eſſe, vero longe ſimilius eſt, quippe apud quos Armis non ſolum traditis Juvenes emancipabantur, Militiaque ſimul (*g*) inaugurabantur, ſed & multi CATTORUM jam olim Militarem quendam Ordinem (*h*) conſtituerunt, quorum Exemplum SAXONES (*i*) aliique populi imitati fuerunt.

nal. l. 1. & nummus, qui apud JACOB. de BIE in *Numism. Aureis Tab. II.* iſtum ritum egregie exprimit atque parte priori faciem Auguſti cum inſcriptione CÆSAR AUGUSTUS D. F. PATER PATRIÆ, averſa autem Caji & Lucii effigies refert cum *parmis* & *ſcutis*, atque inſcriptione C. L. CÆS. AUG. F. COSS. DESIGN. PRINC. JUVENTUTIS.

(*f*) Virga nimirum, cui *vindictæ* nomen à Vindicio ſervo, qui Brutorum aliorumque conjurationem ad Senatum detulerat & in præmium Libertatem atque Civitatem nactus erat, inditum, ſervi caput coram Conſule, Prætore vel Procoſſ. lictor percutiebat, eodemque in gyrum circumacto, inflictaque alapa verba addebat: *Hunc hominem liberum eſſe volo*, ut pluribus exponit ANTON FABER. *Semeſtr. lib. ult.* Ab hoc ergo more DU FRESN. quoque v. *Alapa militaris* ritum, qui Tyronis, ad militarem dignitatem promovendi, collo aut humeris gladio infligitur, derivandum putat, ſed merito illam ſententiam GEORG. BEYERUS *Specim. Jur. Germ.* l. 1. C. 3. §. 16. aliique rejiciunt. Germani ſaltem, ut alia taceam, militari inauguratione, ut ex ſequentibus patebit, uſi fuerunt, antequum cum Romanis commercium habere cœperunt.

(*g*) Ita enim TACITUS de M. G. C. XIII. *Nihil autem publicæ neque privatæ rei niſi armati agunt; ſed arma ſumere non ante cuiquam moris quam Civitas ſuffecturum probaverit. Tum in ipſo Concilio vel Principum aliquis vel pater vel propinquus ſcuto frameaque Juvenem ornant. Hæc apud illos toga, hic primus Juventæ honos. Ante hoc domus pars videntur, mox Reipublicæ.* Hoc modo itaque Juventus

III.

nonſolum Patria poteſtate exibat, ſed & *Militia* ſimul, in qua apud veteres Germanos privata & publica vita conſiſtebat, inaugurabatur. Unde procul dubio mos tam tyrones *Cingulo militari* accingendi, medio ævo frequentiſſimo, quam *Equites creandi* ritus ortus fuit, tantoque minus AUCTORI *Obſervat. 2. T. II. Obſervat. Select.* qua Romanis hunc ritum acceptum ferendum eſſe contendit, adſtipulari poſſumus, quod Tacitus *Togæ*, qua juventus apud Romanos virili ætate initiabatur, illum opponat; qua de re vide, quæ plur. diſſervimus in *Comment.* noſtro ad Taciti librum de M. G.

(*h*) Qua de re IDEM Scriptor citato libro Cap. XXXI. *Et*, inquit, *aliis Germanorum populis uſurpatum rara & privata cujusque audentia, apud CATTOS in conſenſum vertit, ut primum adoleverint*, crinem barbamq; *ſummittere, nec niſi hoſte cæſo exvere votivum obligatumque virtuti oris habitum - - - Fortiſſimus quisque ferreum inſuper annulum (ignominioſum id genti) veluti vinculum geſtat, donec ſe cæde hoſtis abſolvat. PLURIMIS Cattorum hic placet habitus. Jamque canent inſignes & hoſtibus ſimul ſuisque monſtrati. Omnium penes hos initia pugnarum. Hæc* prima *ſemper* acies, *viſu nova. Nam ne in pace quidem vultu mitiore manſueſcunt. Nulli domus aut ager aut aliqua cura; prout ad quemque venere aluntur prodigi alieni, contemptores ſui, donec exſanguis ſenectus tam duræ virtuti impares faciat.* Hæc non de omnibus Cattis, ſed *Militari* inter eos *Societate* intelligenda eſſe, ſatis clare Tacitus indicat, quod de *plurimis* Cattorum *primaque acie* iſta referat. Habes quoque votiva inſignia, *crinem barbamque* ſummiſſa, *ferreum annulum*, ut alia taceam, quæ Ordinem quendam Eque-

III. Uti vero ex illis Rei Militaris initiis factum, ut progressu temporis variæ (*k*) apud Germanos Ordines Equestres instituti fuerint, ita, ex quo illorum Coloniæ omnes fere Europæ Regiones occuparunt, mos inaugurandi milites atque Equestres instituendi Societates ad Gallos (*l*) aliosque populos fuit propagatus.

strem referunt. Vide etiam quæ ad illum locum jam notavimus.

(*i*) P. DIACONUS *Hist. Longob.* l. I. C. 3. *sex*, inquit, *millia Saxonum, quæ bello superfuerunt*, devoverunt *se*, *neque* barbam *neque* capillos *rasuros, nisi de Suevis hostibus ulciscerentur.* De Longobardis vero disertius IDEM Scriptor L. I. C. 15. *Cumque*, ait, *peracta victoria ad sedes proprias remeassent, Regi suo Audoino suggesserunt, ut ei Alboinus conviva fieret, cujus virtute in prœlio virtutem cœpissent, ut sicut in patris periculo ita & in convivio communis esset. Quibus Audoinus* respondit, *se hoc facere minime posse, ne ritum gentis infringeret. SCITIS ENIM*, inquit, *non esse apud nos consuetudinem, ut Regis filius cum patre prandeat, nisi prius à* Rege *gentis* arma *susceperit.* De eodem modo per arma adoptandi simul & in militarem Ordinem cooptandi apud Gothos quoque recepto ipse THEODORICUS Rex apud CASSIODORUM *var. Ep.* I. 4. 2. ad Herulorum Regem *per arma*, scribit, *fieri posse filium*, grande *inter gentes constat esse* præconium, *quia non est dignus adoptari, nisi qui fortissimus meretur agnosci. Quanto vinculo animi obligantur extranei & tanta in hoc actu vis est, ut prius se velint mori, quam aliquid asperum patribus videatur infligi & ideo more gentium & conditione virili filium te præsenti munere procreamus, ut competenter per ARMA nascaris, qui bellicosus esse dignosceris. Damus tibi* equos, enses, clypeos *& reliqua instrumenta bellorum.* A Francis quoque, ut Regias taceam inaugurationes & adoptiones per *hastas* & *scuta* apud ipsos factas, de quibus ad Taciti librum *cit. cap.* egimus, milites per *arma* atque *colaphum* creatos fuisse, ex concessæ Frisiis à Carolo M. libertatis Diplomate apud GOLDAST. *Polit. Imp.* p. 1. 2. 3. apparet, quippe quo Imperator iste *Insuper*, ait, *statuimus, ut, si qui ex ipsis sustentationem habuerint vel militare voluerint, dicta Potestas (Frisiorum Princeps) eis* glandium circumcingat *& dato eisdem, sicut* consuetudinis est, *manu* colapho, *sic milites faciat, eisdemq; firmiter injungendo præcipiat, ut deinceps* more militum *sacri Imperii aut regni Francici armati incedant.* Licet n. istud Diploma à CONRINGIO *de orig. Jur. Germ.* C. XIII. & ipso GOLDASTO *loc. cit.* non sine causa fabulosum & commentitium habeatur, attamen, quæ de inauguratione militari ibidem moris esse dicuntur, aliunde quoque constant. Etenim Carolus M. si ALBERICO in *Chron.* ad. an. 790. fides habenda, ipse nonsolum *habitu militiæ* fuit ornatus; sed & filium suum Ludovicum *jam appellentem adolescentiæ sempora Ravesburgi ENSE accinxit* teste AUCTORE *vitæ* Ludovici apud Pith. p. 343. Qua de re vide quoq; pluribus Du FRESNIUM in dissert. 22. ad *Joinvillam* & PITHOEUM *Adverss.* l. 1. c. 1.

(*k*) *S. Johannis* puta, *Marianorum s. Teutonicorum, Templariorum Ensiferrorum*, de quibus si placet consulas, qui ex professo de illis scripserunt veteres & recentiores Scriptores, in Præfat. ad *Hist. Ord. Joh.* a nobis recensitos.

(*l*) Postquam nempe Franci, Germaniæ populi, Galliam sibi subjecerunt, inaugurationes nonsolum militares atque solennes Ludos Equestres, vulgo *Torneamenta*, sed & varias Societates Militares ibi fuisse institutas, Galliæ insignis Scriptor P. DANIEL *Histoire de la Milice Francoise* l. 3. c. 4. innuit. Inprimis vero memorabile est, quod idem p. 82. ex Labourerii *Historia* CAROLI VI de Equitibus, quos Rex ille creavit, refert: *Ils*

IV. Apud Britannos quidem Rex ipſorum ARTHURUS, Rebus geſtis (*m*) celeberrimus, Ordinem Equeſtrem, TABULÆ ROTUNDÆ nomine, Seculo poſt N.C. ſexto jam inſtituiſſe fertur, creatis ut ajunt, Viginti quatuor Equitibus, qui, ne ex ambitione lis inter eos oriretur, Menſæ Orbiculari, in Caſtro Vintonienſi adhuc conſpicuæ, accumbere conſueverint; aſt, cum hæc ipſis Rerum Britannicarum Scriptoribus fabuloſa (*n*) reputentur, orta forte rum Arthuri deſignat HENR. HUNTINGD. *hiſt.* l. 2. Creditum fuiſſe Arthurum haud obiiſſe, ſed rediturum in Britanniam, refert GUILIELMUS NEUBRIG. in Hiſt. ſuæ proœmio; Imo in Bohemia ad. 1445. viſum fuiſſe ſcribunt HAGECIUS in *Hiſt. Bohemiæ* C. I. & BOH. BALB. *Miſcell. Regni Bohem.* Dec. I. l. 3. C. 16. §. 5. Quæ ampliſſimam fabulandi materiam dederunt FAM. STRADÆ in *Proluſ. Acad. II.* ipſisque Iudæis, quorum Rhytmos in Arthurum vide apud Wagenſeilium libro Germanice ſcripto de arte *Judæorum Germanice ſcribendi*; meritò verò Langhornius *multa*, loc. cit. addit, *me in eam ſententiam inducunt, ut putem hæc potius in anilibus quam annalibus numeranda: verum ut ut res eſt, Arthurus fuit Rex animo invicto, ſummaque virtute & rerum geſtarum gloria inſignis.* BUCHANANUS quoque *Rer. Scotar.* L. v. *Non*, inquit, *ignoro quæ de vita & morte Arthuri à multis fabuloſè tradantur, ſed indignæ relatu ſunt & viri Clariſſimi rebus geſtis tenebras offundunt. Nam dum tam aſſeveranter mendacia affirmantur ſæpe veritas in dubium vocatur. Fuit certè Vir Magnus & ſingulari fortitudine & caritate in patriam vel dum ſuos à ſervitute liberat vel cultum Dei ſincerum revocat vel vitiatum reſtituit.*

avoient l' ecu verd, pendu au col avec la deviſe gravée en or du Roy DES CATTES, addita in margine hac nota: *les CATTES etoient une partie des anciens François au dela de Rhin.* Quibus procul dubio innuere voluit, ritum Equites creandi à Cattis apud Germanos originem ducere & à Francis in Galliam fuiſſe translatum; quod illa, quæ *ſupra* §. 11. de Cattis diximus, egregie confirmat. De Ordinibus vero Equeſtribus apud Gallos æque ac alios populos vide, qui illos deſcripſerunt.

(*m*) De quibus JOH. LESLÆUS de *Reb. geſt. Scot.* p. 139. *ſcribunt*, ait, *Arthurum Regem per hæc tempora Scotiam, Hiberniam, Islandiam, Finmarchiam, Orchades Inſulas, Daniam, Sueciam, Livoniam, Lithuaniam, Pruſſiam, Pomeraniam, Gothiam, Hollandiam, Zeelandiam, Brabantiam Flandriam, Morinum, Armoricam, Britanniam, totam denique Galliam vi expugnaſſe, incolas gentiumque Duces vectigales feciſſe. Inde (ut Græcorum, Perſarum, Medorum aliorumque Reges ab eo victos præteream) Lucium Romanum Imperatorem ſub jugum miſiſſe.* DANIEL LANGHORN *in Chron. Reg. Angl. de eodem, nunc*, ſcribit, *ad Arthuri tempora accedimus, de quo principe mira eſt autorum diſcrepantia; dum illum alii ſupra Auguſtiſſimos gentium triumphatores evehere, alii è rerum natura explodunt. Illum, illiusque duodecim victorias Herculi ejusque duodecim laboribus æquiparant Britanni, eademque de Arthurio naſcente quæ de Hercule in comœdia Plautus, Hiſt. Britannicæ auctor commentus eſt, Regem Utherum Pendraconem ejusque ſatellitem Ulfinum Jovi ac Mercurio, Igernam Alcmenæ, Gorlœm & ejus ſatellitem Amphytruoni joſiæque aſſimilans.* Loca duodecim prælio-

(*n*) JOHANNES LESLÆUS loc. cit. rem totam his verb. refert. *Hunc Arthurum ſcribunt quatuor ſupra viginta Athletas Equeſtris Ordinis (quod rei bellicæ gloria præſtabant) inſignibus nobilitaſſe ac rei militaris ſcientia gloriæque magnitudine pares pari omnes amore complexum fuiſſe. Cum omnes ſimul accumberent, ne quis forte ſe primo in loco conſtitutum glorioſe prædicaret aut ad infimum locum deturbatum invidè cogitaret,* MENSAM ROTUN-

forte ex feſtivitate Tabulæ Rotundæ Gallis (*o*) olim uſitata, atque ab EDUARDO I. Rege Angliæ quoque (*p*) celebrata, Saxones potius Inaugurationes Militares atque Ordinum Equeſtrium primordia in Britanniam intuliſe, multo

DAM ad coronæ formam effingendam curavit. Locum in quo ii omnes accumbere ſolebant TABULAM ARTHURI ROTUNDAM & noſtrates & Britanni appellant. Eandem ego menſam (ſi accolæ falſa quadam majorum ſuperſtitione conflictati non errent) in Wintonienſi caſtro ad æternam rei memoriam ſolenniter conſervatam Militumque Equeſtrium nominibus undique notatam non ita pridem aſpexi. Quam verò hæc mereantur fidem, non eadem eſt omnibus ſententia. Etſi enim ELIAS ASHMOLIUS in *Hiſt. Ord. Periscelidis* C. 5. Sect. 2. Tabulam illam Arthurianam Eduardo Regi, ut Ordinem Periscelidis inſtitueret, occaſionem dediſſe contendat, atque RAPIN THOYRAS *Hiſt. d' Angleterre* T. I. p. 128. de Arthuro *On pretend,* ſcribat, *qu' il inſtitua un Ordre de chevalerie appellé de la Table ronde, qui a eté rendu celebre par les Ecrivains des Romans. Mais bien qu' on ait bâti divers recits fabuleux ſur ce fondement, il ne ſ' en ſuit point que l' inſtitution de cet Ordre doive entierement paſſer pour chimerique. Il n' eſt pas contre la vraiſemblence qu' Arthur ait inſtituè un ordre de chevalerie dans la Bretagne, puiſque dans le meme ſiecle Theodoric Roy des Oſtro-Gothes en avoit inſtituè un en Italie, ainſi qûon l' apprend par des lettres de Caſſiodore; CAMBDENUS* tamen in *Britannia* ſua p. m. 195. *de menſa illa,* ait, *circulari* ſ. *orbiculari, muro hic appenſa, quam vulgus hominum tanquam Arthurianam ſuſpicit, nihil eſt quod dicam niſi recentioris eſſe ætatis. SELDENUS* quoque *Tit. Honor.* C. 5. Omnia quæ de ordine Equeſtri ab Arthuro inſtituto & Tabula Rotunda referuntur, fabulis annumerat. Ante quoque illos HECTOR BOETHIUS in *Hiſt. Scot.* Ubi Arthuri meminit, *Eundem,* ait, *ad hæc ſcribunt pugilum certamine delectatum athletas habuiſſe inſigni arte militari familiares, quos cum epulandum fuerat vel de negotio militari conſultandum in Coronam, ne quisquam proximo prælatus videretur, ſedere juſſit.* Seſſionis locum ROTUNDAM ARTHURI TABULAM *& noſtrates & Cæteræ nationes vulgo appellitant. Verum non tam pugilum, quam Arthuri famam, tametſi dignus fuerit, cujus memoria clara ſit ad poſteros, circulares atque aniles fabulæ incertis autoribus de eis confictæ plurimum videntur maculaſſe.* vide inſuper LAMBEC. *Bibl. Cæſ. Vind.* l. 2. C. 8. p. 705.

(*o*) Quod CAMBDENUS conjicit, atque loc. cit. *Superioribus,* ait, *Seculis, cum virtutis bellicæ exercendæ gratia militares decurſiones* (TORNEAMENTA vocant) *frequenter haberentur; hujusmodi menſis uſi erant, ne quod diſcrimen inter nobiles ex ambitione exiſteret: Et veteri ſane, ut videtur inſtituto. Gallos enim antiquos circularibus menſis circumſediſſe armigerosque eorum ſcuta ferentes à tergo adſtitiſſe memorat in libro Deipnoſoph. 4.* ATHENÆUS. Huic quoq; mori procul dubio acceptum ferendum, quod teſte CASP. THOMA de THAUMASSIERE *Hiſt. de Berry* l. II. C. 46. Cives quidam Berrienſes ORDINEM TABULÆ ROTUNDÆ inter ſe inſtituerint, cujus inſignia fuerint quinquaginta nigra & inaurata Coralla ex viridi filo ſerico pendentia cum aurea effigie B. Mariæ & nomine Equitis in lamella.

(*p*) De quo THOMAS WALSINGHAM *Hiſt. Angl.* Sub Eduardo I. p. 49. *Edit. Savil. Illuſtris,* ſcribit, *miles, Rogerus de mortuo mari, apud Relingworthe ludum militarem, quem vocant rotundam tabulam centum militum ac tot dominorum conſtituit, ad quam pro armorum exercitio de diverſis regnis confluxit militia multa nimis.* Ad quem locum HENR. SPELMANNUS *in Gloſſ. Archæol.* voce *Tabula, Feſtum,* ait *Tabulæ rotundæ ab Eduardo I. ſolennius Warwici celebratur anno Regni 9. dom. 1281. HOLL. p. 280. coll. 6. 56. Sed prius inſtituitur à Rogero Mortimer,*

multo (q) certius eſt. Uti vero Rei ibi Militaris incrementa atque ſplendidiſſimi ORDINIS PERISCELIDIS Hiſtoriam alii (r) ſatis jam abunde explicuerunt, ita quod ad alterum Magnæ Britanniæ Honoratiſſimum ORDINEM de BALNEO attinet, quia Rei Equeſtris Scriptoribus parum (s) cognitus fuit, originem ejus atque progreſſum exponere conſtituimus.

V. Quod itaque illius Ordinis Originem ſpectat, in diverſas Scriptores abeunt partes, aliique ad (t) Julium Cæſarem, alii ad RICHARDUM (v) Regem Angliæ ejus nominis IIdum; plurimi ad (w) HENRICUM IV. eam referunt; Generoſiſſimus vero ANSTISIUS laudato ipſius libro inde a Regum Saxonicorum in Anglia tempore eam repetendam eſſe cenſet, his adductis hactenus deſcripſit nemo præter laudatum JOH. ANSTIS. qui anno 1725. edidit *Obſervations Introductory to an Hiſtorical Eſſay upon the Knight hood of the Bath*, cum adjecta illis *Collection of Authorities Referred to in the introduction.*

Heroe Bellicoſo A. 1279. dicti R. adcaſtrum Killingworthiæ, conſcriptis huic ludo 200. Equitibus auratis & totidem dominabus. STOW. p. 309. *Ed. 3. A. 1344. Domum ædificat ad caſtrum Windeleshores, quæ tabula rotunda vocaretur, diametrum habens 200. ped. Ypod. p. 515.* Integer locus in *cit. Ypodigm. Neuſtr.* TH. WALSINGH. ita ſe habet: anno 1344. *Rex Edwardus fecit convocari plures artifices ad caſtrum de Windeleshores & cœpit ædificare domum, quæ* ROTUNDA TABULA *vocaretur. Habuit autem ejus area à centro ad circumferentiam per ſemidiametrum 100. pedes, & ſic diameter ducentorum pedum erat.* Vide quoque RAP. THOYRAS *Hiſt. d' Anglet.* T. III. p. 188.

(q) Inqua ſententia CAMBDENUS nos confirmat, qui in *Britannia* ſua p. m. 105. de equitibus auratis, *nec*, inquit *dubito, quin hic mos à Germanis, proavis noſtris, deſcenderit, apud quos auctore Tacito primus honor juventæ ſcuto frameaque à Principe ornari.* Vide quoque SELDENUM *Tit. honor.* p. II. c. I. §. 58. & quæ *ſup.* §. II. lit. (f) diximus.

(r) Poſtquam enim, ut alios taceam, Illuſtres viri, ELIAS ASHMOLE atque Generoſiſſ. JOH. ANSTIS elaboratiſſimis non minus quam ſplendidiſſimis operibus ſuis Ordinis Periſcelidis Originem, progreſſum, Leges, Ceremonias &c. ſatis abunde deſcripſerunt, nihil amplius, quod ad illius Ordinis Hiſtoriam pertinet, reliquum eſt.

(s) Ex profeſſo hunc Ordinem Equeſtrem

(t) De quibus SELDENUS *Tit. honor.* p. II. C. 5. §. 45. *Reſtat*, ait, *ut veniamus ad Ordinem Balnei. Nemo exiſtimo credet fabulam, feciſſe Julium Cæſarem Equites Balnei quod tradiderunt aliqui cum ſimilibus fabulis pluribus quas hic ne attingimus quidem.*

(v) Inducti præcipue decreto Regio, quo tres nobiles ab exilio revocantur his verbis: *Item Notre ſeigneur le Roy eſt aſſentuz & adgrauntez de ſa grace eſpetiale par aſſent & encore de touts ſeigneurs eſpirituels & temporels & de touts les Comones en cet Parlement* a Robert Beal Knap; John. Holt, & William de Burgh, *Chivalers Bannuz & demourants en Irland, qu' ils reviendrent en Engleterre.* Ubi *laudato* ANSTISIO monente p. 10. male pro *Bannuz* (banniti) legerunt *Baignez*, (balneati).

(w) Atque Ipſe Cambdenus, qui in *Britanniæ deſcrip.* p. m. 124. *de Militibus*, ait, *ſive Equitibus Balnei nihil antiquius mihi legenti hactenus occurrit, quam in uſu fuiſſe apud veteres Francos, & HENRICUM IV. Angliæ Regem, ea die, qua inauguratus eſt, in arce Londinenſi, quadriginta ſex armigeros, qui præcedente nocte vigilaſſent equites creaſſe, ſingulis tunicas virides ad talos demiſſas cum manicis ſtrictis & Mineneria pellitas donaſſe eosq; geſtaſſe ad humerum ſiniſtrum duplicem funicu-*

ductis rationibus, quod Balneo, aliisque Ceremoniis (x) Ordini de Balneo hodieque propriis Equites in Angliæ Regno jam diu ante Henricum IV. & Richardi II. tempora fuerint creati, atque, licet non omnis semper apparatus, quo Equites de Balneo inaugurari consueverunt, a Scriptoribus commemoretur, reliqui tamen ritus ex circumstantiis illorum facile colligi possint; neque denique obstet, quod illis ceremoniis initiati, Equitum de Balneo nomine haud fuerint appellati, cum & Equites Ordinis Perisscelidis nudo Equitum Titulo sæpissime fuerint insigniti, de Ordine vero illorum Equestri dubitari propterea haud possit.

VI. In isto sententiarum divortio nonnihil quidem me ancipitem tenuerunt, quæ ANDREAS MENDO (y) de peculiari Ordinis de Balneo ab Henrico IV. ut vult, instituti occasione tam audacter commemorat; Postquam vero nec apud Cambdenum, quem adducit, nec alios veteres æque ac recentiores Scriptores, ullum ejus rei vestigium reperire potui, ab ipso Mendone ista

B con-

lum ex albo serico cum rotulis dependentibus. SELDENUS quoque *cit. lib.* P. II. c. 5. §. 46. auctoritate Froisfardi l. 4. c. 114. *Prima*, scribit, *hujus mentio, ceu Ordinis distincti, expressa vulgo tribuitur initiis Henrici IV. Coronationi enim sua se parans fecit XLVI. Equites ad Turrim de Londen qui lavarunt se; Celle nuit, inquit FROISARDUS* (*loquens* de Die sabbathi coronationem antecedente) y *veillerent tous les Ecuyers qui devocent etre faits Chevaliers le lendemain, qui furent le nombre de XLVI. & eurent tous ses Ecuyers chacun, sa chambre & chacun sa baign ou els se baignerent celle nuit & lendemain le Duc de Lencastre les fit chevaliers à sa messe & leur donna longues cottes verdes à estroits manges fourrees de menuver en guise de Prelats & avojent les dits chevaliers sur la seneştre epaule un double cordeau de soye blanche à blanches houpels (houpettes) pendans.* Hos sequuntur *CHAMBERL. Not. Angl.* Part. I. c. 19. p. m. 340. FRANC. MENNENIUS *Delic. Equest. in Chron. Gualth.* p. 132. BECMANNUS *Syntag. Dignit. illustr.* differt. XIX. ANDREAS MENDO *de Ordin. Milit.* disquisit. I. §. 12. peculiarem insuper occasionem, qua Henricus IV. Ordinem Equestrem de Balneo instituerit, his verbis memorat. *Henricus IV. Angliæ Rex cum in balneo recrearetur, monitus fuit à quodam Equite, ibi duas fœminas viduas instare, ut audirentur, ac jus æquum ipsis servaretur. Prosiliit è Balneo Rex nullam sibi recreationem reputans jucundiorem quam subditis miseris subvenire; inde excitatus MILITIAM instituit, cujus finis esset religionis Catholicæ protectio atque miserorum sublevatio, eumque Equitem, qui eum in balneo admonuit, primum in militiam adscivit, quæ exinde MILITIA BALNEI fuit nuncupata & non nisi nobiles in eam admittebantur. In toga viridi* tres aureas coronas *gestabant & sub illis hoc Lemma: TRIA IN UNUM, ut denotaretur unio servanda ad tuendam fidem, Regem & Regnum; plures Commendas ordo possedit, sed ejus confirmationem Pontificum non reperio, quare Militia quædam & non Ordo debet nuncupari. Defecit infeliciter à Catholica fide illud regnum & simul hujus Militiæ splendor evanuit.* Uti vero postrema verba homini Pontificio sunt condonanda, Ita quæ de occasione instituti ordinis de balneo ab ipso dicuntur, nullam fidem mereri, §. sequenti dicetur.

(x) Cujusmodi sunt vestes *Heremiticæ, Cineritiæ, vigiliæ, lectus* cum *matricio & coopertorio, chlamys holoserica s.* Roba de scarletto, *vestis* s. roba *viridis, gladius altari impositus* atque Candidato Equestri *accinctus: Calcaria* ipsi apposita, pluresque ritus alii jam olim usitati.

(y) Vide ipsius verba §. *præc.* lit. (w).

conſicta fuerunt, ut, cur ejus Ordinis Equites Balneo initientur, indeque nomen acceperint, aliquam redderet rationem, dum veram ejus ritus Originem ignoraret. Etſi quoque e ceteris auctoribus, qui eumdem ordinem ab Henrico IV. inſtitutum fuiſſe putant, CAMBDENUS præcipue atque SELDENUS, Rerum Britannicarum peritisſimi viri, maximæ ſint auctoritatis, ut tamen nunc illorum ſententiæ adſtipularer, impetrare a me haud potui. Præterquam enim, quod PRIOR an ejus Ordinis Origo ad Henricum IV. an Francos ſit referenda, ipſe hæſitasſe videatur; diſcrimen quod POSTERIOR facit inter Equites de Balneo, eorumque Ordinem, qui demum ſub Henrico IV. cœperit, ex adducto Froisſardi teſtimonio non (z) apparet. Calculo itaque rite ſubducto, laudati Generoſisſimi ANSTISII ſententiæ (a) omnino ſubſcribendum ducimus, rati nimirum, Ordinis de Balneo originem altius atque a Regum in Anglia Saxonicorum tempore repetendam eſſe, ſibique, quod ad præcipuas ejus ceremonias attinet, ſemper ſimilem durasſe, usque dum non ita pridem in formam Ordinis Regularis fuerit redactus. Certe ÆTHELSTANUM ſtirpis Saxonicæ Regem ab Avo ſuo ALFREDO circa medium Sæculi IX. multis ritibus Ordini Equeſtri de Balneo adhuc propriis in Militarẽ Ordinẽ receptum fuiſſe, WILHELMUS MALMESBURIENSIS, inſignis rerum Anglicarum Scriptor (b) teſtatur.

VII. Iisdem quidem ceremoniis ſtrenuum quendam Anglorum Virum, Herwardum, Equitem inauguratum, ſed morem iſtum, ſub ſtirpis Normannicæ Regibus, utpote valde ipſis exoſum, ſublatum fuiſſe, INGULFUS, (c) Abbas Croylandenſis, WILHELMO *Conqueſtori* æqualis, refert. Vedem vero ceremoniis inde in hunc usque diem Equites de Balneo initiari atque chlamyde ſ. *Roba*, ut vocatur, de SCARLETTO indutos *cingulo* item militari *gladioque* accingi ex ſequentibus apparebit. Neque dubito, quin *Balnei* uſus, etſi ejus nulla hoc loco mentio fiat, tum quoque fuerit adhibitus, quippe quem JOHAN. MONACHUS, Scriptor fere æqualis, loco §. ſeq. adducto *tyrocinii ſuſcipiendi conſuetudinem expoſtulaſſe* teſtatur. De *Enſe* autem *Saxonico* vid. DU FRESNE in *Gloſſ.* voce *Saxa.*

(z) Loco enim ibidem adducto quadraginta ſex Equites *Balneo* atque *ritibus* jam diu ante ſolitis ab Henrico IV. creatos fuiſſe, FROISSARDUS refert; Ordinis autem ab eo inſtituti ne verbo quidem meminit. Jam quoque ante Equites de Balneo Ordinem peculiarem conſtituiſſe, infra dicemus.

(a) Quam vide §. præced. expoſitam.

(b) Qui de *Geſt. Reg. Angl.* l. 2. p. 49. edit. Savil. *Tunc*, ſcribit, *juſſu patris in teſtamento ÆTHELSTANUS in Regem acclamatus eſt, quem jam tricennalis ætas & ſapientiæ maturitas commendabant. Nam & avus ALFREDUS proſperum ei regnum olim imprecatus fuerat videns & gratioſe complexus ſpeciei ſpectatæ puerum & geſtuum elegantium, quem etiam præmature militem fecerat, donatum* CHLAMYDE COCCINEA, GEMMATO BALTHEO, ENSE SAXONICO cum VAGINA AUREA. Iis-

(c) Cujus p. 901. EDIT. SAVIL. hæc ſunt verba. *Conſiderans* (Herwardus ab exilio in Anglia redux, ut paternam hereditatem & matrem ab injuriis vindicaret) *etiam tunc fortiſſimis viris ſe profectum, nonnullisque militibus præpoſitum ac nec dum MILITARI MORE BALTHEO legitimè ſe accinctum: aſſumtis ſecum de ſua cohorte pauciſ-*

Verumtamen WILHELMUM II. Conqueſtoris filium, non ſolum a Lanfranco, Archiepiſcopo, Militem factum MALMESBURIENSIS (*d*) ſcribit, ſed & GODEFREDUM, Comitem Pictavienſem, Regis Angliæ, HENRICI I. ſoceri ſui, Auſpiciis cum aliis Nobilibus eodem ritu, multisque aliis ceremoniis Ordini de Balneo hodieque uſitatis Equitem fuiſſe creatum, JOHANNES MONACHUS (*e*) commemorat. B 2 VIII.

ſimis ſimul legitimè militiæ cum eo tyronibus conſecrandis, patruum ſuum, tunc Abbatem Burgi, nomine Brandum, virum valde religioſum & (ut audivi à prædeceſſore meo Domino Wulcketalo Abbate aliisque multis) pauperum de eleemoſynis valde deditum & omnibus virtutibus adornatum adiit & ſe fieri legitimum militem præmiſſa primitus omnium peccatorum confeſſione & eorum percepta abſolutione inſtantiſſimè ſupplicavit. Quoniam Anglorum erat CONSUETUDO, quod qui militiæ legitimè conſecrandus eſſet, VESPERA præcedente diem conſecrationis ſuæ ad Epiſcopum vel Abbatem vel Monachum vel ſacerdotem aliquem contritus & compunctus de omnibus ſuis peccatis confeſſionem faceret & abſolutus orationibus & devotionibus & afflictionibus deditus in Eccleſia PERNOCTARET. In craſtino quoque MISSAM AUDITURUS GLADIUM SUPER ALTARE offerret & poſt Evangelium ſacerdos benedictum gladium collo militis cum benedictione imponeret & communicatus ad eandem miſſam ſacris Chriſti myſteriis denuò miles LEGITIMUS permaneret. Hanc conſecrandi militis conſuetudinem Normanni abominantes non militem legitimum talem tenebant, ſed ſocordem Equitem & Quiritem degenerem deputabant. Habes rurſus in hoc inaugurationis militaris exemplo præcipuos ritus quibus Equites de Balneo etiamnum initiari ſolent; *vigilias* nimirum, *ſacra* altero die peracta, *gladium* ſuper *altari conſecratum*, atque novo Equiti *appoſitum*. Neque dubito quin *balneum* quoque fuerit adhibitum, utpote animi a peccatis purgati ſymbolum & *neceſſariæ*, ut MALMESB. loco mox adducendo teſtatur, *conſuetudinis*. Quod vero ad immutationem Equites iſto more creandi ſub Normannis factam attinet, SELDENO quoque *Tit. Honor.* p. II. C. 5. §. 35. ea meritò ſuſpecta eſt.

(*d*) *Acceſſit*, ait MALMESBURIENSIS de Wilhelmo II. l. 4. p. 120. *& favori ejus maximum rerum momentum. Archiepiſcopus Lanfrancus, eo quod eum nutrierat &* MILITEM *fecerat.* Solitis procul dubio ceremoniis; Unde & Wilhelmi *tirocinium*, quo nomine inauguratio militaris appellabatur, fratrem Majorem, poſt abdicationem ſuam, ſuſpexiſſe idem Scriptor paulo ante refert.

(*e*) Qui in vita GAUFRIDI, Ducis Norm. l. I. ad A. 1127. *Gaufridus*, ſcribit, *Fulconis Comitis Andegavorum poſt Hyeroſolimorum Regis filius Adolescentiæ primævo flore vernans quindecim annorum factus eſt. Henricus I. Rex Anglorum unicam ei filiam lege connubii jungere affectabat. Regia voluntas Fulconi in petitionibus ſuis innotescit. Ipſe Regiam petitionem effectu ſe mancipaturum gratulanter promiſit. Datur utrinque fides & res ſacramentis firmata omnem dubietatis ſcrupulum tollit. Ex præcepto inſuper Regis exactum eſt à Comite ut filium ſuum nondum militem ad ipſam imminentem Pentecoſtem Rothomagum honorificè mitteret, ubi ibidem cum coæquævis arma ſuſcepturus regaliis gaudiis intereſſet. Nulla in his obtinendis ſuis difficultas. Juſta enim PETITIO facilem meretur aſſenſum. Ex imperio itaque patris Regis gener futurus cum quinque Baronibus, multo etiam ſtipatus milite Rothomagum dirigitur. Rex adoleſcentem multiplici affatur alloquio, multa ei proponens, ut ex mutua confabulatione reſpondentis prudentiam experiretur. Tota Dies illa in gaudiis & exultatione expenditur. Illuceſcente die altera.* Balneorum uſus, uti tyrocinii ſuſcipiendi conſuetudo expoſtulat *paratus eſt.* Poſt corporis ab-

VIII. Sub Regibus a GODEFREDO, quem diximus, PLANTAGENETA ortis, ejusmodi inaugurationes Equeſtres tanto ſunt illuſtriores, quo Scriptores & Tabularia illarum memoriam accuratius conſervarunt. Equitum enim iſtius temporis non *Jusjurandum* ſolum, illi quod Equites de Balneo adhuc præſtare ſolent, admodum ſimile, ſcriptor HENRICO II. & Johanni I. Regibus Angliæ æqualis, PETRUS BLESENSIS (*f*) refert, ſed & veſtes ac reliquum apparatum, eundem fere cum hodierno Ordinis de Balneo veſtitu, ſumptibus publicis comparatum fuiſſe e Tabulariis (*g*) conſtat. Uti vero præſertim memorabilis eſt inauguratio Equitum quæ EDUARDI I.

lutionem *aſcendens* de *Balneorum lavacro*, byſſo retorta ad *carnem induitur*, cyclade auro texta *ſuperveſtitur*, chlamide conchilii & muris ſanguine tincta *tegitur*, caligis holoſericis *calciatur*, *pedes ejus ſotularibus in ſuperficie*, leunculos aureos *habentibus, muniuntur. Talibus ornamentis decoratus regius gener, adductus eſt miri decoris Equus. Induitur* lorica *incomparabili quæ maculis duplicibus intexta nullis lanceæ ictibus trasforabilis haberetur. Calceatus eſt* caligis ferreis, *ex maculis itidem duplicibus compactis.* Calcaribus aureis *pedes ejus adſtricti ſunt*, Clypeus, leunculos aureos *imaginarios habens, collo ejus ſuſpenditur. Impoſita eſt capiti ejus* caſſis *multo lapide pretioſo relucens, quæ talis temperaturæ erat, ut nullius enſe incidi vel falſificari valeret. Allata eſt haſta fraxinea*, ferrum Pictavienſe *prætendens; ad ultimum adlata eſt ei enſis de Theſauro Regio ab antiquo ibidem ſignatus in quo fabricando fabrorum ſuperlativus Galanus multa opera & ſtudio deſudavit. Taliter ergo Tyro noſter novus*, militiæ poſtmodum flos futurus, *mira agilitate in equum proſiliit. Quid plura? dies illa Tyrocinii honori & gaudio dicata tota in Ludi bellici Exercitio & procurandis ſplendidè corporibus elapſa eſt. Septem ex integro dies apud Regem Tyrocinii celebre gaudium continuavit.* vide quoque SELDENUM *Tit. Honor.* P. II. C. 5. §. 34. p. m. 528. Tantum itaque abeſt, ut, quod Ingulfus l. c. ſcribit, ejusmodi inaugurationis conſuetudo Regibus Angliæ Normannicis exoſa atque ab illis ſublata fuerit, ut potius eum valde ipſis oporteat placuiſſe, quia extra regnum quoque ſuum in Normanniæ Ducatu iſtum morem obſervavit Henricus, eoque apparatu, qui, ſive ſolenne tempus, ſive Candidati Equeſtris admonitionem ab ipſo Rege factam, ſive veſtes, ſive alios ritus adhibitos reſpicias, multam cum ceremoniis, quibus Equites de Balneo, hodienum inaugurantur, convenientiam habet.

(*f*) *Qui EPIST. 94.* olim, *ait*, „juramenti vinculo milites obligabant, quod „ ſtarent pro Reipublicæ ſtatu, quod „ in acie non fugerent, & quod vitæ „ propriæ utilitatem publicam perha„ berent; ſed & hodie Tirones enſes „ ſuos percipiunt de altari ut profi„ teantur ſe filios Eccleſiæ atque ad „ honorem ſacerdotii ac tuitionem „ pauperum, ad vindictam malefacto„ rum & Patriæ liberationem ſe gladi„ um accepiſſe; porro res in contrari„ um verſa eſt; nam ex quo hodie mi„ litari cingulo decorantur, ſtatim in„ ſurgunt in Chriſtos domini & ſævi„ unt in patrimonium crucifixi. *His „ ſimilia JOH. SALISB.* de Nugis Curial. „ *l. 6. 10.* refert. *V. quoque SELDEN. p. II. „ C. 5. §. 35.*

(*g*) Equibus Generoſiſſ. ANSTIS. in *collect. auctorit.* ad laudatum librum ſuum p. 4. varia mandata refert, quibus JOHANNES Rex Angliæ ad creandos Equites, *Robas de Scarletto, & virides, culcitres, ſellas, cappas, lectos* cum *matricio, coopertorio, aliaque neceſſaria* comparari jubet. Inter quæ

DI I. adverſus Scotos Anno MCCCVI. expeditionem ſuſcepturi, auſpiciis (*h*) circa feſtum Pentecostes fuit celebrata, Principe quoque Walliæ juxta multos (*i*) alios nobiles in Equeſtrem Ordinem recepto; ita quæ

(*k*) EDU-

etſi *balnei* nulla fiat mentio, adhibitum tamen illud fuiſſe, ex lecto, cui poſt balneum Candidati Equeſtres imponebantur, aliisque circumſtantiis facile colligitur. Conf. SELDEN. P. II. C. 5. §. 34.

(*h*) *Literæ Regis quibus inaugurationem iſtam publicari juſſit, hæ ſunt:* „ Rex Vice Com. „ Linc. Salutem, Præcipimus tibi quod „ per totam Ballivam tuam inlocis, „ quibus videris expedire, tam infra li- „ bertates quam extra publice procla- „ mari facias ex parte noſtra quod o- „ mnes illi qui milites non ſunt & mi- „ lites eſſe voluerint, veniant usque „ London, citra feſtum Pentecoſtes „ prox. futur. ad apparatus ſuos eis „ in hoc caſu neceſſarios de Garderо- „ ba noſtra recipiendos, de dono no- „ ſtro, ut arma militaria de nobis ibi- „ dem ſuſcipere valeant. *Dicto die. Teſte* „ *Rege apud Wolweſege 6. die April.* Ipſa *ſo-* „ *lennia MATTH. WESTMONAST A. D.* „ *1306. ita deſcribit.* Ad augmentandam „ igitur profectionem ſuam in *Scotiam* „ fecit Rex per *Angliam* publicè procla- „ mari, ut, quotquot tenerentur fieri „ milites ſucceſſione paterna & qui „ haberent unde militarent, adeſſent „ apud *Weſtmonaſterium* in Feſto *Pente-* „ *coſtes* admiſſuri ſinguli omnem orna- „ tum Militarem præter Equitaturam „ de Regia Garderoba. Confluenti- „ bus itaque CCC. Juvenibus, filiis „ Comitum, Baronum, & Militum, di- „ ſtribuebantur purpura, byſſus, ſyn- „ dones, cyclades auro textæ, affluen- „ tiſſime, prout cuique competebat. Et „ quia Palatium Regale, etſi amplum, „ tamen ad tot occurentium turbam „ anguſtum fuit, apud *novum Templum* „ *Londini*, ſucciſis lignis pomiferis, pro- „ ſtratis muris, erexerunt papiliones & „ Tentoria, quo *Tyrones* deauratis ve- „ ſtibus ſe ſinguli decorarent. Ipſa „ quoque nocte in templo prædicti „ tyrones, quotquot poterat capere lo- „ cus ille, vigilias ſuas faciebant. Sed „ *Princeps Walliæ* præcepto Regis, patris ſui „ cum præcelſis Tyronibus fecit *vigilias* „ ſuas in Eccleſia *Weſtmonaterienſi.* Ibi e- „ nim tantus clangor tubarum & tibici- „ num & exaltatio vocum præ gaudio „ extiterat clamantium, quod conven- „ tus de choro ad chorum non audi- „ retur jubilatio. Die autem craſtino „ cinxit Rex filium ſuum baltheo mili- „ militari in Palatio ſuo & dedit ei Du- „ catum *Aquitaniæ.* Princeps ergo fa- „ ctus miles perrexit in Eccleſiam „ Weſtmonaſterienſem, ut conſocos ſu- „ os militari gloria pariter venuſtaret. „ Porro tanta erat preſſura gentium „ ante magnum altare, quod duo mi- „ lites morirentur, quamplurimi ſyn- „ copizarent, etiam cum quilibet ad „ minus *tres milites* ad ſe ducendum & „ tuendum haberet. Princeps autem „ propter turbam comprimentem non „ ſecus, ſed ſuper magnum altare divi- „ ſa turba per dextrarios bellicoſos ſo- „ cios ſuos cinxit. „ Etſi verò hoc lo- co nulla rurſus balnei fiat mentio, in computo tamen eorum, quæ ad Eduardi Principis & Walliæ inaugurationem comparata fuerunt, pro *Balneo ejus cooperiendo VI. ulnæ* diſertè commemorantur apud Generoſiſſ. ANSTIS. l. c. p. 7.

(*i*) Quorum MATTH. WESTMON. l. c. trecentos atque *Annales Vet. Hiberniæ* apud SELDEN. p. II. C. 5. §. 34. p. m. 529. CCCC. numerant, Ashmolius verò ducentos ſexaginta fuiſſe atque

(k) EDUARDI II. tempore atque diverſis Occaſionibus ſub (l) EDUARDO III. pariter ac (m) RICHARDO II. inſtitutæ fuerunt, inaugurationes Equeſtres, mo-

ſingulorum quoque nomina recenſet in *Hiſt. Ord. Periſcel.* p. 37. Ceterum diſcrimen inter Equites *Banerettos & Milites ſimplices* factum, diverſumque illorum habitum fuiſſe tam ex computo apparatus apud ANSTIS. p. 7. quam Eduardi de eo comparando his literis apparet. *Edvardus Dei gratia Rex Angliæ Dominus Hiberniæ & dux Aquitaniæ Dilecto nobis Rudolfo de Stockes, clerico Magnæ Garde-Robæ noſtræ ſalutem. Mandamus vobis quod dilecto nobis Thomæ Bartolf tanquam Baneretto decentem apparatum pro ſe novo milite faciendo ad feſtum Pentecostes proxime futur. in Comitiva Eduardi filii noſtri chariſſimi habere de dono noſtro faciatis & nos vobis inde in computo veſtro debitam allocationem habere faciamus. Datum ſub privato ſigillo noſtro apud Wolvefege 3. die Maji Anno regni noſtri XXXVI.* Quæ vero diſcriminis iſtius inter Banerettos & milites ſimplices ratio ſit vid. infra §. XIX.

(k) *Cinctura quoque*, inquit SELDENUS *Tit. Hon.* P. II. c. 5. p. m. 529. ex antiquo auctore calcarium commemoratur in creatione *Richardi Rodney* ſub Rege EDUARDO II. *Anno MCCCXVI. Dominus Richardus de Rodney factus fuit miles apud Keintham die translationis ſti Thomæ Martyris in præſentia Domini Almarici Comitis de Pembrock, qui cinxit eum gladio & Dominus Mauritius de Berkley ſuper pedem dextram poſuit unum calcar & Dominus Bartholomæus de Badilismere poſuit aliud ſuper pedem ſiniſtrum in aula & hoc facto receſſit cum honore.* Sæpius quoque alias multosque interdum Ejusmodi Equites ab hoc Rege fuiſſe creatos *ex tunicæ & capæ pro vigilia, Robarum de Scarletto panno* mixto viridi, *culcitrarum & matraciarum* pro lecto aliarumque rerum vario diverſoque tempore ad illas inaugurationes facto apparatu apud ANSTISIUM p. 8. & ſeqq. apparet.

(l) Cujus auſpiciis Equites de Balneo Sæpius fuere creati atque *primum* paucis ante patris abdicationem diebus, uti ex mandato ejus ad apparatum Equeſtris iſtius inaugurationis apparet apud ANSTISIUM p. 10. 11. Procul dubio, ut Equites illi proximam ſuam coronationem condecorarent. Ad ſolium deinde Regium evectus ipſe, antequam coronaretur, in Ordinem Equeſtrem de Balneo ſe recipi voluit, quippe cum in computo apparatus apud eundem Auctorem p. 12. ad BALNEUM Regis pro militia ſua cooperiendum, de pann. ad aurum &c. atque tria *lintheamenta* pro BALNEIS cooperiendis & pro *pedibus* Regis *tergendis* de tela Paris XXX. uln. comparata fuiſſe legantur, ut *ſcuta* in Camera regia *ſuſpenſa* aliaque in creandis Equitibus ordinis de balneo adhuc ſolita taceam. De reliquis ejusmodi Equitum inaugurationibus, cum Regina coronaretur aliisque feſtivis occaſionibus ſub iſto Rege inſtitutis vide ANSTISIUM *Obſerv.* p. 30. & ſeqq. & in *Coll. Auctor.* p. 13. & ſeqq.

(m) Ab hoc quoque Rege Equites de *Balneo* ſæpius fuiſſe creatos, variæ apparatus Equeſtris rationes apud ANSTIS. p. 20. 21. teſtantur, quippe in quibus *lintheamentorum* pro *balneo cooperiendo* mentio fit; De quatuor Hiberniæ Regulis in Ordinem militarem de Balneo à Richardo Rege receptis FROISSARDUS l. 4. c. 63. ſi ſe ſubjicerent huic Regi, *ſe*, ſcribit, *volontiers ils recevojent l' ordre de Chevaliers. Ainſi comme uſage & couſtume de France & en Angleterre & en autres pais & furent faits chevaliers de la main du Roy Richard d' Angleterre en l' Egliſe Cathedrale de Dublyn & fut le jour de notre Dame en Mars, qui fut en ce temps par un jeudi & a donc veillerent le mecredi toute la nuit en la dite Egliſe & au lendemain à la meſſe & à grande*

morem, quo Equites de Balneo etiamnum creantur, non minus exacte referunt. Quin Equites de Balneo ſub illis Regibus jam peculiarem Ordinem conſtituiſſe, ex Rei veſtiariæ Aulicæ (*n*) computationibus liquido conſtat.

IX. A tempore HENRICI IV. Regis Angliæ, Stirpis LANCASTRICÆ res extra omnem dubitationis aleam poſita eſt, eum vulgari Opinione Ordinis de Balneo ſi non Origo, ſaltem diſtincti ordinis ratio inde usque repeti ſoleat; quod vero poſterius, uti ex Froiſſardi eum in finem adducto teſtimonio haud probari, atque Equites de Balneo jam antea peculiarem Ordinem conſtituiſſe, jam ſupra (*o*) oſtendimus; ita Rex ille Coronationis ſuæ tem-

Solennité, ils furent faits chevaliers & etoient les quatres Roys tres richement veſtus ainſi. Comme a eux appartenoit & ſ' aſſirent ce jour la a la Table Ronde du Roy Richard d' Angleterre. Laudatus Anſtiſius p. 21. in MSto quodam exemplari loco *aſſirent* vocem *ſervent* legi monet, ſed diverſas has lectiones conciliandas putat, quod Canditati Equeſtres cibum menſæ Regiæ impoſuerint, Equites autem facti, ipſi ſimul cum Rege ejus menſæ aſſidere conſueverint.

(*n*) Etenim ſub EDUARDO III. Domino *Mauritio*, filio *Thomæ de Kildare* ad ORDINEM MILITAREM ſuſcipiendum; itemque *Thomæ* de *Fencotes* ad ORDINEM MILITAREM, nec non *Johanni Mowbray & Willimo Schipwith* ad eundem ORDINEM recipiendum; Sub RICHARDO quoque II. *Johanni Holt & Will. Burgh*, ut & *Waltero Cloptoni* & Rob. *Charletoni* ad illum ORDINEM ſuſcipiendum ſumptibus Regis apparatum emptum fuiſſe, ex Præfectorum Rei veſtiariæ Aulicæ Rationibus refert Generoſiſſ. ANSTIS. in *Collect. Auctor.* N. 27, 28, 29, 30.

(*o*) Vide *ſupra* §. V. lit. (z) & §. VI. lit. (a) Etſi vero *Ordinis Militaris* nomine Equites de Balneo ab hoc tempore frequentius appellentur, jam tamen antea idem quoque nomen in uſu fuiſſe §. *præced.* lit. (n) diximus. Equitum vero Henrici IV. tempore creatorum nomina pariter ac veſtitus illorum ex mandato apparet ad comparandum pannum *Dominis* Thomæ, Johanni & Humfrido, *filiis Domini Regis, pro apparatibus ſuis ad* Ordinem Militarem *de eodem Rege apud* Turrim London *in Vigilia Coronationis ſuæ recipiendum, videlicet cuilibet eorum ad unam* Capam *infra vigilandum III. uln. panni Ruſſet long. & ad unum* mantellum V. *uln. tartarin Virid. radiat. cum aur. & furrur. de CXX. Ventr. men. pur. pro eisdem mantellis furrurand. & ad* Lectos *ſuos* & Balnea - - - *de* dono *ipſius Regis contra idem tempus. Domino* Thomæ, *Comiti* Arundell, *& tribns aliis Comitibus & V. Baron. Videl. Domino* Edmundo *Comiti* Stafford; Domino Richardo, *filio Comitis* Warr. *Domino* Hugoni, fratri *Comitis* Stafford; *Domino de* Camond; *Domino de* Mawley; *Domino de* Latymer; *Domino de* Deyncourt; *& Dom.* Seyntesmond *Baron: Dom. de* Beaumond, *& XXXIII. aliis militibus, videl. cuilibet eorum pro apparatibus ſuis de eodem Domino Rege apud prædictam Tuurim in eadem Vigilia ſua ad Ordinem Militarem recipiendum* &c. Ceterum Equites illos in humero ſiniſtro *taniam ſericam albam* portaſſe FROISSARDUS loco ſupra §. V. lit. (w) adducto refert, quod in conſuetudinem poſtea abiit, atque hodie adhuc obſervatur. NIC. UPTON. de *Stud. Milit.* p. 10. hac de re, *quod*, ait, *Stigmata S. Inſignia militaria ei imponantur, ut Cod. de Fabr. l. 3. ſicut ipſi milites, qui creantur per* balneum, *portant de conſuetudine in humero ſiniſtro Stigma ſuum militare al-*

tempore filios ſuos una cum aliis multis nobilibus more jam diu ante recepto Equites de Balneo creavit. Idem quoque ab ejus filio ac Succeſſore HENRICO V. factum fuit, quippe qui A. MCCCCXIII. circa feſtum Paſchatis, ut proximæ coronationi ſuæ majorem ſplendorem conciliaret (p) priſtino more

bum, quod quidem ſtigma dictus tyro portabat, quousque fecerit notabile aliquod factum, niſi aliqua nobilis femina illud tollat.

(p) Cujus rei Generoſiſſ. ANSTISIUS ex MSCto quodam libro hoc inſigne refert teſtimonium : „ Anno Domini „ 1413. ætatis vero hujus Principis XXVI. „ quinto nonas Aprilis die videl. *Veneris* ante *Dominicam Paſſionem* Domini, „ in omnibus ad *futuram Coronationis* Solemnitatem requiſitis ſecundum laudabiles ritus Regni *Angliæ*, requiſito „ modo, Sapientium Regni prudentia „ prævia præparatis, præfatus Princeps „ concomitante Honorabilium Procerum tam Spiritualium, quam Temporalium nobili & præſtanti comitiva „ de *Kyneſton* ſuper Thameſiam verſus „ Caſtrum ſuum, vocatum *Turrim London*, „ iter arripuit, cui venienti numeroſa „ multitudo Principum, Comitum, „ Baronum, Militum, Armigerorum, „ & aliorum Procerum Regni ſui, nec „ non concives London modo competenti & nobili apparatu, & cum „ debiti honoris impenſa ac univerſus „ Clerus proceſſione feſtiva & omni „ ſolennitate, qua poterant, obviam „ veniebant, ſicque *Turrim London* talibus exaltatus honoribus eſt ingreſſus. Apud ipſam Turrim London „ congregati erant circiter quinquaginta ſive plures Proceres, Juvenes „ notabiles ad dignitatem *Militaris Ordinis* multum apti, a Principibus & „ regni Nobilibus trahentes originem, „ qui ad hoc convenerant, ut in tantæ „ ſolennitatis *exordio* in ſui honoris incrementum a tanto Principe in Milites crearentur. Venerando quoque Principi tantæ ſolennitatis feſtum, cui nihil requiſitum deerat, „ una cum Principibus & Magnatibus „ ſuis præſentia propria decoratu ſtatu Regio, prout decuit, reſidenti totiusque feſti feſtivam claritatam ſuæ „ dignitatis illuſtranti radiis, Juvenes „ veſtimentis, quib9 taliter Ordinandos „ veſtiri decuit, decenter amicti, in ſignum, quod conſimile obſequium, „ ſub armigerorum habitu non erant „ de cætero præſtituri, ad epularum ſolennia *regia ferendo fercula* obſequia debita exhibebant, qui in continenti „ poſt completas tanti convivii epulas, „ ad *comeras ſuas*, loco videl. ad tanta negocia parato & deputato ducebantur, „ ibique Duces, Comites, Barones & „ Nobiles, Milites, *Conſultores* habebant, „ qni qualiter ſe gererent, in venerabili Ordine, quem ſuſcepturi fuerant, „ quid eidem Ordini congruum, & „ quod congruum eſſe poſſet. ipſos „ ſumma prudentia & cura diligentiſſima informabant. Ipſi quorum Juvenes tempore congruenti *balnea* ad „ hoc parata, ut *moris eſt*, intrabant, vigilias congruas ſub vigili cuſtodia „ obſervabant, & aliis quibuscunque „ obſervantiis, quæ tali negotio pertinere ſolebant, totis niſibus inſiſtebant; tota deinceps nocte in talibus „ expedita, & tenebris Phœbi radiis „ exilium patientibus, aurora lucente, „ *lectis* precioſis aureis, in quibus requieverunt, quibusdam *famulis* regiis, „ ut *moris* eſt, pro eorum *feodo* liberatis, miſſa audita, & certæ devocionis ſuffragiis completis, *equos* nobiles „ aſcendentes Juvenes Ordinandi, *palliis ſericis* induti, uſque ad Aulæ Regiæ januas devenerunt, ubi cum de-

more ejus Ordinis Equites inaugurari curavit, idemque annis imperii ſui (*q*) quinto & novo (*r*) reiteravit. Præterquam etiam quod Henricus VI. a Patruo ſuo Johanne, Duce Betfordienſi, anno jam ætatis ſuæ quarto cum multis aliis Optimatibus, publico mandato arceſſitis, in Ordinem de Balneo fuerit (*s*) receptus, ipſe quoque, cum tertio abhinc anno coronaretur, XXXII. nobiles eodem Ordine initiari juſſit, inſuperque certa emolumenta ab Equitibus ejus Ordinis pro diverſa illorum Conditione Barbitonſoribus ſolvenda peculiari (*t*) privilegio conſtituit. Neque EBORACENSIS Familiæ

„ſcendiſſent, quilibet ipſorum *inter duos milites*, ſecundum quod ejus ſtatui „ſive gradui congruebat, honorifice „deductus, a Principe magnifico ſtatu „reſidente regio innumeris venerabili„um & magnatum ſtipato cuneis in „novos honores *Militaris Ordinis* pro„movetur. Deinde in eisdem palliis „ſericis in regali præſentia diſcum„bentes, licet preciosis ferculis ante„poſitis, per tota prandendi tempora „*nil guſtabant*. Poſt tanta regalis con„vivii ſolennia novelli milites ipſa „pallia exuentes, veſtes de liberata „Regia ejusdem ſectæ precioſas nimi„um induebant, & cum ipſe Rex in „iſta eadem Vigilia Dominicæ Paſſio„nis uſque *Weſtmonaſterium* in ſumma „nobilitate & competentiſſima Ordi„natione, concomitante innumerabili „multitudine Principum & Nobilium „regni ſui, prout tantam Majeſtatem „regiam decuit, equitaret. Omnes, „præfati Juvenes tirunculi ordine com„poſito ſpectabili apparatu intuenci„um oculis ſuo geſtu nimias confe„rendo delicias ipſum Regem per me„dium Civitatis *London* præcedebant „Equeſtres.

(*q*) Juxta enim FABIAN. CHRON. *Anno Regis* Henrici quinti, *Omni genere Virtutum præſtantiſſimi quinto, Cana oppido non exiguo jam ſibi ſubacto Ducique Clarentiæ credito Celebritatem Divi Georgii pro temporis exigentia curavit in ibi ſervandam, ubi quindecim Equites regio more concreavit.* Equites vero de Balneo eos fuiſſe, ex MSCto quodam apud Anſtiſium p. 26. apparet, utpote quo Henricus quosdam Nobiles *ſecundum Balneorum obſervantias* in milites creaſſe dicitur.

(*r*) Regem tum *Scotorum* & Comitem *Stafford* in Ordinem militarem receptos fuiſſe, ex mandatis Regiis apud eundem Generoſiſſ. Auctorem p. 28. apparet, quibus Regi Scotorum & memorato Comiti *in Ordinem Militarem de Domino Rege apud Caſtrum Wyndeſore in Vigilia Feſti S. Georgii* recipiendis *Capa*, *caputium*, *mantellum*, *tunica* & *lintheamenta* ad cooperiendum *Balneum* aliusque apparatus comparari jubentur.

(*s*) Decreto enim Parlamenti apud RYMERUM *Act. publ.* Vol. X. p. 356. *Quarto die* Maji *anno quarto apud Leyceſtriam ordinatum fuit, quod dirigantur literæ perſonis infraſcriptis de veniendo ad præſentiam Regis ad dictam Villam pro ibidem una ſecum ſuſcipiendo in ſe* ORDINEM MILITAREM *in feſto* Pentecoſtes *tunc proxime futuro. Præſentibus Dominis* Bedfordiæ, Cantuarienſi, & Eborum *Cancellario*, *Archiepiſcopis*; *Duce* Exoniæ; *Epiſcopis* Dunelmenſi, Eliſenſi, & Bathonienſi, *ac cuſtode Privati ſigilli*, *Dominis de* Cromwel & *de* Scrop, & *aliis in* Parleamento *exiſtentibus.* De Equitibus vero de Balneo hæc eſſe intelligenda, eorumque XXXII. in Ordinem tum receptos fuiſſe FAB. in *Chron.* & STOW. in Annal. teſtantur.

(*t*) Quod ita ſe habet: „Rex omnibus, „ad quos &c. ſalutem. Sciatis quod „per quandam ſupplicationem, Nobis „per dilectum ſervientem noſtrum

Reges iſtum morem poſthabuerunt, quippe quod EDUARDUS IV. non ſolum cum ipſe ac poſtea Conjux ejus (*v*) coronarentur, Equites de Balneo creaverit, ſed & ejusmodi inaugurationes alias ſubinde plures (*w*) in-

„Robertum Bolley, Servientem Ewariæ „noſtræ, exhibitam accepimus, quali„ter ipſe opellas Barbitonſorum, ad „portam hoſpitii noſtri ubicumque „fuerat, cum tot ſervientibus, quot „pro occupatione hujusmodi opellæ „prædicti neceſſarii fuerunt, & opor„tuni, habuit & occupavit cum o„mnibus proficuis & commoditatibus „eidem occupationi aliquo modo „pertinentibus ſive ſpectantibus, pro„ut ipſe tempore Cariſſimi Domini & Pa„tris noſtri defuncti habuit; De Gratia „noſtra ſpeccali conceſſimus præfato „Roberto & Alexandro Donour Valet„to Ewariæ noſtræ opellas Barbiton„ſorum ad portam, ſeu portas ho„ſpitii noſtri, tenendas, habendas & „occupandas à quinto die Julii, An„no regni noſtri viceſimo tertio, pro „termino vitæ eorundem Roberti & „Alexandri & alterius eorum diutius „viventis, cum tot ſervientibus & „ſervituris, quot pro occupatione præ„dicta neceſſarii fuerint & opportuni „cum omnibus proficuis & commodi„tatibus una cum feodis Militum de „Balneo, quando erunt milites facti „ſive creati, vedelicet; de quolibet „„milite viginti quatuor ulnas panni „lanei, qui erunt circa *Balneum*, una „cum una Tapet longitudinis trium „virgarum de Rubro Worſted, ac et„jam viginti ſolidos pro raſura cujus„libet Militis ſic creati. Quadraginta „ſolidos de quolibet *Barone* ſeu ejus „Pare pro ejus raſura. Centum ſoli„dos de quolibet *Comite* ſeu ejus pa„re pro ejus Raſura. Et decem libras „de quolibet *Duce* ſeu ejus Pare pro „ejus Raſura. Et ulterius conceſſi„mus, quod nullus alius Barbitonſor „habeat ſeu occupet aliquas opellas „Barbitonſorum, prope Portam, ſeu „portas hoſpitii noſtri, niſi prædicti „Robertus & Alexander durante vita „eorum & alterius eorum diutius vi„ventis, eo quod expreſſa Mentio de „aliis donis & conceſſionibus eisdem „Roberto & Alexandro per nos ante „hæc tempora factis in præſentibus „facta non exiſtit, aut aliquo ſtatuto „actu vel ordinatione in contrarium „factis non obſtantibus.

„In cujus. &c.

„Teſte Rege apud Weſtmonaſterium „viceſimo quinto die Julii.

„Per ipſum Regem, & de data præ„dicta auctoritate Parliamenti.

(*v*) Tempore Coronationis EDUARDI IV. Equites fuere creati; *Georgius* Dux Clarentiæ, *Richard* Dux Gloceſtriæ, *John Mawbray*, filius Ducis Nortfolciæ, *John Staffort*, comes in Wilteshire, Lord *Thomas* Fitz-Alane, filius Comitis Arundellii, Lord *Straunge*, Sir *John Markham*, Sir *Robert Danby*, Sir *William Gelverton*, Sir *John Wingefeld*, Sir *Walter Blount*, Sir *Robert Markham*, Sir *Robert Cliffton*, Sir *William Stanley*, Sir *Nicholas Byron*, Sir *William Cantelewe*: atque hos in humero ſuo ſiniſtro inſignia quædam ex conſuetudine apud illum Ordinem portaſſe, ex Relatione quadam ab Hearnio edita obſervavit *Generoſiſſ.* ANSTIS. l. c. p. 30. qua de re vide quoque ſupra lit. (o) notata. Equites vero, cum Regina coronaretur, creatos FABIAN. *Chron.* commemorat. a. 1464. atque tam ſplendida & ſumptuoſa fuit illa Creatio Equitam de Balneo pariter ac Coronatio Reginæ, ut peculiari ſtatuto, ne hæc in exemplum poſtea traherentur, cautum fuerit. ANSTIS. p. 31.

(*w*) inſtituerit. Nec deniq; multos ſolum Angliæ Proceres, ut ad coronandum EDUARDUM V. Equitum de Balneo Honores prius capeſſerent, Patruus ipſius atque Protector Regni Angliæ convocaverat, ſed & cnm ipſe interea peſſima fraude RICHARDI III. nomine Regium Solium occuparet, coronationis ſuæ tempore multos ejusmodi Equites (*x*) creavit, Eduardo Rege, una cum ejus fratre, Richardo, in Turri Londinenſi nefando ſcelere (*y*) ſuffocatis.

X. Haud quoque minorem Ordini de Balneo honorem habuerunt Familiæ TUDORENSIS Reges atque HENRICUS VII. non ſolum cum ipſe (*z*) primum & Conjux ejus (*a*) triennio poſt coronarentur, filiosque ſuos AR-

(*w*) Cum nimirum filium ſuum natu majorem *Eduardum* Principem Walliæ, atque ejus fratrem *Richardum* Ducem Eboracenſem crearet, ambosque ſimul in Ordinem de Balneo reciperet, itemque Richardus poſtea nuptias celebraret cum *Anna*, Ducis Nortfolciæ filia, priori occaſione Comite *Lincolnienſi*, filio Ducis Suffolciæ, Lord *Thoma Gray*, ejusque fratre *Richardo* Comite *Schrewesburienſi*, Comite *Wiltesherenſi* cum aliis multis; poſteriori vero *Bowſer*, Lord *Latymer*, Lord *Barues*, Lord *Powis*, Lord *Morlye*, Lord *Lawarre*, Lord *Mountjoy*, Lord *Beauchamp*, Sir *Thomas Howard*, Sir *Thomas Bourſer*, Sir *Thomas* St. *Leger*, Sir *John Elrington*, Sir *Giles Dawbeney*, Sir *William Stoner*, Sir *Guy Fearfax*, Sir *William Gascoinge*, Sir *Robert Brougton*, Sir *Thomas Froweck*, Sir *Henry Talboys*, Sir *William Redman*, Sir *Henry Wentworth*, Sir *Richard Delabere*, & Sir *Richard Lakyn* in eundem Ordinem receptis.

(*x*) Quadraginta Nobiles, ut tempore Coronationis Eduardi V. in Ordinem de Balneo reciperentur, conſcripſerat Richardus, cum vero ipſe, Solio Regio occupato, coronaretur, Sir *Edmond*, Ducis Soffolciæ filium, Sir *John Grey*, Comitis Kentiæ filium, Sir *William*, Sir *Henry Burgavenny*, Sir *Chriſtopher Wylloughby*, Sir *William Barkley*, Sir *Henry Banington*, Sir *Thomas Arundell*, Sir *Thomas Bolayne*, Sir *Edmond Bedingfeilde*, Sir *Brewas*, Sir *William ſay*, Sir *William Enderby*, Sir *Thomas Lowkenos*, Sir *Thomas Ormond*, Sir *John Browne*, Sir *William Barkeley*, Sir *Edmond Cornwall* eodem Ordine initiari curavit.

(*y*) De quo vid. RAPPIN THOYRAS *Hiſt. d' Angleterre* T. IV. p. 343.

(*z*) A. D. 1485. menſe Octobri, quo tempore ipſum Regem ſimul in Ordinem de Balneo receptum fuiſſe FR. MENEN. *Delic. Ord. Equeſtr.* Lib. II. refert, Tabulam Pergamenam, cui nomina Equitum cum illorum inſignibus pulchre pictis inſcripta ſint, ſe aſſervare Generoſiſſ. ANSTISIUS *lib. cit.* p. 59. meminit.

(*a*) Cujus coronationem, odio in Domum Eboracenſem, ex qua orta fuit, in tertium regni ſui annum ab Henrico Rege protractam fuiſſe RAPPIN THOYRAS T. IV. p. 417. commemorat. Ordine vero de Balneo tum initiati fuerunt Lord *William*, filius atque heres Comitis in Devonſtire, Lord *Edward Dudley*, *William Gascoyne*, *Thomas Butteler*, *Edwarde Barkley*, *William Lucy*, *Thomas Hungreforde*, *Guydo Wolſton*, *Richard Pomery*, *John Scheldon*, *Hugh Lotterell*, *Thomas Pultney*, *Hugh Conwey*, *Nicholes Lisley*, Varios autem tum uſitatos ritus ex pictura, quam Celſiſſimus DUX de MONTAGU, Ordinis nunc Magiſter, aſſervat, tabulis æneis inciſos exhibent WILLIAM DUGDALE in *Antiq. Warwicksh.* & EDUARD BYSSÆUS in Notis ſuis ad Nicol. Uptonum de *Stud. Milit.* poſt pag. 32.

ARTHURUM (*b*) Principem Walliæ, ac poſtea HENRICUM (*c*) Ducem Eboracenſem in Ordinem illum reciperet, ſed & cum Arthurus nuptias cum Catharina Arragonia (*d*) celebraret A. MDI. eoque tamdem mortuo Henricus Principatu Walliæ (*e*) inauguraretur, multos præcipuæ Nobilitatis Viros ſummo ſplendore ejusdem Ordinis Honoribus ornari curavit. Hoc Patris Majorumque ſuorum exemplum ſecutus Henricus VIII. non ſuæ tantum inaugurationis Regiæ (*f*) tempore, ſed & cum Conjux ſua ANNA BU-

(*b*) A. D. 1489. quo tempore una cum Arthuro, octo annorum Principe Regio in Ordinem de Balneo ſolitis ceremoniis recepti fuerunt, Comes *Northumberlandiæ*, Lord *Mautravers*, Lord *Gray Ruthyn*, Lord *Sturton*, ſir *Thomas Weſt*, Sir *John* St. *John*, Sir *Henry*, *Vernou*, Sir *John Hoſtinys*, Sir *William Tyndall*, Sir *Nicholas Moutyomery*, Sir *William Ovedall*, Sir *Mattheu Browne*, Sir *Thomas Darcy*, Sir *Thomas Cheyney*, Sir *Edmund Gorges*, Sir *Waulter Denis*, Sir *William Scotte*, Sir *John Guyſe*. Vid. EDUARD HERBERT in Hiſt. *Henrici VIII.*

(*c*) A. D. 1494. quo ſolenni feſto una cum Principe Regio, Henrico, Duce Eboracenſi Ordine de Balneo initiati fuerunt, Sir *John Arundell*, Sir *Walther Griffithe* Sir *Gerroys Cliffton*, Sir *Edmond Trafford*, Sir *Robert Harrecourt*, Sir *Henry Marney*, Sir *Roger Neubourgh*, Sir *Rauff Rider*, Sir *Thomas Bawde*, Sir *John Speke*, Sir *Humfrey Fullford*, Sir *Robbert Litten*, Sir *Piers Eggecombe*, Sir *Robbert Clere*, Sir *Thomas Fairfax*, Sir *Richard Knyghtley*, Sir *John Cheoke*. Ceterum quia dies Jejunii erat, Equitibus, ut cibum capere potuerint, a Rege permiſſum fuiſſe, Generoſiſſ. ANSTIS. *lib. cit.* p. 44. refert id vero, qui cum guſtatione ciborum Equitibus de Balneo juxta teſtimonium ſupra §. IX. lit. (a) adductum, jam prohibita, concilandum ſit, in medio relinquit. Verum uti ipſe *Obſerv.* p. 58. illam prohibitionem de modeſta tantum ciborum guſtatione inſtar Virginum, intelligendam eſſe monuerat, ita quia die Jejunii ullum cibum capare haud licebat, ad modeſtam quoque ciborum guſtationem permiſſione opus erat.

(*d*) Quo tempore hi LVIII. Equites creati fuerunt; Lord *Willoughby*, Lord *Clinton*, *George*, fil. Lord *Haſtings*, Sir *Thomas Fenys*, Sir *Gryffythe*, Sir *Robert Corbet*, Sir *John Wegan*, Sir *Thomas Laurence*, Sir *Henry Rogers*, Sir *William Walgrave*, Sir *William Seymour*, Sir *Robert Throgmorton*, Sir *John Baſſet*, Sir *Thomas Grenefeld* Sir *John Arundel*, Sir *Robert Strange*, Sir *John Scrop*, de *Caſtlecomb*, Sir *John Pawlet*, Sir *Walter Baskervyle*, Sir *Robert Waterton*, Sir *John Gyfford*, Sir *John Aſton*, Sir *William Fyloll*, Sir *Thomas Ingilfeld*, Sir *William Martyn*, Sir *William Callwey* Sir *George Putman*, Sir *Nicholas Beron*, Sir *Thomas Hawte*, Sir *Richard Warr*, Sir *Alnathe Malyverer*, Sir *William Rede*, Sir *John Trevelian*, Sir *John Foſter*, Sir *Walter Strykeland*, Sir *Thomas Long*, Sir *John Philpot*, Sir *John Lee* in *Wyltshire*, Sir *Nicholas Gryffyn*, Sir *Lancelot Thyrkyll*, Sir *John Nortow*, Sir *Roger Ormeſton*, Sir *George Feldynge*, Sir *Thomas Carwyn*, Sir *Hugh Loder*, Sir *Thomas Sampſon*, Sir *Richard Fowler*, Sir *Thomas Woodhouſe*, Sir *Philip Bothe*, Sir *John Iwardby*, Sir *Henry Frowyck*, Sir *John Leghe* in *Stokewell*, Sir *William Aſcu*, Sir *Thomas Kemp*, Sir *Morgon Kydwelle*, Sir *John Gyllot*.

(*e*) Equitibus tum creatis Vice com. *Lisle*, Lord *Dacres*, Sir *Brian Stapilton*, Sir *Rauff Gray*, Sir *Mylys Buſſi*, Sir *Edward Pomery*, Sir *John Mordant*, Sir *James Hubert*.

(*f*) Anno MDIX. quo tempore Equites de Balneo creati fuerunt: *Richard Ratelyff*, Lord *Fitzwater*, Lord *Scroope* de *Bolton*,

BULENIA (*g*) coronaretur, multos Angliæ Proceres in illum Ordinem recepit, idemque filium ſuum, Eduardum, Principem Walliæ creaturus, multo apparatu (*h*) facere conſtituerat, morte autem non opinata illud exſequi fuit impeditus. Succeſſor quoque illius EDUARDUS VI. Coronationis ſuæ die, poſtquam primum ab Avunculo ſuo atque Protectore Angliæ, Eduardo Seymurio, facta ei poteſtate, in Ordinem de Balneo fuerat receptus, omiſſis tum propter anguſtiam temporis nonnullis Ceremoniis, corona cinctus Regia multos tales Equites ſolenni apparatu ipſe (*i*) creavit. Neque Reginæ, quæ Eduardo, ſibique invicem ſucceſſerunt, MARIA atque ELISABETHA iſtum morem poſthabuerunt, Henrico quippe Comiti Arundellio poteſtate (*k*) conceſſa, ut antequam coronarentur, illarum vice & nomine deſignatos Candidatos in Ordinem de Balneo reciperet.

Lord *Fitzhugh*, Lord *Mountjoye*, Lord *Dawbeney*, Lord *Broke*, Sir *Morris Barkeley*, Sir *Henry Clyfford*, Sir *Thomas Knevet*, Sir *Andrew Wyndſor*, Sir *Thomas Barre*, Sir *Thomas Boulleyne*, Sir *Richard Wentworth*, Sir *Henry Owtred*. Sir *Francis Cheny*, Sir *Henry* Wyotte, Sir *George Haſtings*. Sir *Thomas Methan*, Sir *Thomas Bedingfeild*, Sir *John Shelton*, Sir *Gyles Allington*, Sir *John Trevangon*, Sir *William Crowmer*, Sir *John Keydon*, Sir *Edward Oxenbridge*, Sir *Henry Speckveyle*, Sir *Stephan Jeninys*, Mayre Londinenſis.

(*g*) A. MDXXXIII. quo tempore in Ordinem de Balneo recepti fuerunt, March. *Dorſett*, Comes *Derby*, Lord *Clifford*, Lord *Fitzwater*, Lord *Haſtings*, Lord *Montegle*, Lord *Vaux*, Sir *Henry Parker*, Sir *William Windſore*. Sir *John Mordaunt*, Sir *Francis* Weſton, Sir *Thomas Arundell*, Sir *John Hudleſton*, Sir *Thomas Poynings*, Sir *Henry Savell*, Sir *George Fitzwilliams in Lyncolneshire*, Sir *Henry Jermey*.

(*h*) Apparatum ad Principis Walliæ pariter ac Equitum de Balneo creationem jam factum, vide apud Generoſiſſ. ANSTISIUM in *Collect. Auctorit.* p. 49.

(*i*) A. MDXLVI. quo tempore Equites de Balneo fuere creati, Dux *Suffolciæ*, Comes de Hertford, Com. de *Oxford*, Com. de *Ormond*, Lord *Matravers*, Lord *Talbot*, Lord *Strange*, Lord *Herberte*, Lord *Lysley*, Lord *Cromewell*, Lord *Haſtings*, Lord *Charles Brandon*, Lord *Scropes* fil. Lord *Windſor* fil. & her. Sir *Francis Roſſell*, Sir *Anthonie Browne*, Sir *Richard Devereux*, Sir *Henry Seimour*, Sir *John Gates*, Sir *Anthonie Cook de Eſſen*, Sir *Alexander Umpton* de *Oxford*, Sir *George Norton*, Sir *Valentine Knightley*, Sir *Robert Lytron*, Sir *George Vernon*, Sir *John Porte* Sir *Thomas Joſſelyn*, Sir *Edmond Moleneux*, Sir *Chriſtoffer Barker*, Sir *James Halles*, Sir *William Bapthorpe*, Sir *Thomas Brykenell*, Sir *Thomas Novell*, Sir *Angell Marrin* Italien de Cremona, Sir *John Holcroſte*, Sir *John Cutt*, Sir *Henri Terrell*, Sir *William Sherington*, Sir *Wimond Carewe*, Sir *William Sneath*.

(*k*) Mandatum MARIÆ Reginæ ex Rymeri *Act. Publ.* T. XV. p. 497. & 498. latine verſum ita ſe habet: „Maria „Dei gratia &c. Omnibus, ad quos hæ „præſentes pervenerint, Salutem. „Quandoquidem pro Majori Ornamento Noſtri Status Regii, Regiæque Majeſtatis, & pro Nobilitate „ſanguinis, bonis Officiis, & aliis egregiis qualitatibus multorum „Noſtrorum Miniſtrorum & ſubditorum decrevimus, quosdam eorum „in Ordinem Equitum promovere; „Intimamus his præſentibus, quod Nos „juxta ſpecialem fidem, & fiduciam,

XI. Poſtquam JACOBUS VI. Rex Scotiæ, ex STUARTICA Domo ortus, Eliſabethæ in Regno Angliæ ſucceſſit, Rex Magnæ Britanniæ ejus nominis *Primus;* is quoque non ſolum (*l*) Coronationis ſuæ tempore, ſed & cum

„quam in Fideliſſimo & Dilectiſſimo „Conſanguineo & Conſiliario Noſtro, „HENRICO, Comite Arundellio ha„bemus repoſitam, decrevimus, & his „præſentibus decernimus, & ei Au„ctoritatem ac poteſtatem damus, no„mine & Auctoritate Noſtra expedire „& exercere Omnia, & quæcunque „ex parte Perſonæ Noſtræ plene re„quiruntur fieri & expediri ad conſti„tutionem tot & talium Perſonarum „Equeſtrium, intra tempus proxime „ſequentis bidui a Nobis denominan„darum aut per ipſum, ea tamen ra„tione ne univerſim numerum ſexa„ginta excedant. Porro Noſtrum Be„neplacitum eſt, ut omnis, qui ad „hanc Dignitatem promovebitur, & „Eques creabitur per jam memora„tum conſanguineum & Conſiliarium „Noſtrum, ut illico teneat, & dicti „Equeſtris Ordinis Nomine, Titulo, „dignitate, & Omnibus eum Hono„rem concernentibus Prærogativis „gaudeat, tam ample & largiter, ac „alius Eques, & Equites, ſimilis gra„dus & Dignitatis, qui temporibus „Prædeceſſorum Noſtrorum creati fu„erunt, iisdemque Juribus gaudebant, „& fruebantur.„ In cujus rei &c. Teſte *Regina apud Weſtmonaſterium decimo ſeptimo die Octobris, per ipſam Reginam.* Equites ſolitis ceremoniis tum creati fuerunt: Comes in *Devonshire*, Comitis in *Surrey* fil. Lord de *Cardiff*, Lord de *Burgavenny*, Lord *Barkley*, Lord *Lumley*, Lord *Mountjoye*, Sir *Henr. Clynton*, Sir *William Pallet*, Sir *Hugh Rich*, Sir *Henry Paget*, Sir *Henry Parker*, Sir *Robert Rocheſter*, Sir *Henry Jerningham*, Sir *William Dormer*. Mandatum ELISABETHÆ Reginæ apud Rymerum l. c. ejusdem eſt cum priori tenoris, Ordine autem de Balneo tum per Comitem Arundellium initiati fuerunt: Lord *Darcy*, de *North*, Lord *Scheffield*, Lord *Darcy* de *Chiche*, Sir *Robert Rich*, Sir *Roger North*, Sir *John Sowche*, Sir *Nicholas Poines*, Sir *John Barkeley*, Sir *Edward Umpton*, Sir *Henry* Weſton, Sir *George Speke*. Mirum itaque, qui Cambdenus in *Britannia* ſua p. m. 106. Ordinem de Balneo jam diu exoleviſſe, ſcribere potuerit.

(*l*) Conſtitutis, qui ſuo nomine id facerent, quatuor Commiſſariis, juxta Mandatum, quod ex Generoſiſſ. Anſtiſii citato libro latine verſum ita ſe habet: JACOBUS &c. *omnibus* &c. *ſalutem.* „Poſtea quam ad ſolemnitatem „Coronationis Noſtræ, ſimili, hono„rabilique modo, ut in Coronatione „Noſtrorum Progenitorum conſuetum „fuit, & noſtram Dignitatem Statum„que Regalem decet, proceſſuri, tam „propter Coronationis Noſtræ Splen„dorem, quam Nobilitatem Sanguinis, „Bona Officia & alias qualitates mul„torum Miniſtrorum & Subditorum „decrevimus quosdam eorum ad Di„gnitatem Ordinis Equeſtris evehere, „ea de cauſa notum facimus, quod ob „ſpecialem fiduciam quam ponimus in „Noſtris fidelisſimis & Dilectisſimis „Conſanguineis & Conſiliariis, *Eduardo*, „Comite Worceſtriæ, Noſtro Comite „Mareſchallo; *Carolo*, Comite Noting„hamiæ, Noſtro Supremo Angliæ Ami„ralio; *Thoma*, Comite Suffolciæ, Ca„merario Noſtræ Domus Regiæ, ut & „Noſtro Fidelisſimo & Dilectisſimo „*Johanne*, Domino de Lumley, deſigna„vimus, & tenore præſentium deſigna„mus, auctoritatemque eis damus, vel „culibet eorum trium, vel duobus il-

cum filium ſuum natu minorem, CAROLUM, Ducem Eboracenſem (*m*) atque poſtea natu majorem, HENRICUM, Principem Walliæ (*n*) crearet hoc vero mortuo Carolum in illa dignitate (*o*) ſurrogaret, Equites de Bal-

„lorum pro Nobis & Noſtro nomine „noſtraque auctoritate, nonſolum ut „faciant & exerceant omnia vice No- „ſtra ad creandos EQUITES de BAL- „NEO ſed & ſpecialiter in eum finem „Auctores ſumus, ut faciant & Ordi- „nent tales aliasque Equeſtres Perſo- „nas, quas duorum ex hinc dierum „ſpatio Nos nominabimus, vel quem „nominaverit, vel quos omnes tres „eorum nominabunt, ita tamen, ne „omnes illorum numerum ſexaginta „excedant. Eſt etiam Noſtrum Bene- „placitum, ut, quicunque promove- „bitur ad Dignitatem Ordinis Eque- „ſtris per Noſtros præfatos Commiſſa- „rios, vel per tres vel duos illorum, „habeat, fruaturque Ordine illo Eque- „ſtri, ejusque Nomine, Titulo, Di- „gnitate, & Omnibus prærogativis, „quæ ad eum pertinent, tam ample & „largiter, ac ulli alii Eques vel Equi- „tes ejusdem gradus tempore cujusli- „bet ex Progenitoribus creati jus ha- „buerunt & gaviſi fuerunt.„ *In teſtimonium &c.* XXII. Julii anno regni Angliæ primo *& ſcotiæ XXXVII.* Equites verò tum creati fuerunt LORDS & SIRS; *Philip Herbert, Thomas Barkley, William Evers, George Warthon, Robert Rich, Robert Carre, John Egerton, Henry Compton, Thomas Erskine, William Auſtuddur, Patricke Murray, James Hay, John Lyndſey, Richard Preſton, Oliver Cromwel, Edward Stanley, William Herbert, Foulcke Grevell, Francis Fanne, Robert Chicheſter, Robert Knowles, William Clifton, Francis Fortescue, Edward Corbet, Edward Herbert, Thomas Langton, William Pope, Arthur Hopton, Charles Morifon, Francis Leigh, Edward Mountagu, Edward Stanhop, Peter Mannwood, Robert Harley, Thomas Strickland, Chriſtopher Hatton, Edward Griffin, Robert Bevill, William Welby, Edward Harwell, John Mallet, Walther Aſton, Henry Gawdy, Richard Musgrave, John Stowell, Richard Amiots, Thomas Leeds, Thomas Jermyn, Ralph Hare, William Forſter, George Speacke, George Hyde, Anthony Felton, Anthony Brown, Thomas Wiſe, Robert Chamberlaine, Anthony Palmer, Edward Heron, Henry Burton, Robert Barcker, William Norvis, Roger Bodenham.*

(*m*) Una cum Carolo Principe in Ordinem de Balneo tum receptis SIRS: *Robert Bartu, William Compton, Grey Bridges, Francis Norris, William Cecill, Allan Percy, Francis Mannors, Francis Clifford, Thomas Somerſet, Thomas Howard, John Harrington.*

(*n*) A. M. DCX. Qua Equeſtri inauguratione admodum ſolenni in Ordinem de Balneo recepti fuerunt, LORDS & SIRS: *Henry Vere, George Gordon, Henry Glifford, Henry Katcliffe, Edward Bourcher, Francis Hay, James Erskin, Thomas* Windſor, *Thomas* Wenthworth, *Charles Somerſet, Edward Somerſet, Thomas Ratcliffe, Francis Stuart, William Styward, Ferdinando Sutton, Henry Cary, Oliver St. John, Gilbert Gerrard, Charles Stanhop, Edward Bruce, William Sidney, Mavin Touchet, Peregrine Bartu, Henry Rich, Edward Scheffield, William Cavendish.* Ipſum autem HENRICUM Principem Walliæ in eundem Ordinem haud fuiſſe receptum, utpote Principem natu Maximum & quod Scotorum conſuetudine, cum baptizaretur *Princeps & Magnus Stewardus* (Magnus Magiſter ſ. Seneſcallus) *Scotiæ, Dux Roſæus, Comes Carricenſis, Dominus* (Lord) *de Ilis, Baro & Eques de Renfrewe* jam creatus eſſet, non immerito Generoſiſſ. ANSTIS. conjicit *Obſervat.* p. 64.

(*o*) Quod factum A. MDCXVI. atque Equites de Balneo tum creati fuerunt

neo majorum ſuorum more inaugurari juſſit; Quem honorem iſti Ordini quoque habuit CAROLUS I. utpote qui non tamtum cum (p) coronaretur multos Nobiles iſtius Ordinis Honoribus ornavit, ſed & filium ſuum Carolum in eumdem Ordinem recipi (q) voluit. Turbis vero in Magna Britannia poſtea ortis Equeſtris iſte ritus intermiſſus (r) fuit, usque dum Carolus II. in Regnum revocatus Equites de Balneo ante coronationem ſuam priſtino more rurſus creari (s) jufſerit. Ex quo vero JACOBUS II. novos recipi juſſit, ut apparet ex documento apud Generoſiſſ. ANSTISIUM *Coll. Auth.* p. 79. qui verò de Equite Baccalaureo id intelligendum eſſe cenſet, alio ibidem p. 80. documento adductus, quippe quo Carolus *Equitis Baccalaurei titulo & ritibus* (ut leges jubent) *primo initiandus eſſe*, dicitur.

LORDS & SIRS: *James Matravers, Algernon Percy, James Wriothesley, Theophily Clinton, Edward Seymour, George Barckeley, Henry Mordant, Alexander Fenton, Henry Howard, Edward Sackvil, William Howard, Edward Howard, William Seymour, Mountague Bartie, William Stourtan, William Parker, Dudley North, William Spencer, Spencer Compton, Rowland St. John, John Cavendish, Thomas Nevil, John Koper, John North, Henry Carey.*

(p) A. MDCXXV. quo tempore Equites de Balneo inaugurati fuerunt: LORDS & SIRS: *George Fielding, James Stanley, Charles Cecill, Charles Herbert, Robert Rich, James Hay, Bazel Fielding, Oliver St. John, Mildmay Fane, Henry Pawlet, Edward Montagu, John Cary, Charles Howard, William Howard, Robert Stanley, Pawlet St. John, Francis Fane, James Howard, William Cawendish, Thomas Wentworth, William Paget, William Ruſſell, Henry Stanhope, Richard Vaughan, Chriſtopher Nevill, Roger Bartie, Thomas Warthon, St. John Blunt, Ralph Clare, John Maynard, Francis Carew, John Byron, Roger Palmer, Henry Edmonds, Ralph Hopton, William Brooke, Alexander Ratcliffe, Edward Scot, Chriſtopher Hatton, Thomas Sackvill, John Munſon, Peter Wentworth, John Buttler, Edward Hungerford, Richard Lewſon, Nathaniel Bacon, Robert Poyntz, Robert Bevill, Thomas Schmith, Thomas Fanshaw, Miles Hobard, Henry Hart, Francis Carew, John Backhouſe, Matthew Monins, John Stowell, John Jennings, Stepen Harwey.*

(q) Cum nempe A. MDCXXXVII. Carolum Ordine Periscelidis adſcribere vellet, in Ordinem de Balneo eum prius

(r) Non enim niſi pacis tempore Equites de Balneo in Anglia & aliis Regnis creatos fuiſſe. NIC. UPTONUS de *Stud. Milit.* p. 8. teſtatur.

(s) Præcipuis Angliæ Proceribus JACOBO, Duci Ormondenſi, Domino Stewardo ſ. Seneſcallo Angliæ; MONTAGU Comiti Lindſeyenſi, Supremo Angliæ Camerario; ALGERNONI Comiti Northumberlandiæ, Coneſtablio; JACOBO Comiti Suffolciæ, Mareſchallo, & EDWARDO Comiti de Mancheſter, utnomine ſuo Equites de Balneo crearent, mandato dato, ejusdem cetera cum ſuperioribus tenoris. Ordine verò de Balneo tum inaugurati fuerunt: LORDS & SIRS: *Edward Clinton, John Brackley, Philip Herbert, William Egerton, Vere Vane, Charles Berckeley, Henry Bellasſis, Henry Hyde, Roland Bellaſſis, Henry Capell, John Vaughan, Charles Stanley, Francis Fane, Henry Fanc, William Portman, Richard Temple, William Ducy, Thomas Trevor, John Seudamore, William Gardiner, Charles Cornvvallis, John Nicholas, John Monſon, Bourchier Wray, John Coventry, Edvvard Hungerford, John Knevet, Philip Buttler, Adrian Scrope, Richard Knightley, Henry Heron, John Levvkenor, George Brovvne, William Terringham, Francis Godolphin, Edvvard Bayn-*

novos motus excitavit, atque continuis inde usque bellis Magna Britannia implicita manſit, nulla iterum tam ſub WILHELMI III. (*) quam ANNÆ Reginæ Imperiis ejus Ordinis ratio fuit habita.

XII. Ex quo vero Rex Magnæ Britanniæ, *Divus* GEORGIUS, ejus Nominis & Sereniſſimæ Domus Brunſwico-Hanoveranæ PRIMUS (*t*), hoſtibus ſumma pariter Prudentia ac invicta Virtute ſua debellatis, Regno ſuo, totique Europæ Pacem reſtituerat, inter alia ſaluberrima Inſtituta Ordinem quoque de Balneo Anno MDCCXXV. non tantum reſtauravit, ſed & multo quam antea ſplendidiorem reddidit. Uti enim iſte Ordo ſua quidem Antiquitate reliquos omnes ſuperabat, certa autem norma adhuc deſtituebatur, ita *Divus* ille REX Formam ceteris Ordinibus Regularibus ſimilem ei præſcripſit, atque Magno Magiſtro & Officialibus conſtitutis, Equitum quoque numero, modoque eos eligendi pariter ac Inaugurandi definito, Capituli denique aliisque Juribus & Honoribus ei conceſſis, hæc aliaque plura, ad iſtius Ordinis maximum ſplendorem decreta, STATUTORUM (*v*) volumine confirmavit atque munivit.

XIII. Primum ergo Militaris atque Equeſtris, de quo agimus, Ordo propter Regulam a Divo Georgio ei præſcriptam ORDINIS (*w*) REGULARIS, atque ſi Religionis, Virginum, Viduarum, Orphanorum defenſionem,

D

ceperit, atque iisdem alios ornaverit.

ton, Grevill Verney, Edvvard Harley, Edvvard Walpole, Francis Popham, Edvvard Wiſe, Chriſtopher Calthrop, Richard Edgcome, William Bromley, Thomas Bridges, Thomas Fanshavv, John Denham, Nicolas Bacon, James Altham, Thomas Wendy, John Brampſton, George Freeman, Nicholas Slaning, Richard Ingoldsby, John Rolles, Edvvard Heath, William Morley, John Bennet, Hugh Smith, Simon Leech, Henry Cheſter, Robert Atkyns, Robert Gayre, Richard Povvle, Huygh Ducy, Stephen Hales, Ralph Bash, Thomas Whitmore.

(*) Equidem cum ille M. Britanniæ Rex inauguraretur, LXVIII. Equites *SS. Trinitatis*, qui alias Equites de Balneo vocentur, creatos fuiſſe, AUCTOR *Theatri Europ.* T. XIII. p. 896. refert. Præterquam vero, quod Equites de Balneo, *SS. Trinitatis* nomine nunquam appellati fuerint, tempore quoque Coronationis Wilhelmi III. nullos Equites de Balneo creatos fuiſſe ipſa STATUTA Ordinis de Balneo teſtantur, in quorum *Proœmio* Carolus II. ultimus fuiſſe dicitur, qui iſtius Ordinis Honores ac-

(*t*) Qui ex Sereniſſima ac Potentiſſima Domo Electorali BRUNSUICO-HANOVERANA ortus, tam Matris ſuæ, SOPHIÆ, Jacobi I. Magnæ Britanniæ Regis ex filia Eliſabetha Neptis, jure, quam Parlamentorum Decretis & Univerſi Populi applauſu Annæ Reginæ, A. MDCCXIV. defunctæ in eodem Regno ſucceſſit, Rebusq; feliciſſime geſtis A. MDCCXXVII. omnium mœrori diem ſupremum obiit.

(*v*) Quæ Idiomate Anglico, atque ex eo latine verſa huic Commentationi ſubjunximus.

(*w*) Juxta DIPLOMA *Reſtaurati* Ordinis, Statutis ejus præfixum. Quod vero ANDR. MENDO loco *ſupra* §. V. adducto, hunc Ordinem non Ordinis ſed *Militiæ* tantum nomine appellandum eſſe ſcribit, quod a Pontifice Rom. haud fuerit confirmatus, id teſtimoniis §. VIII. lit. (n) allatis adverſatur atque homini Pontificio condonari debet.

sionem, aliaque pia Equitum officia (*x*) spectes, *Religiosi* (*y*) quoque nunc rationem habet, nomen vero ORDINIS DE BALNEO (*z*) ab antiquissima, præcipuaque Equites ejus per Balneum initiandi ceremonia accepit, FRATERNITATIS quoque Titulo (*a*) insignitus.

XIV. Constituunt vero hunc Ordinem Ipsi primum Magnæ Britanniæ REGES, quibus Supremum in Equestrem illam Societatem Imperium, ejusque statuta tum interpretandi tum mutandi reservata est (*b*) potestas; PRINCEPS (*c*) dein Regio sanguine ortus; MAGNUS prætarea MAGISTER (*d*) qui, cum Reges ipsi rebus Ordinis haud semper intenti esse possint, vices illorum, sedulamque, ut statuta ritusque ejus Ordinis quam accuratissime observentur, curam gerere, aliaque, quæ ad ejus honorem pertinere judicaverit, agere debet, simulque Ordinis SIGILLUM (*e*) custodit, illudq; Documentis Ordinem respicientibus affigendi solus Potestatem habet; Reliqui denique EQUITES numero XXXV. e principibus M. Britanniæ Familiis a Divo Georgio designati, certoque modo in locum defunctorum deinceps eligendi atque inaugurandi. Omnium vero, qui nunc Ordinem de Balneo constituunt, nomina atque splendidos Honores ex sequenti illorum INDICE, Insignia vero Gentilitia ex adjectis Tabulis cognosces.

(*x*) De quibus vide *Jusjurandum* Equitum de Balneo *infra* §. XXIV. lit (g).

(*y*) Equidem an Militares Ordines Religiosis Societatibus possint accenseri? inter Pontificios Doctores apud ANDR. MENDONEM *Disq. II.* Q. II. §. 1, 2, 3. valde disputatur, aliique id negant, quod Religiosis arma sint prohibita, atque nonnulli Ordinum Militarium Vota Castitatis & Paupertatis haud observent. At ipse Mendo cum aliis id merito affirmat, quod Ordines Militares arma ad defensionem Religionis gerant, cum Votis vero Castitatis & Paupertatis Conjugia & Bonorum Proprietas haud pugnent. Neque Ordinibus Militaribus Religiosis apud Protestantes obstare, quod Religionem Pontificiam haut profiteantur, nec a Pontifice R. confirmentur, vide, quæ ad *Hist. Ord. Johannitici*, nuper a nobis editam, diximus.

(*z*) Quo nomine, ut in posterum appelletur, tam in DIPLOMATE *Instaurationis Ordinis de Balneo* quam *Statutorum* ejus initio sancitum est; quamvis id novum non sit, cum & in antiquis monumentis *Ordinis Militaris*, *Militiæ* & *Militum de Balneo* sæpe mentio occurrat, qua de re vide *supra* §. VIII. lit. (n) de ritu vero Balneationis *infra* §. XIX.

(*a*) STATUT. *Art. VI.* Eadem nempe ratione, qua aliorum quoque Ordinum Militarium Religiosorum Equites FRATRES appellari solent. Vide STAT. *Ord. S. Joh.* Tit. de V. S. l. 1. & Notas nostras ad *Hist. Ord. Joh.* p. 27.

(*b*) STATUT. *Art. I.* atque post *Divum* GEORGIUM I. nunc Supremus Ordinis de Balneo Dominus est, Augustus atque Potentissimus M. Britanniæ Rex, GEORGIUS II. cujus Imperium, ut D. O. M. porro quam felicissimum esse sinat, ex interiori animi nostri sententia precamur.

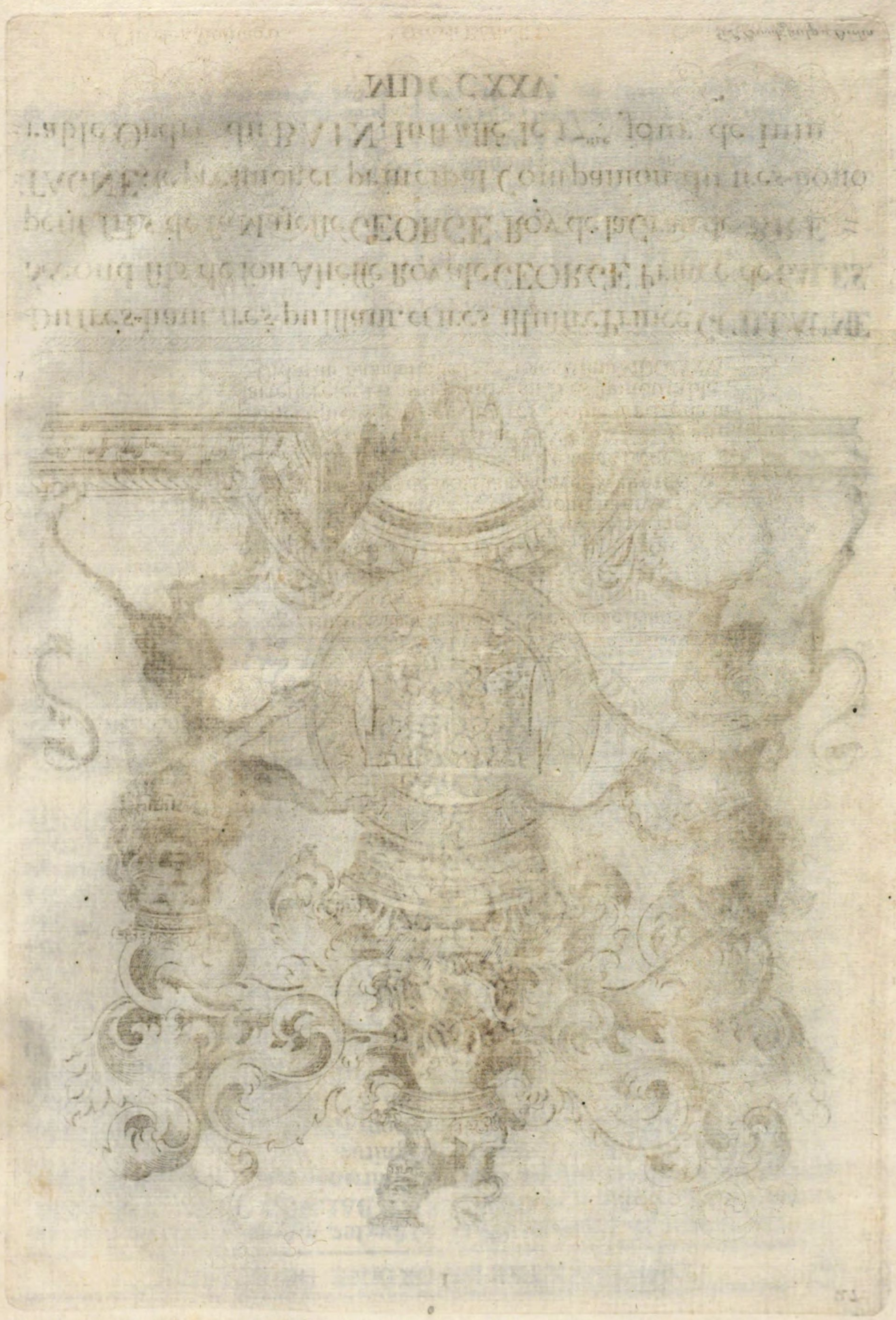
(*c*) Qualis nunc est Serenissimus Princeps atque Dux Cumberlandiæ, WILHELMUS, Potentissimi Regis, Georgii II. nunc felicissime Regnantis Filius natu minor, qui A. MDCCXXI. natus, propter teneram, qua erat, cum a Divo Avo suo in Ordinem de Balneo cooptaretur, ætatem a quibusdam Inaugurationis ceremoniis immunis declaratus fuit per STATUTA *Art. VI.*

(*d*) Quo nomine summos Ordinum Militarium Præfectos vel Romanorum exemplo, qui summos Militiæ suæ Præfectos isto titulo insignire solebant; vel Christi Servatoris nostri mandato MATTH. XXIII. 8. appellari, vide, quæ ad *Hist. Ord. Joh.* pag. 27. disseruimus, MAGNUM vero Ordinis de Balneo MAGISTERIUM primus nunc gerit Celsissimus Princeps ac Dominus, JOHANNES DUX de MONTAGU, de quo ejusque munere vide STATUT. *Art. VI.*

(*e*) EDUARDI nempe III. qui Ordinem Perisceelidis peculiari Sigillo uti voluit, exemplo *Divus* GEORGIUS I. Ordini quoque de Balneo proprium Sigillum concessit, forma ejus præscripta in *Dipl. Instaurat. Ord. de Balneo.*

Du très-haut, très puissant, et très illustre Prince GUILLAUME
Second fils de son Alteſſe Royale GEORGE Prince de GALES,
petit fils de sa Majesté GEORGE Roy de la Grande BRE =
=TAGNE; le premier, et principal Companion du très-hono:
=rable Ordre du BAIN, Installé le 17^me^. jour de Iuin
MDCCXXV.

G.P. Busch sculp. a Berlin



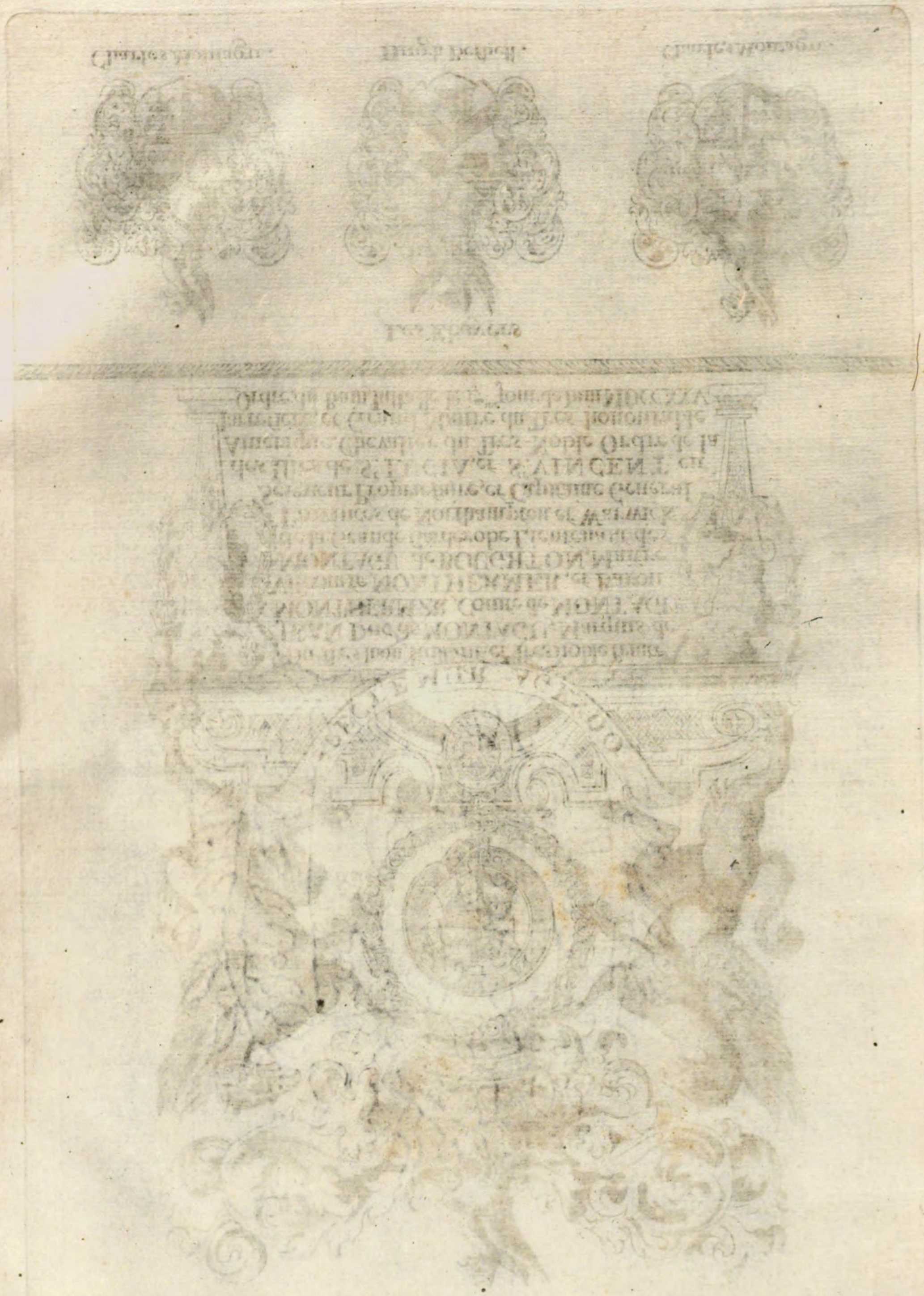
Du Tres haut, Puissant, et Tres noble Prince
JEAN Duc de MONTAGU, Marquis de
MONTHERMER, Comte de MONTAGU,
Viscomte MONTHERMER, et Baron
MONTAGU de BOUGHTON, Maitre
de la Grande Garderobe Lieutenant des
Provinces de Northampton et Warwick
Seigneur Proprietaire, et Capitaine General
des Isles de S.t LUCIA, et S.t VINCENT en
Amerique, Chevalier du Tres-Noble Ordre de la
Jarretiere, et Grand Maitre du Tres honourable
Ordre du Bain, Installè le 17.me jour de Juin MDCCXXV

Les Ecuyers

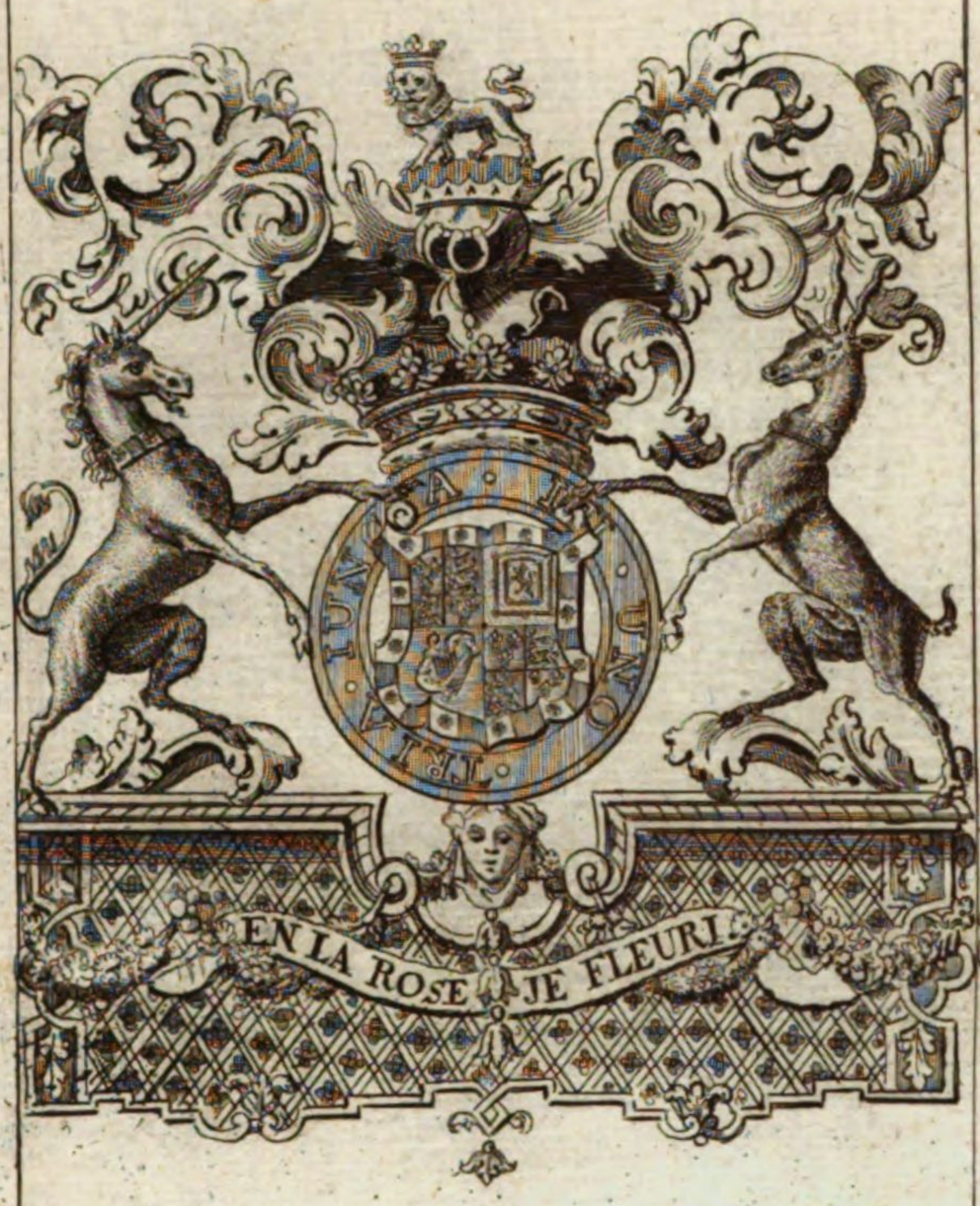
Charles Montagu.

Hugh Bethell.

Charles Montagu.

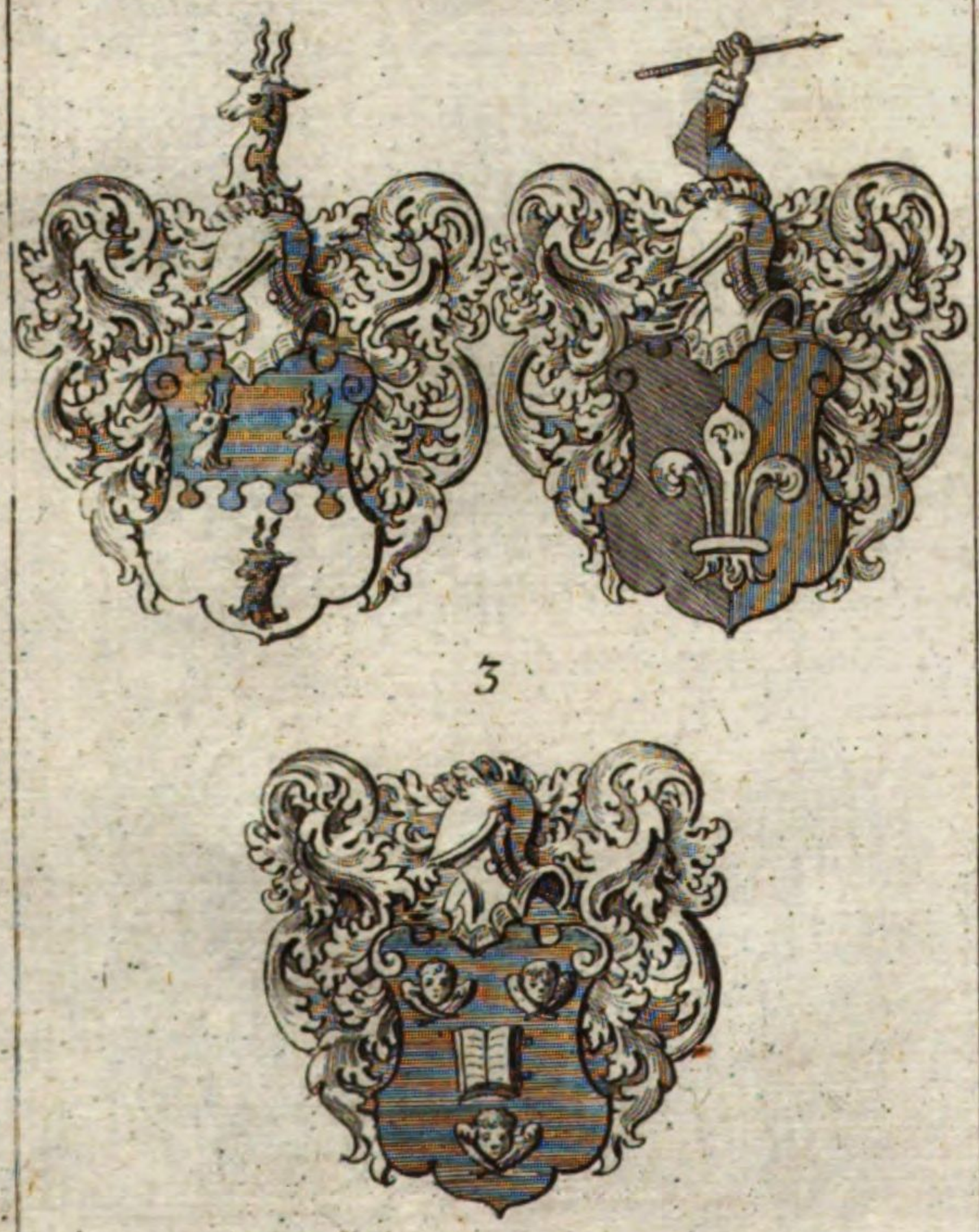


III



IV

1 2 3



1 2 3

III.

Le tres Haut, Puiſſant
& tres Noble

PRINCE,

CHARLES LENOS,

Duc de RICHMOND, & LENOX, Comte de MARCH, & DARNLEY, Baron de SETTRINGTON & METHUEN, & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé par ſon Procureur le 17me Jour du Juin MDCCXXV.

IV.

Le tres Haut, Puiſſant
& tres Noble

PRINCE,

WILLIAM MONTAGU,

Duc de MANCHESTER, Comte de MANCHESTER, Viscomte MANDEVILE, Baron de MONTAGU de KIMBOLTON, Gentilhomme de la Chambre du Lit de Sa Majeſté, Seigneur Lieutenant & Guardien des Rolles dans la Province de HUNTINGTON, & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour du Juin MDCCXXV.

Les Ecuyers

du Duc de RICHMOND.	du Duc de MANCHESTER.
1. Matthew Snow.	1. Charles Edwin.
2. Martin Folckes.	2. Savill Cuſt.
3. Thomas Hille.	3. François Hildesley.

V.

Le tres Noble & Puiſſant

SEIGNEUR,

CHARLES BAUCLAIR,

Fils ainé de CHARLES, Duc de St. ALBANS, Comte de BURFORD, Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour du Juin MDCCXXV.

VI.

Le tres Noble & Puiſſant

SEIGNEUR,

JEAN SIDNEY,

Comte de LEICESTER, Vicomte LISLE, Baron SIDNEY de PENSHURST, Gentilhomme de la Chambre du Lit de Sa Majeſté, Capitaine de la Bande des Valets des Gardes, Seigneur Lieutenant de la Province de KENT, & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour du Juin MDCCXXV.

Les Ecuyers

du Comte de BURFORD.

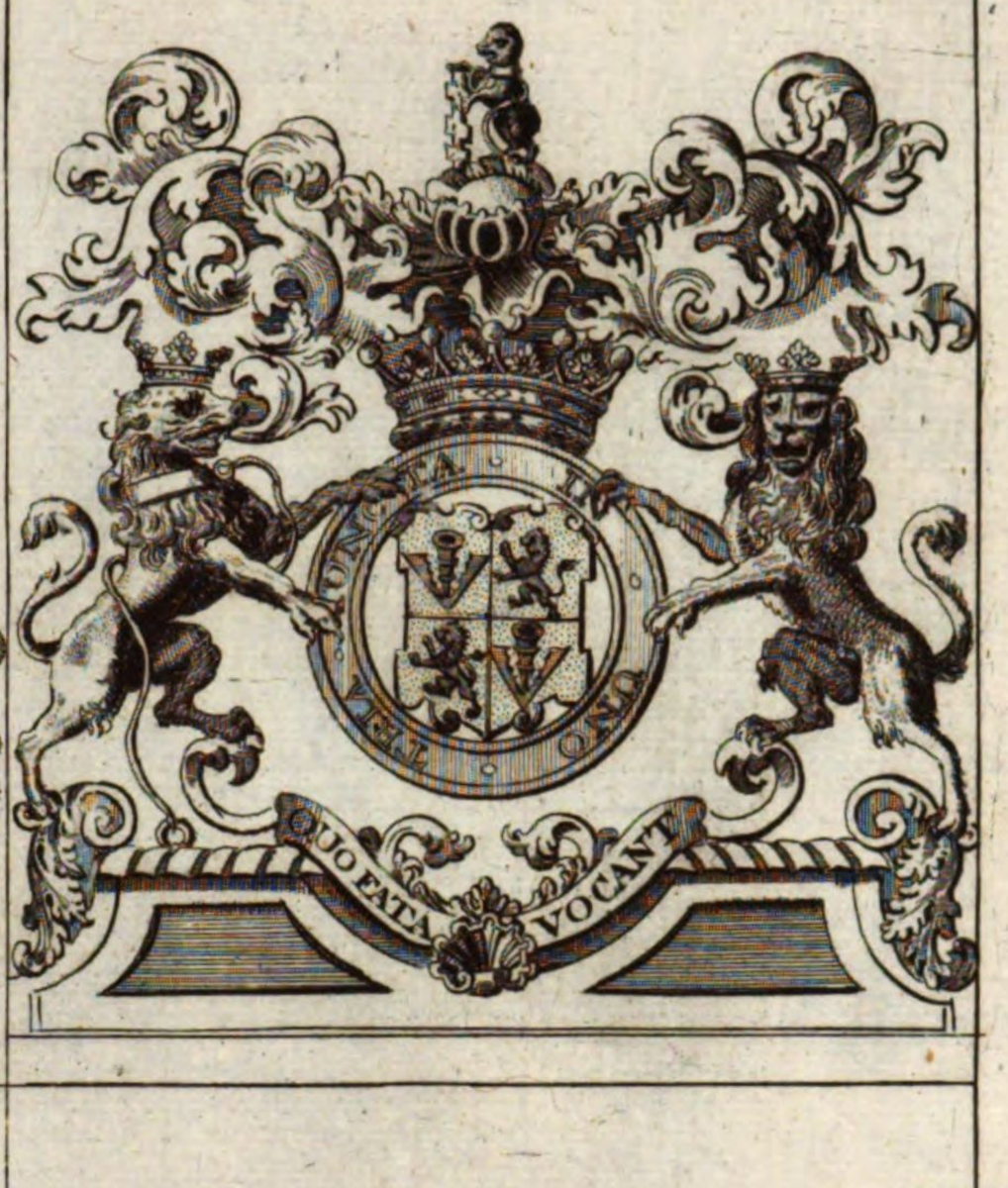
1. Guilliaume Hall.
2. Charles James Kirke.
3. Autoine Cornisn.

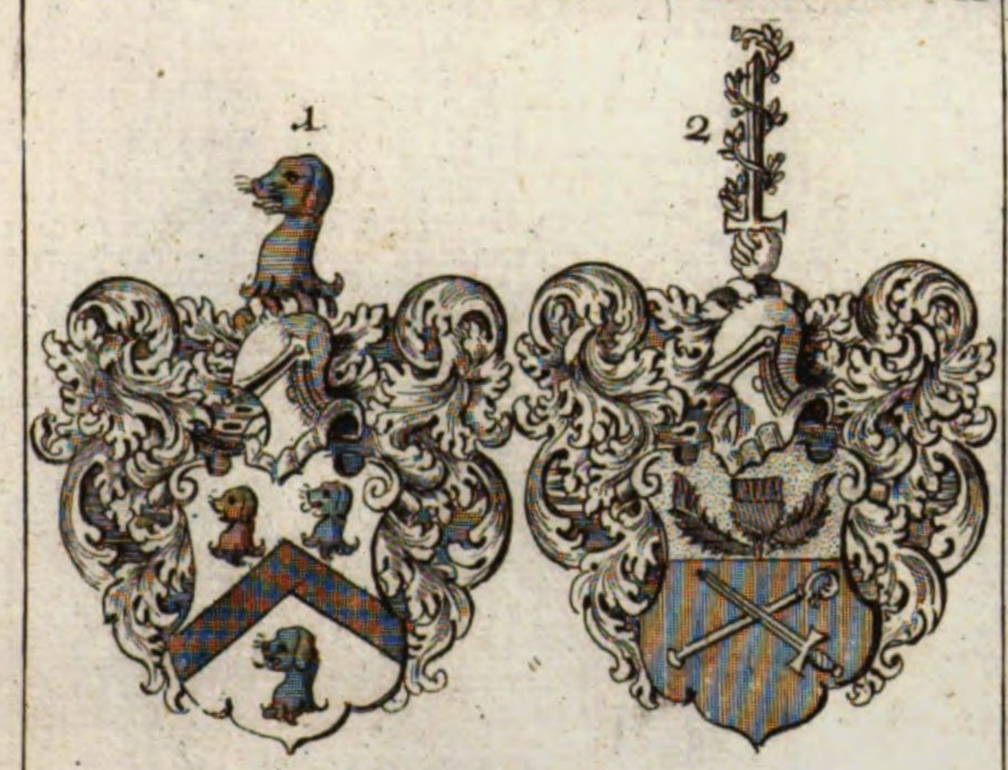
du Comte de LEICESTER.

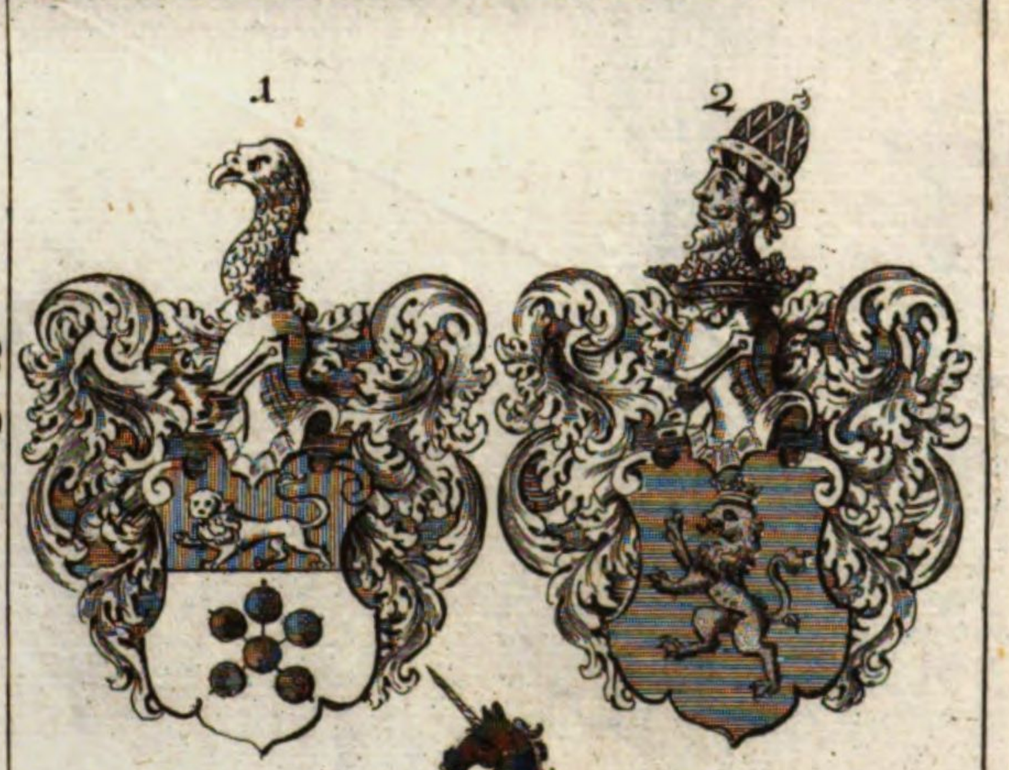
1. Guillaume de Rollinſon.
2. Solomon Durell.
3. Jean Myſter.

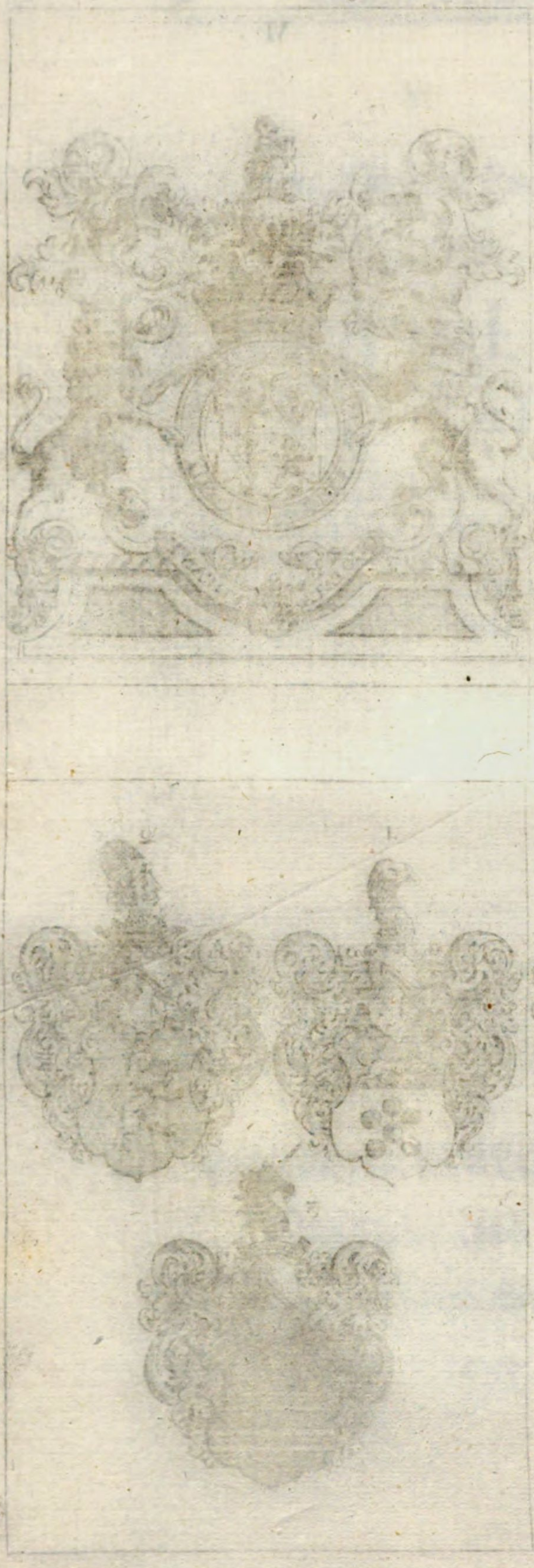
V

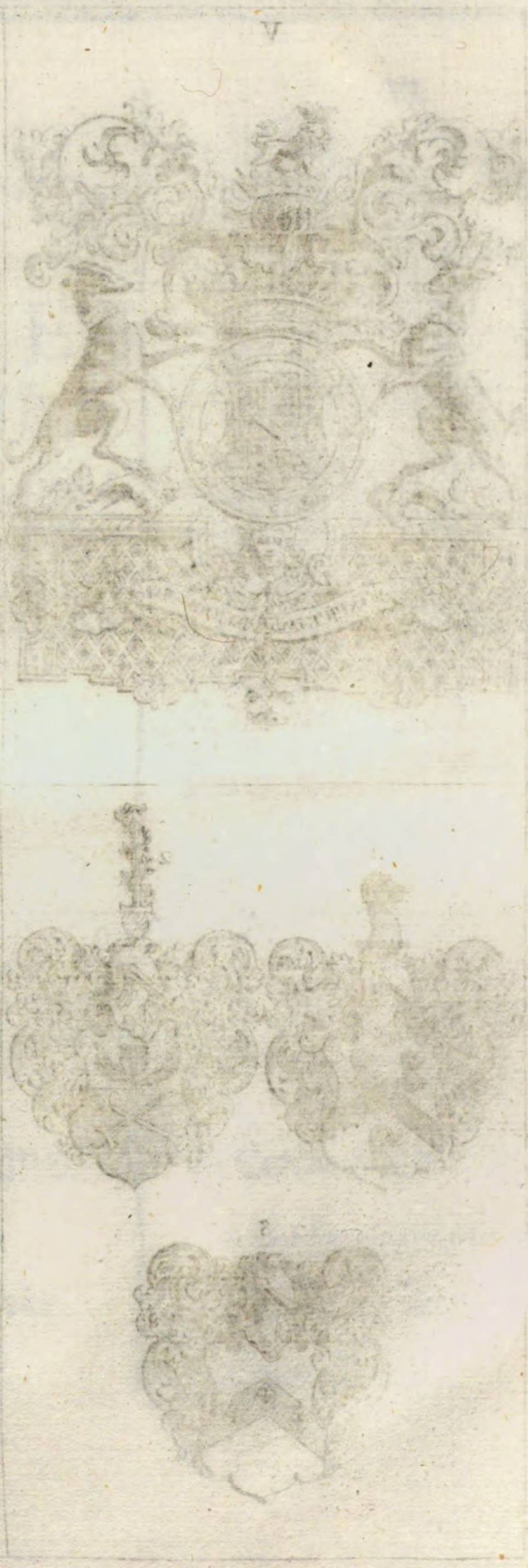
VI

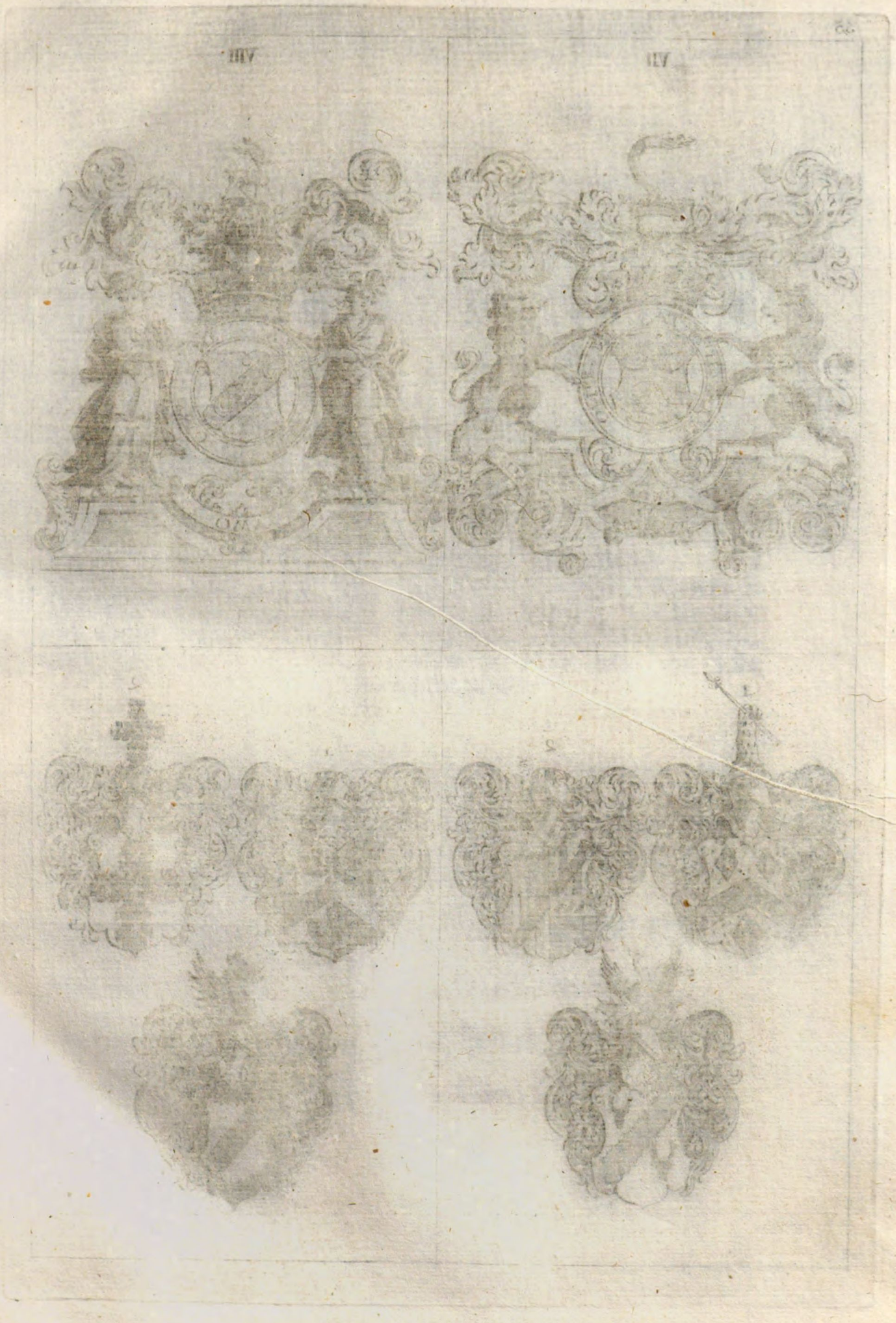




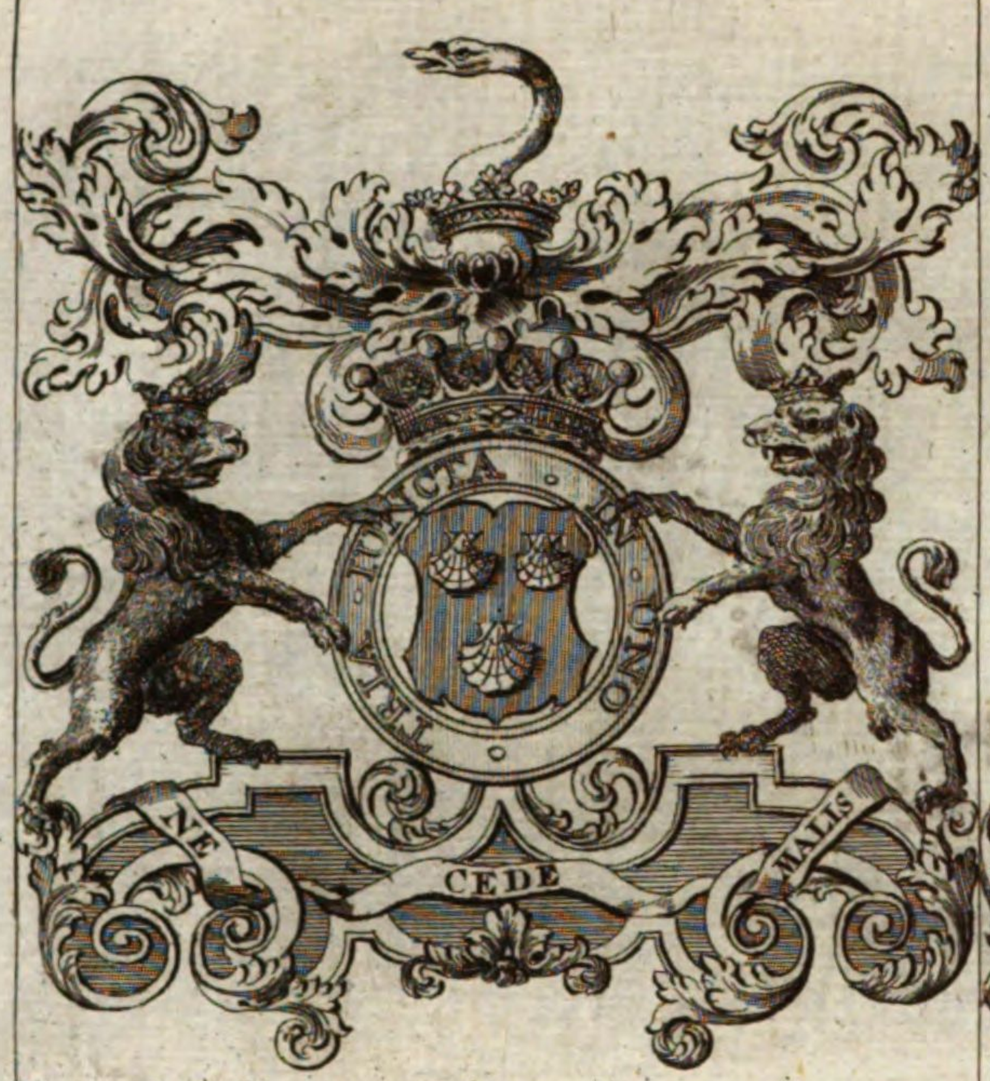








VII


TRIA · IUNCTA · IN · UNO
NE
CEDE
MALIS

VIII

TRIA · IUNCTA · IN · UNO
AMO

1
2
5

2
1
3

VII.

Le tres Noble & Puiſſant

SEIGNEUR.

GUILLAUME ANNE de KEPPELL,

Comte d'ALBEMARLE, Vicomte de BURY, Baron ASHFORD de ASHFORD, Colonel dans le Second Regiment des Gardes a pied du ROY, Gentilhomme de la Chambre du Lit de Son Alteſſe Royale le Prince de GALES, & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour du Juin MDCCXXV.

VIII.

Le tres Noble & Puiſſant

SEIGNEUR.

HENRY SCOT,

Comte DELORAINE, Vicomte HERMITAGE, Baron SCOT de GOLDYLANDS, Second Fils de Jaques, feu Duc de MONMOUTH, & ANNE, Ducheſſe de BUCCLEUCH, Gentilhomme de la Chambre de Son Alteſſe Royale le Prince de GALES, & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour du Juin MDCCXXV.

Les Ecuyers

du Comte de ALBEMARLE.

1. Jean Huggins, Jun.
2. Guillaume Sanderſon.
3. Samuel Needham.

du Comte DELORAINE.

1. Guillaume Battine.
2. Daniel Petteward.
3. Coort Knevet.

IX.

Le tres Noble & Puiſſant

SEIGNEUR,

GEORGE MONTAGU,

Comte de HALIFAX, Vicomte de SUNBURY, Baron de HALIFAX, Auditeur de l' E'chequier, Conſeiller du Roy en Son Conſeil Privé, & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour du Juin MDCCXXV.

X.

Le tres Noble & Puiſſant

SEIGNEUR,

TALBOT YELVERTON,

Comte de SUSSEX, Vicomte LONGUEVILLE, Baron GREY de RUTHEN, HASTINGS, VALENCE, & WEISFORD, Baroné Gentilhomme de la Chambre du Lit de Sa Majeſté, & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour du Juin MDCCXXV.

Les Ecuyers

du Comte de HALLIFAX.

1. Fermer Lisle.
2. Jean Robert.
3. Jean Robinſon, Fils ainé de St. Jacques Robinſon, Bart.

du Comte de SUSSEX.

1. Simon Degge.
2. Daniel Houghton.
3. Stephan Martin Leake.

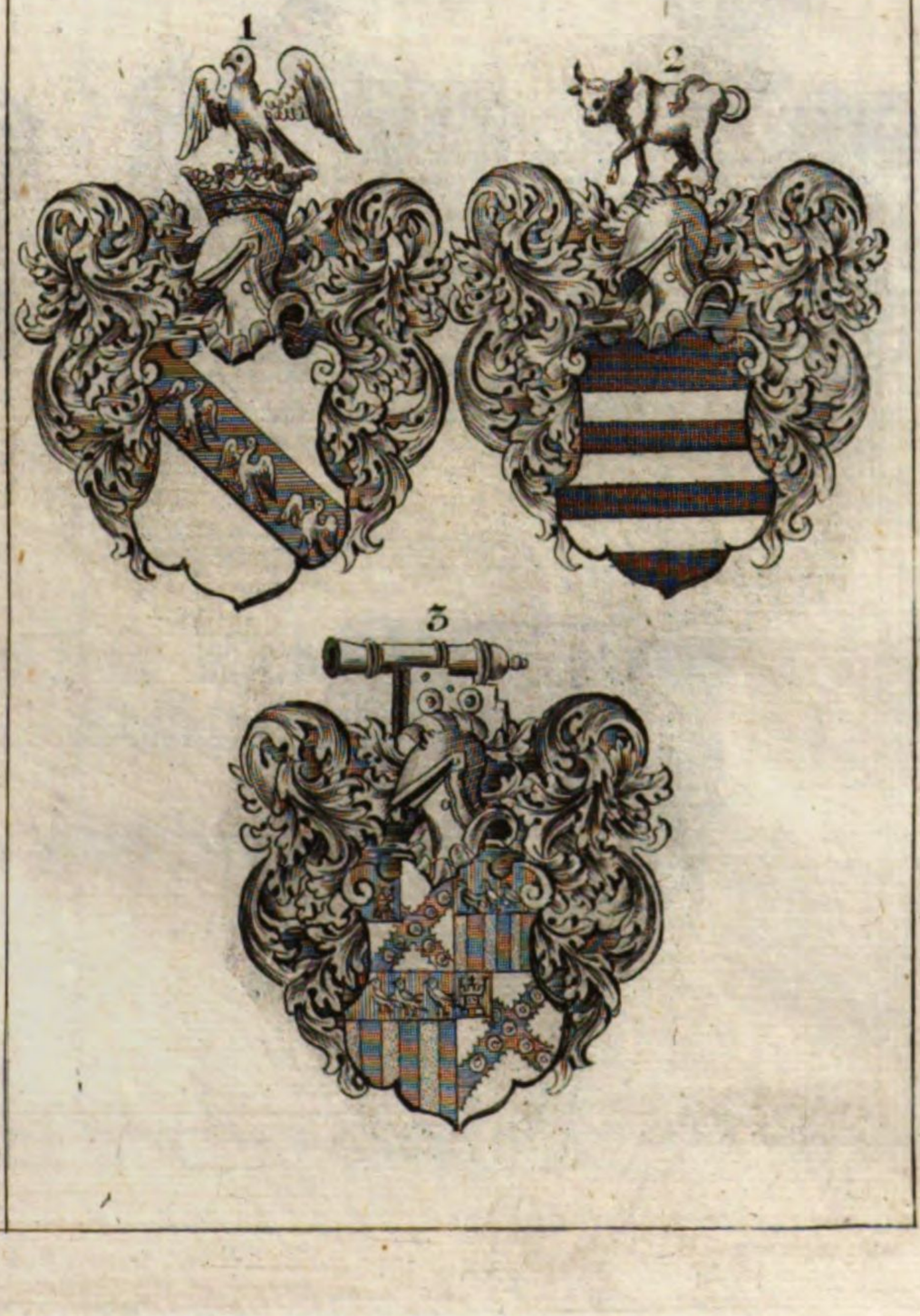
IX

IUNCTA VIRTUTI FIDES
TUM CUM DIGNITATE

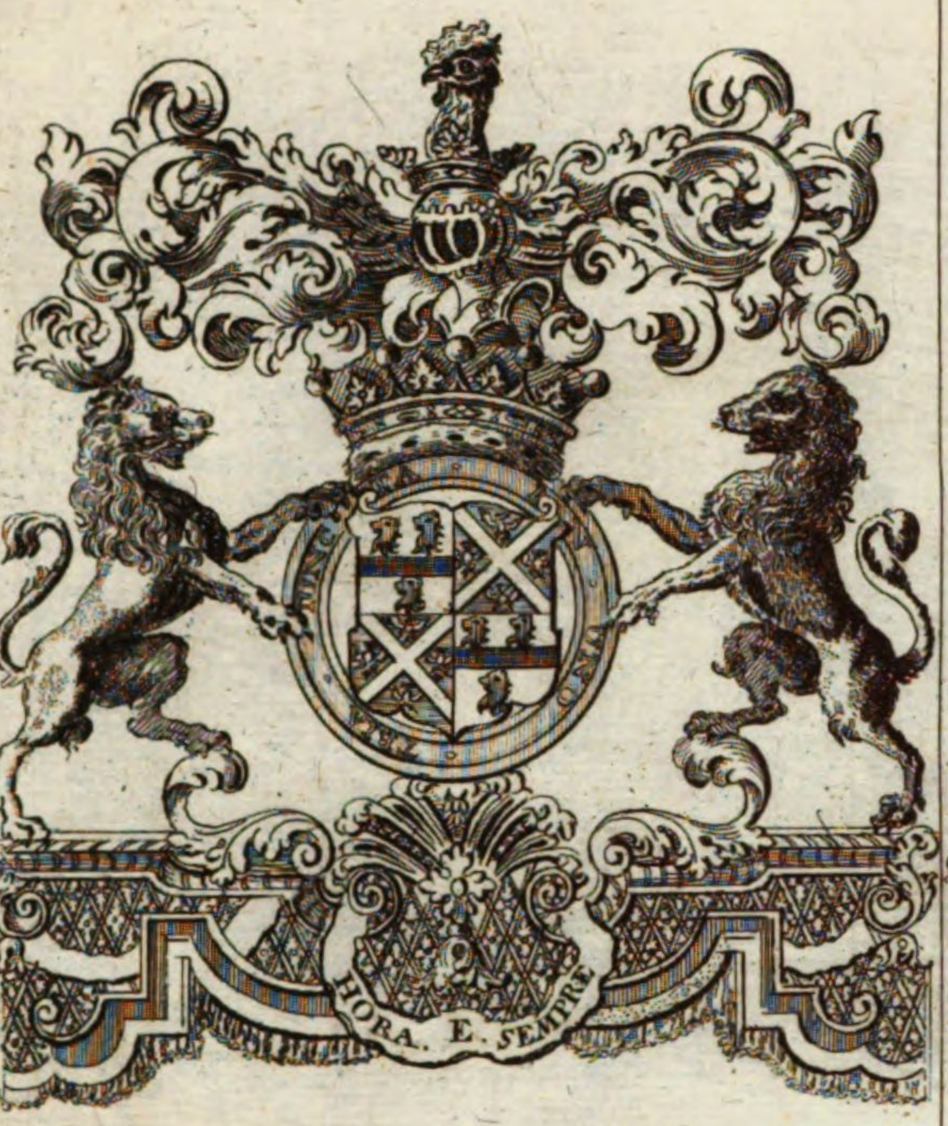
X

IUNCTA VIRTUTI FIDES
FOY EN TOUT

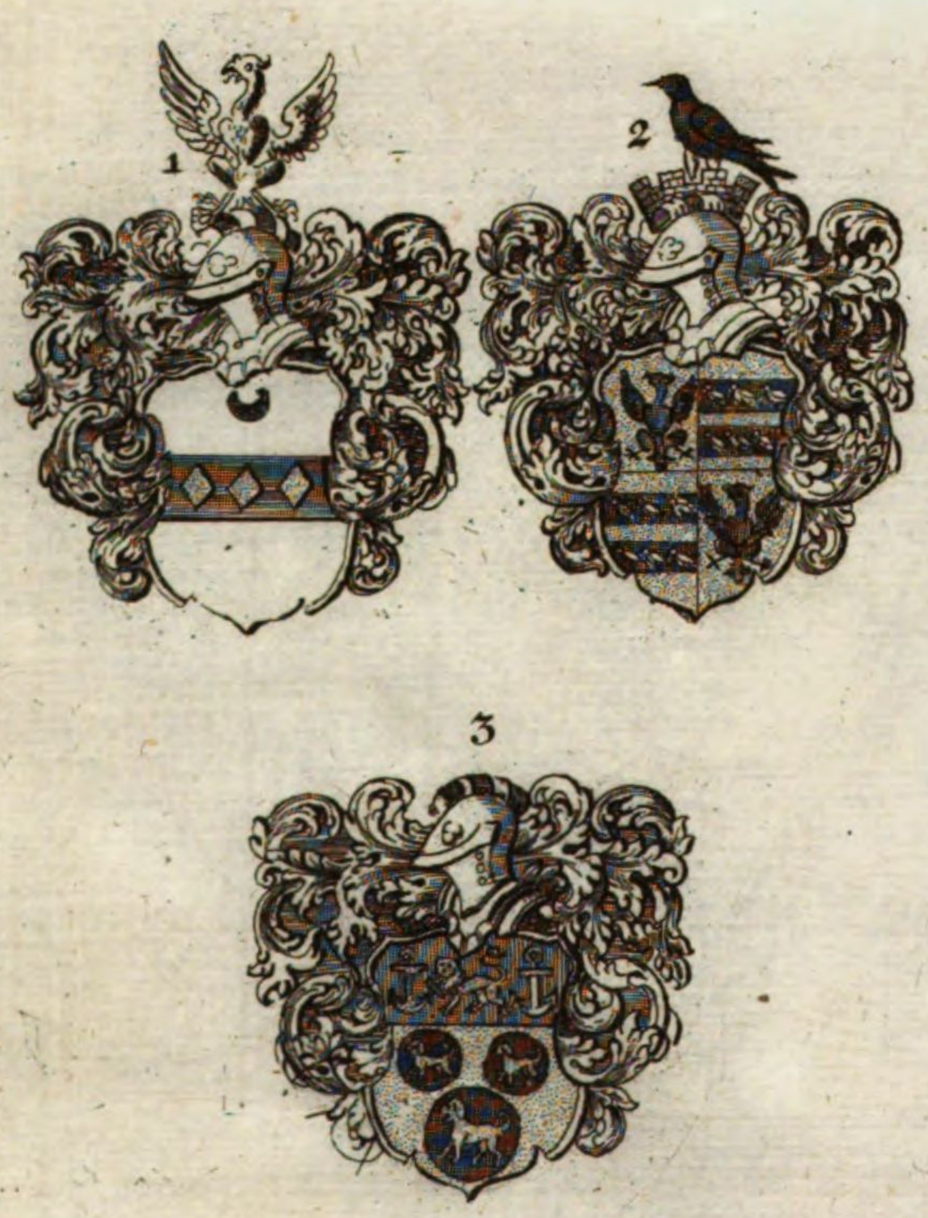
1
2
3


1
2
3

XI



XII



XI.

Le tres Noble & Puiſſant

SEIGNEUR,

THOMAS FARMER,

Comte de POMFRET, alias PONTEFRACT, Baron LEMPSTER, de LEMPSTER, Baronet, Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour du Juin MDCCXXV.

XII.

Le tres Noble

SEIGNEUR,

NASSAW PAULET,

Fils Second du Feü CHARLES, Duc de BOLTON, Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour du Juin MDCCXXV.

Les Ecuyers

du Comte de POMFRET.	du Seigneur NASSAW PAULET.
1. Charles Feilding.	1. Richard Aldworth.
2. Jean Temple.	2. Jean Michel de Kingston Ruſſell en Dorſet.
3. Edmund Allen.	3. Jean Bromfield.

XIII.

Le tres Noble

SEIGNEUR,

GEORGE BYNG,

Vicomte TORRINGTON, Baron BYNG de SOUTHILL, Baronet, Contre Amiral d' ANGLETERRE, & Commandant en Chef de la Flote de Sa Majeſté, Conſeiller du Roy en Son Conſeil Privé, & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour de Juin MDCCXXV.

XIV.

Le Noble

SEIGNEUR,

GEORGE CHOLMONDELY,

Fils ainé de GEORGE Comte de CHOLMONDELY, Vicomte MALPAS, Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour de Juin MDCCXXV.

Les Ecuyers

du Vicomte TORRINGTON.	du Vicomte MALPAS.
1. Robert Osborn, troiſieme fils de St. Jean Osborn, Bart.	1. Jean Mohun.
2. Guillaume Becher.	2. George Walter.
3. Edmund Bramſon.	3. Francois Columbine.

XIII

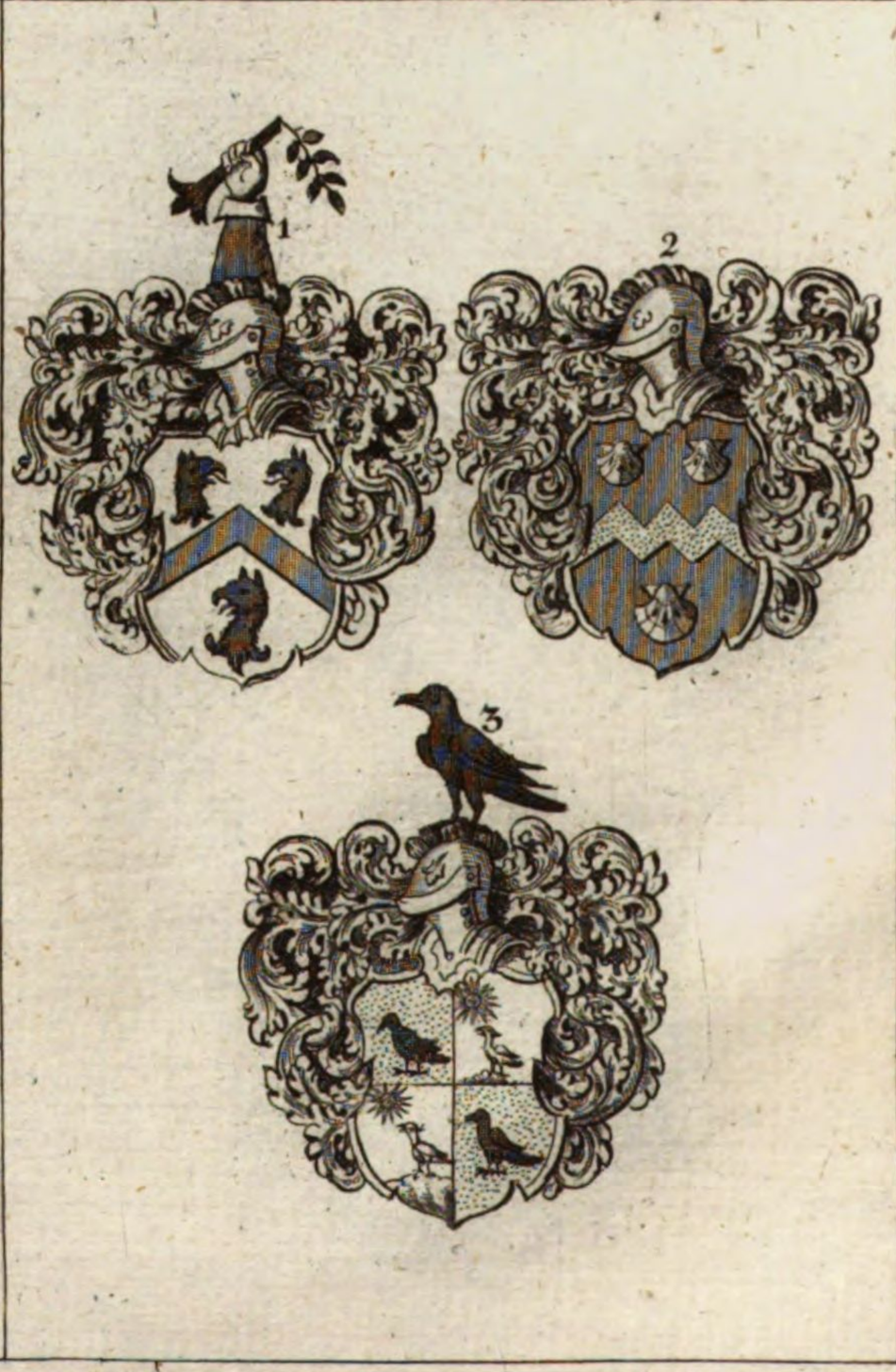
XIV

VIX

IIIX

XV

XVI



XV.

Le tres Honorable,

JEAN CAMPBEL,

Vicomte GLENORCHY, Fils ainé de tres Noble JEAN Comte de BRAIDALBAN, Envoyé Extraordinaire au Roy de DENMARK, & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé par Son Procureur le 17me Jour de Juin MDCCXXV.

XVI.

Le Noble Seigneur,

JEAN WEST,

Baron WEST DE LAWARR, CANTILUPE, EWYAS, TREGOZ, GREISLEY; Lieutenant Colonel de la premiere Compagnie des Guardes du Corps, Gentilhomme de la Chambre du Lit de Sa Majeſté, Chevalier du tres honorable, Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour de Juin MDCCXXV.

Les Ecuyers

du Vicomte GLENORCHY.

1. Frederick Thom.
2. Thomas Bruce.
3. Jean Orlebar.

du Baron De LAWARR.

1. Thomas Scawen, Fils ainé de St. Thomas Scawen.
2. Jean Dyve.
3. Jean Laroche.

XVII.

Le Noble

SEIGNEUR,

HUGH FORTESCUE,

Baron CLINTON, Seigneur Lieutenant & Garde des Archives dans la Province de DEVON, Gentilhomme de la Chambre du Lit de Son Alteſſe Royale le Prince de GALES, & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour de Juin MDCCXXV.

XVIII.

Le Noble

SEIGNEUR,

ROBERT WALPOLE,

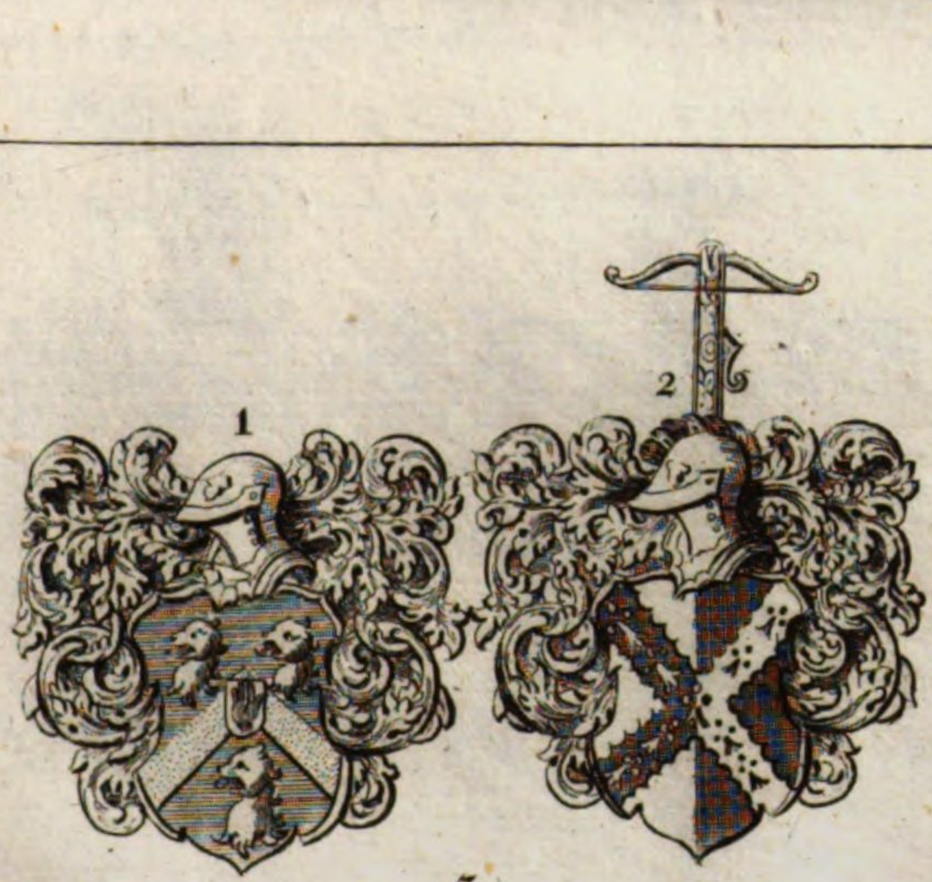
Baron WALPOLE de WALPOLE, Clerc du Treſorier, autrement Clerc des Pelles dans l'Echequier; & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour de Juin MDCCXXV.

Les Ecuyers

du Baron CLINTON.	du Baron WALPOLE.
1. Sr. Guillaume Dudley, Baronet.	1. Le Major George Sawyer.
2. Henry Latton.	2. Cosby Phillips.
3. Joſeph Fortescue.	3. Thomas Copleſton.

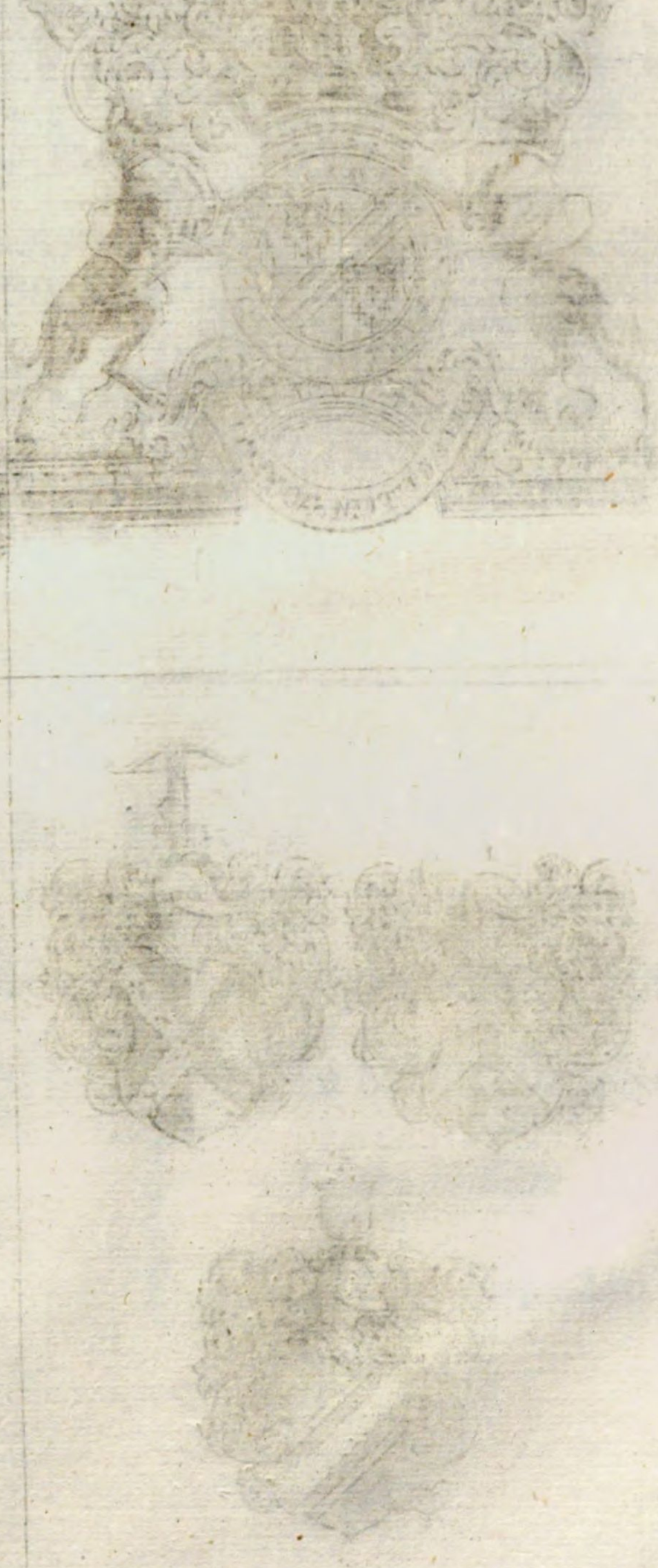
XVII

XVIII



XVIII

XVIII



XIX

XX

XIX.

Le très Honorable,

SPENCER COMPTON,

Second Fils de JAQUES feu Comte de NORTHAMPTON, Orateur des Communes en Parlement, Treſorier de la Guerre, & l' Hoſpital de Chelſea, Conſeiller du Roy en Son Conſeil Privé, Treſorier de Son Alteſſe Royale le Prince de GALES, & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour de Juin MDCCXXV.

XX.

L' Honorable Chevalier,

GUILLAUME STANHOPE,

Second Fils de PHILIP Comte de CHESTERFEILD, Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour de Juin MDCCXXV.

Les Ecuyers

du Chevalier SPENCER COMPTON.

1. Guillaume Fisher de Suffolk.
2. Thomas Parker.
3. Jean Noel.

du Chevalier GUILLAUME STANHOPE.

1. Sr. Thomas Samwell, Bart.
2. Jean Neale.
3. Guillaume Hawley, troiſieme Fils de Seigneur Edwin Hawley.

XXI.

Le Chevalier,

CONJERS DARCY,

Maitre d' Hôtel, Seigneur Lieutenant du North Riding en la Province de York, & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, installé le 17me Jour de Juin MDCCXXV.

XXII.

Le Honorable Chevalier,

THOMAS SAUNDERSON,

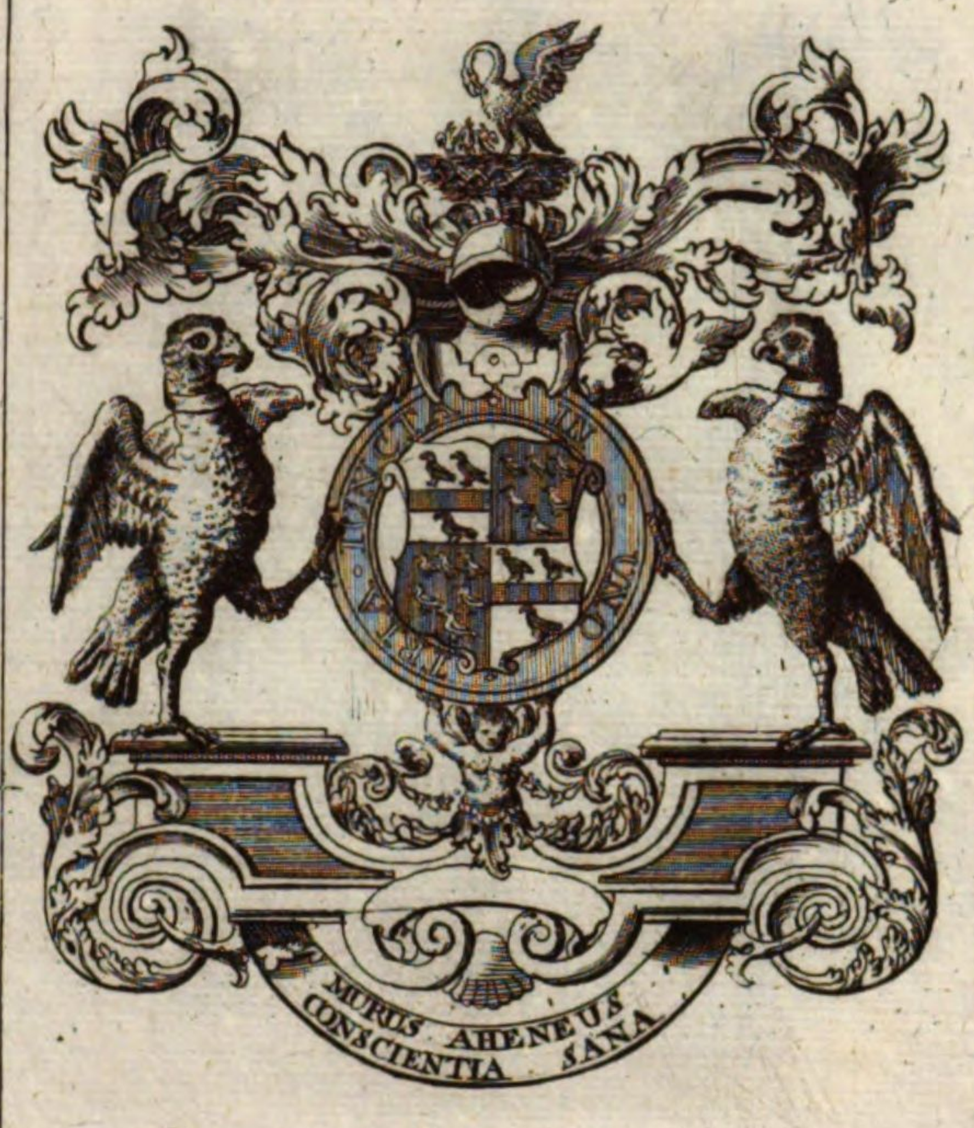
Second Fils de Richard, feu Comte de SCARBOROUGH, cidevant Envoyé Extraordinaire & Plenipotentiaire au Roy de Portugale; & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, installé le 17me Jour de Juin MDCCXXV.

Les Ecuyers

du Chevalier Coniers Darcy.	du Chevalier Thomas Saunderson.
1. Coote Molesworth.	1. Thomas Whichcot.
2. Thomas Robinson.	2. Thomas Revel.
3. Guillaume Robinson.	3. Henry Talbot.

XXI

XXII



XXII.

XXI.

XXIII

XXIV

XXIII.

Le tres honorable,

PAUL METHUEN,

Ci devant Envoyé Extraordinaire Plenipotentiaire, & Ambassadeur aupres l' Empereur de Germanie, l' Empereur de Marocco, le Roy d' Espagne, le Roy de Portugal, & le Duc de Savoy (apres Roy de Sardinie); Un des Commissaires pour l' execution de l' Office du Grand Admiral de la Grande Bretagne, un des Commissaires pour l' execution de l' Office du Tresorier de l' Exchequier, Principal Secretaire d' Etat, Controlleur, & a present Tresorier de la Maison Royale, Conseiller du Roy en son Conseil Privé, & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, installé le 17me Jour du Juin MDCCXXV.

XXIV.

Le tres Honorable Chevalier,

ROBERT WALPOLE,

Premier Commissaire pour l' Execution de la Charge du Tresorier de l' E'chequier, Chancelier & Sous-Tresorier de l' E'chequier, Conseiller du Roy en Son Conseil Privé & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, installé le 17me Jour du Juin MDCCXXV.

Les Ecuyers

du Chevalier Paul Methuen.

1. Richard Frankland.
2. Thomas Holdip.
3. Jean Johnsohn.

du Chevalier Robert Walpole.

1. Francois Fane.
2. Edward Louisa Mann.
3. Jean Fowle.

XXV.

Le tres Honorable Chevalier,

ROBERT SUTTON,

Ci devant Ambaſſadeur aupres du Grand Seigneur; & Ambaſſadeur Mediateur de la Paix entre l' Empereur des ROMAINS & la Republicque de VENISE d' un Coté, & l' Empereur Ottoman de l' autre Coté, enſuit Ambaſſadeur Extraordinaire aupres du Roy tres Chretien, Conſeiller du Roy en Son Conſeil Privé, & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour de Juin MDCCXXV.

XXVI.

Le tres Honorable Chevalier,

CHARLES WILLS,

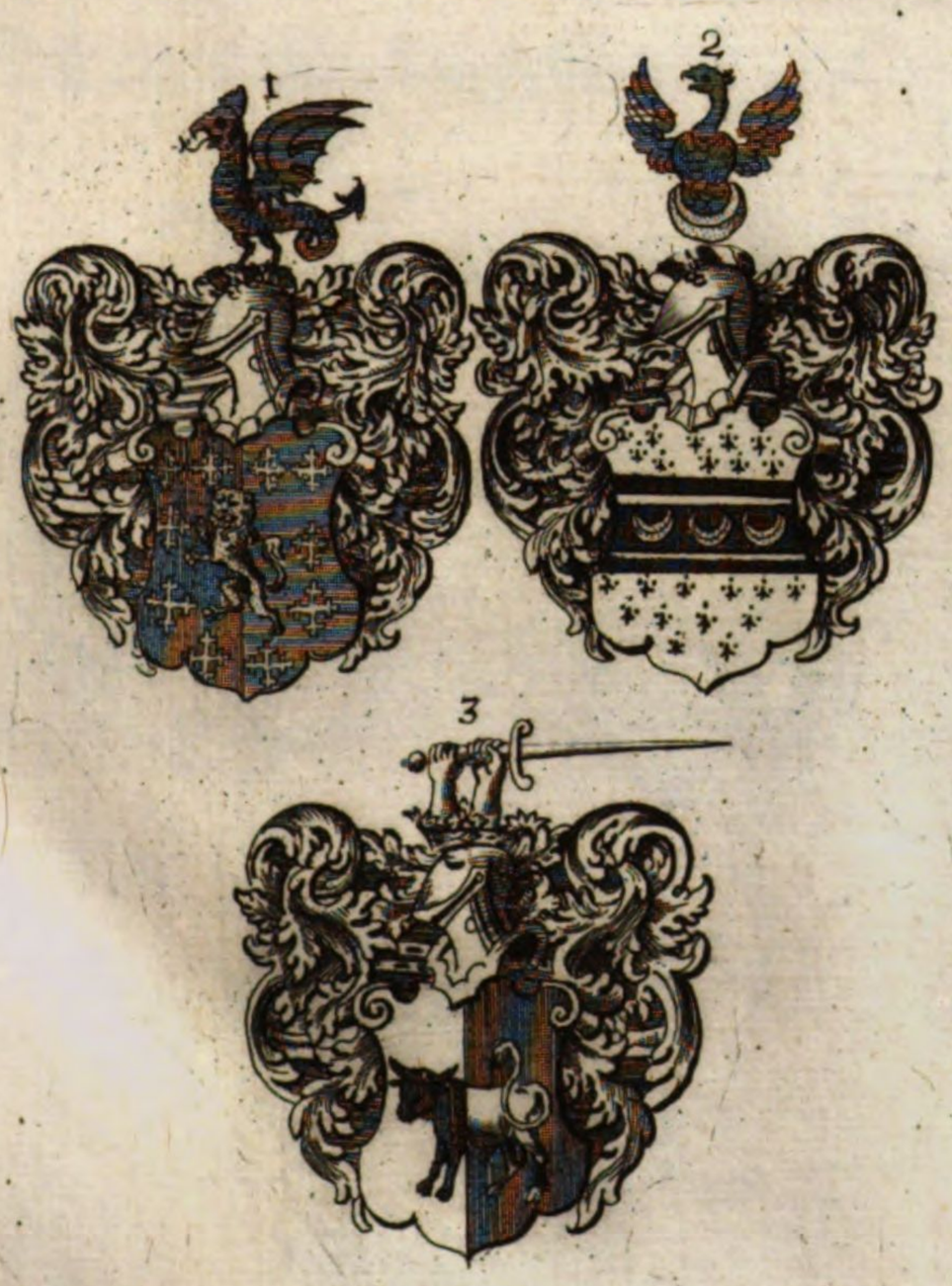
Lieutenant General des Armées de Sa Majeſté, & de l' Artillerie, Colonel d'un Regiment d' Infanterie, Conſeiller du Roy en Son Conſeil Privé, & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour du Juin MDCCXXV.

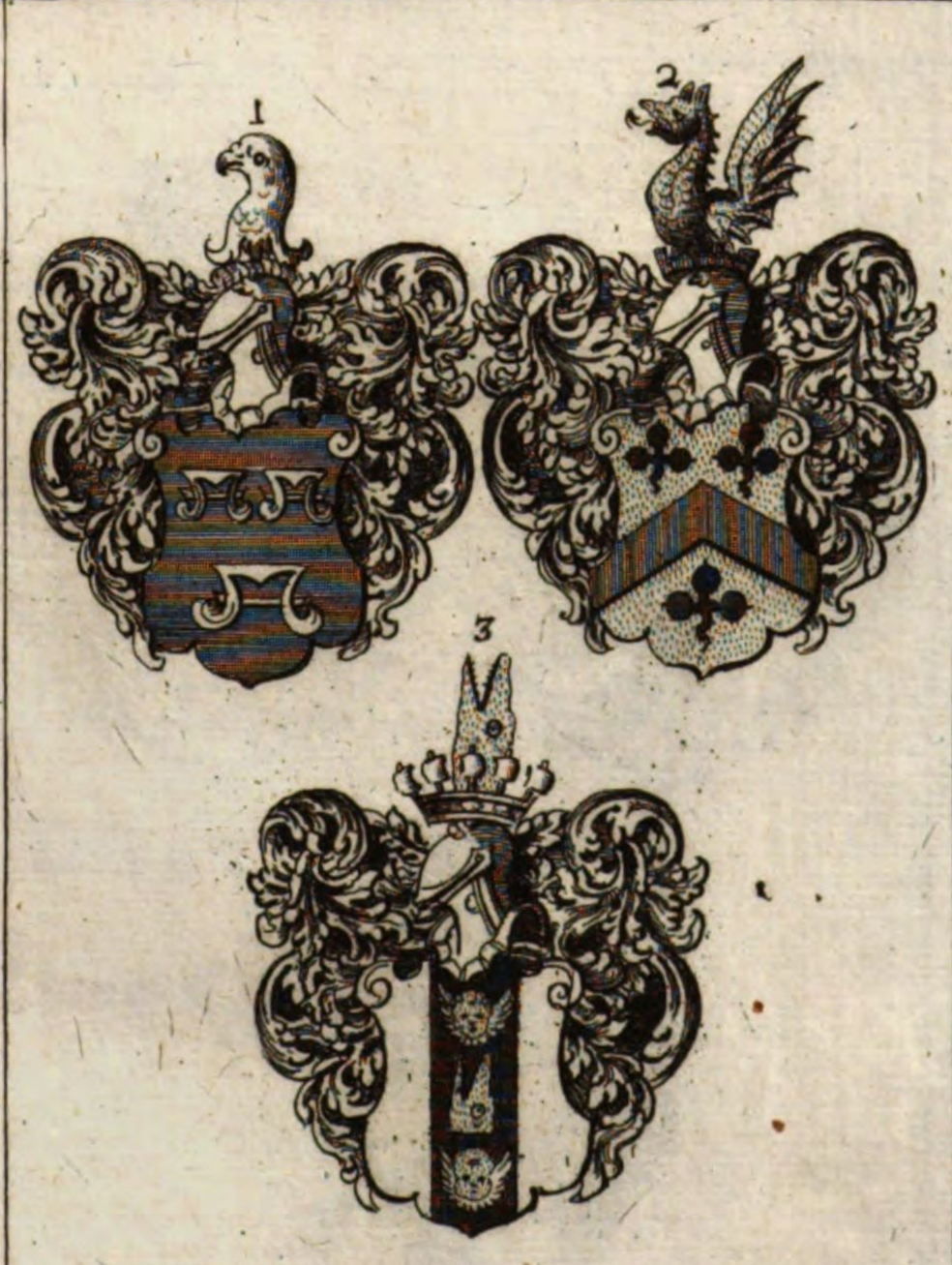
Les Ecuyers

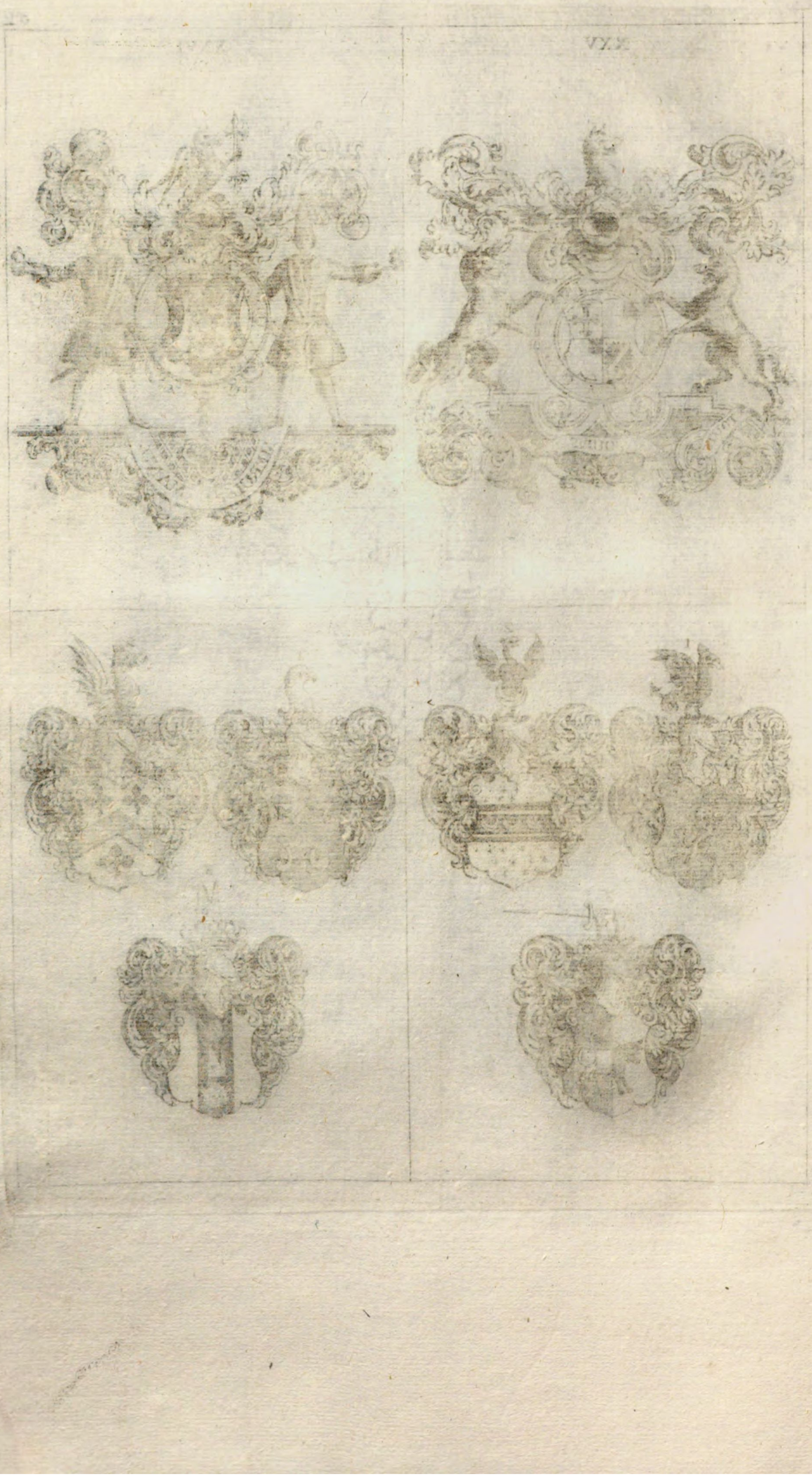
du Chevalier Robert Sutton	du Chevalier Charles Wills.
1. Thomas Hutchinſon.	1. Alexander Roſe.
2. Jean Briſtowe.	2. Francois Williamſon.
3. Chriſtian Cole.	3. Joſeph Gascoigne.

XXV

XXVI



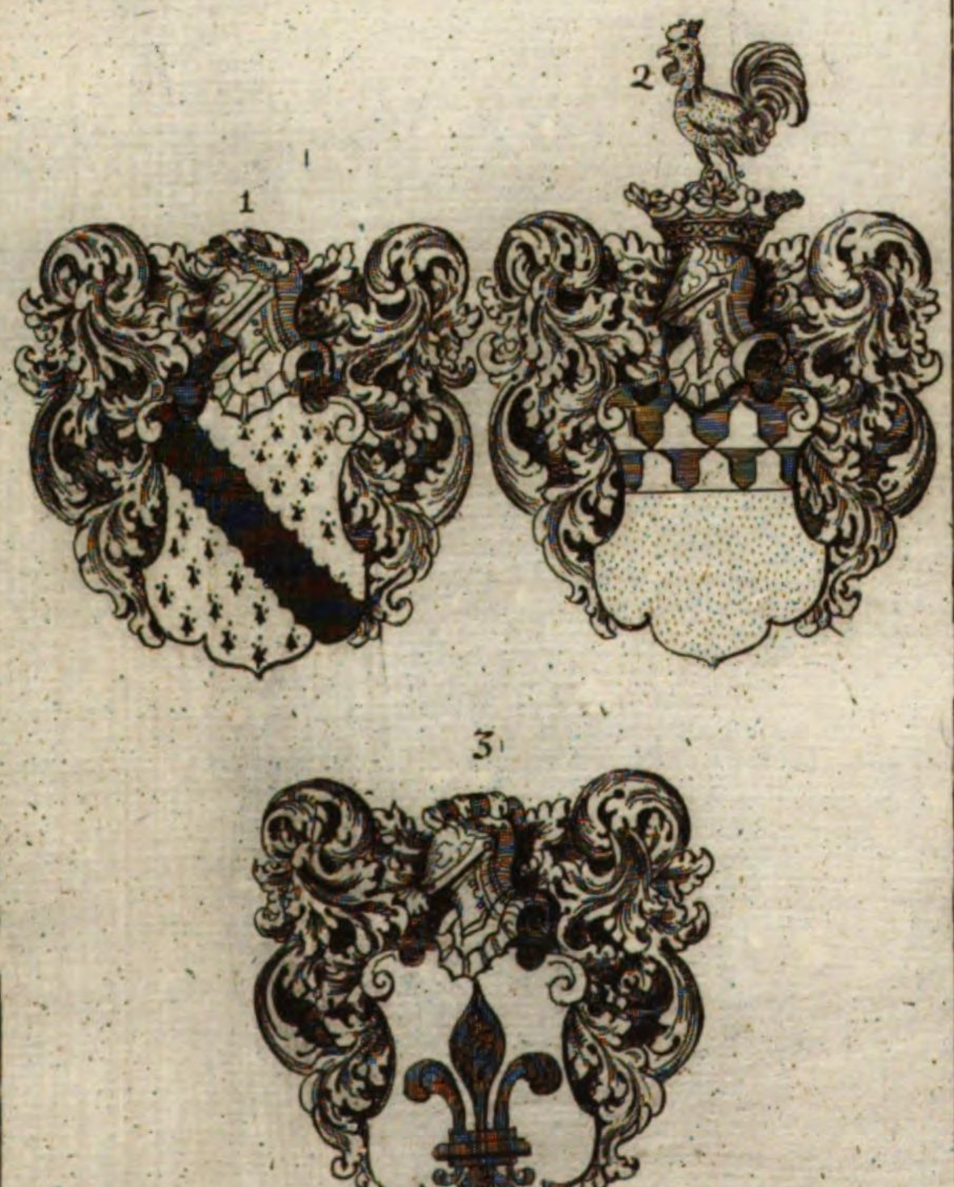




XXXII

XXXIII

XXVII



XXVIII

XXVII.

Le Chevalier,

JEAN HOBART,

Baronet, un des Commissaires du Commerce, & pour les Plantations, & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, installé le 17me Jour de Juin MDCCXXV.

XXVIII.

Le Chevalier,

GUILLAUME GAGE,

Baronet, Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, installé le 17me Jour de Juin MDCCXXV.

Les Ecuyers

du Chevalier Jean Hobart.

1. Henry Kellsey.
2. Jean Coppen.
3. Guillaume Morden.

du Chevalier Guillaume Gage.

1. Jean Gage.
2. Edward Weston.
3. Jean Board.

XXIX.

Le Chevalier,

ROBERT CLIFTON,

Fils ainé de Sr. GERVALE CLIFTON Baronet, Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour de Juin MDCCXXV.

XXX.

Le Chevalier,

MICHAEL NEWTON,

Fils unique de Sr. JEAN NEWTON Baronet, & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour de Juin MDCCXXV.

Les Ecuyers

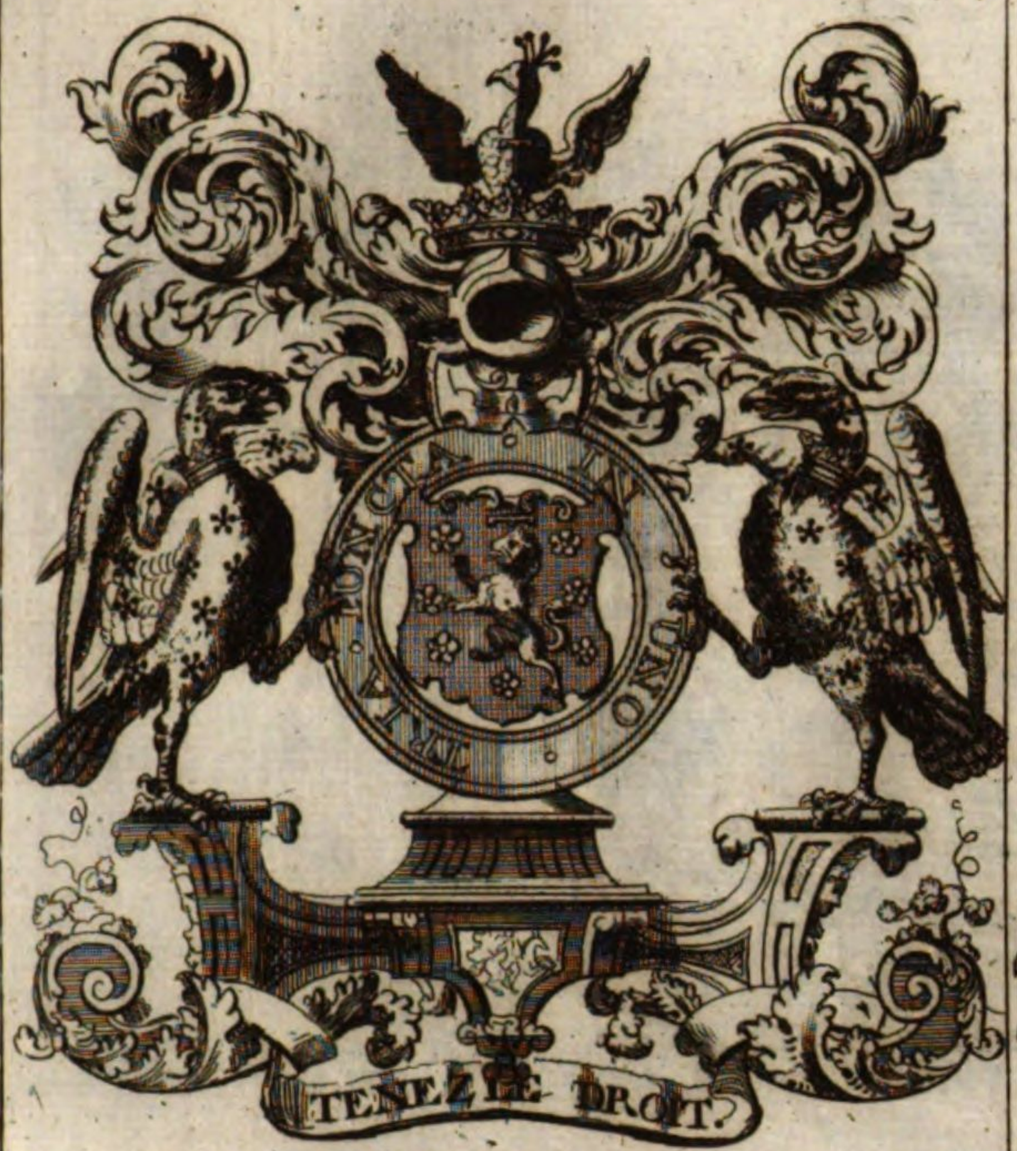
du Chevalier Robert Clifton.

1. Francis Wheler.
2. George Baker.
3. Solomon Ashley.

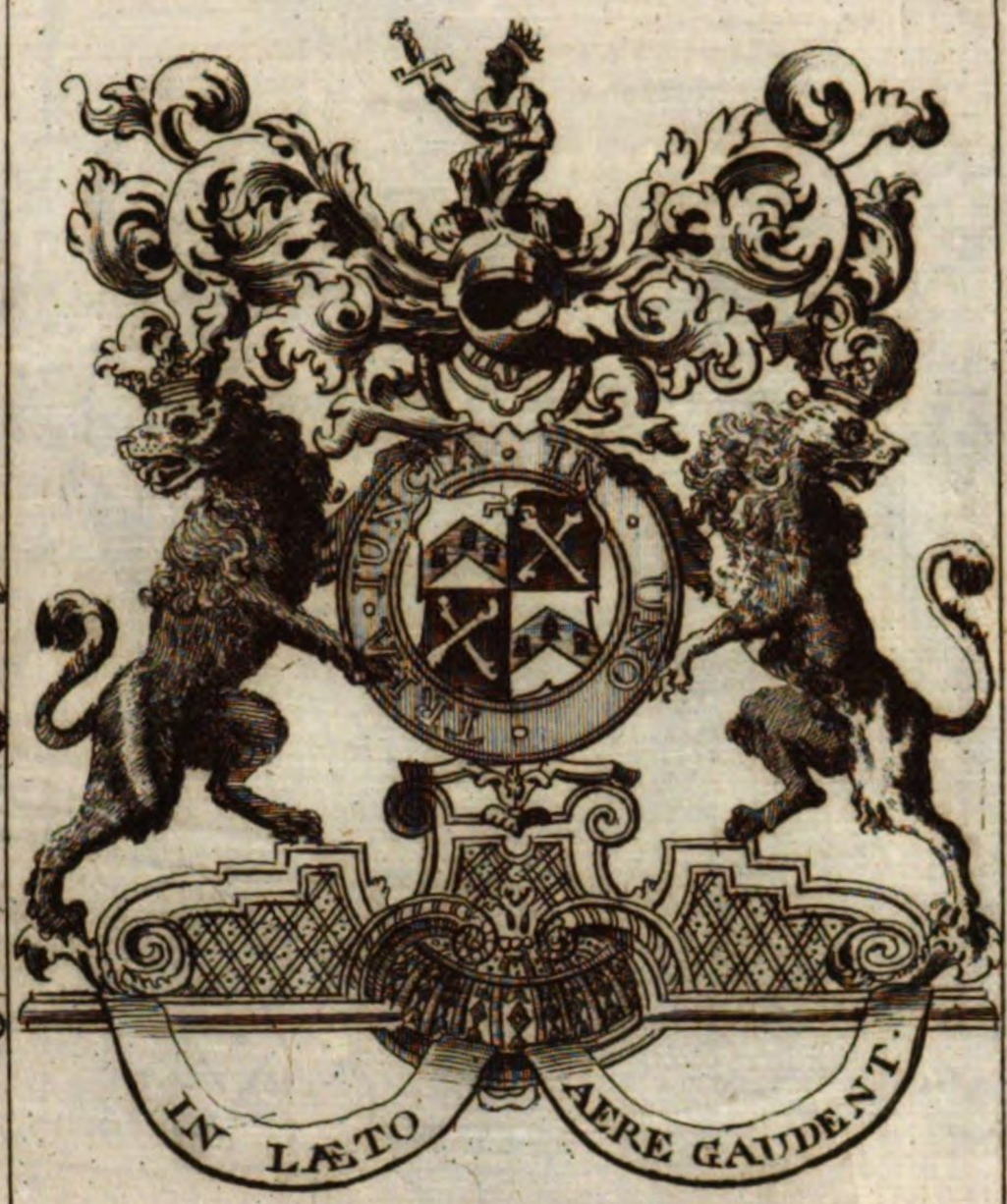
du Chevalier Michael Newton.

1. George Crowle.
2. Chriſtopher Wyvill.
3. Thomas Lee Dummer.

XXIX



XXX

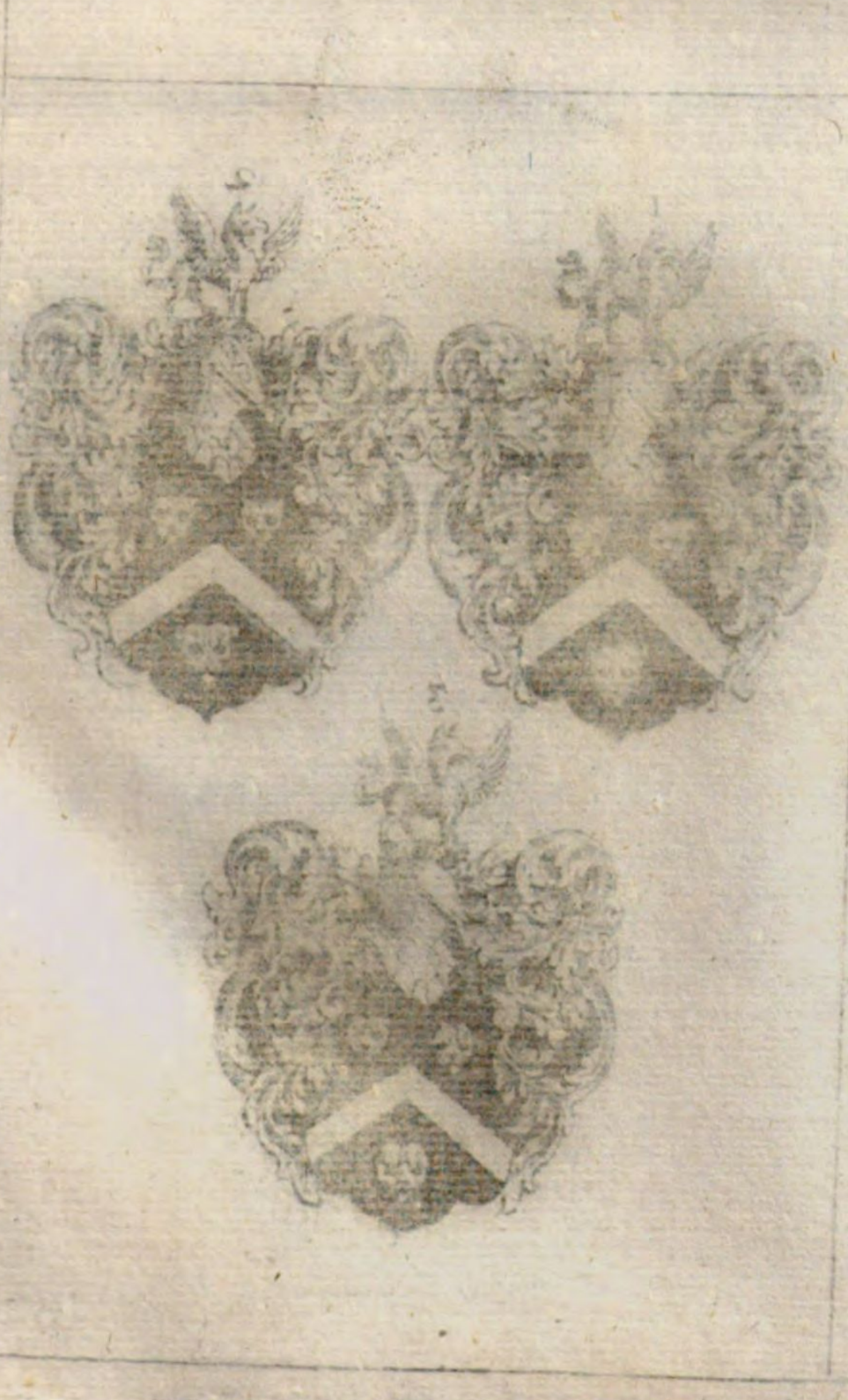


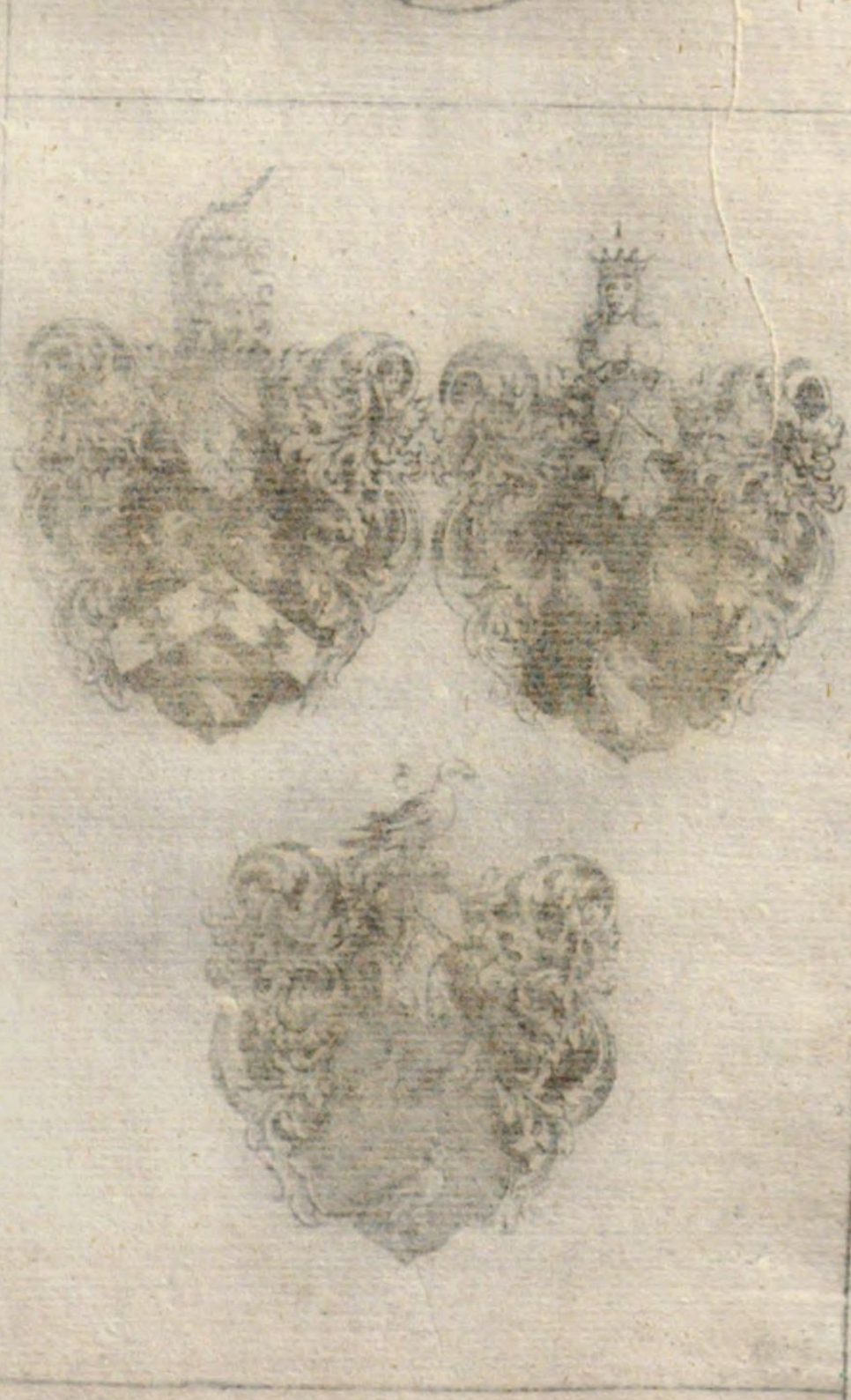
XXX

XXXI

IIXXX

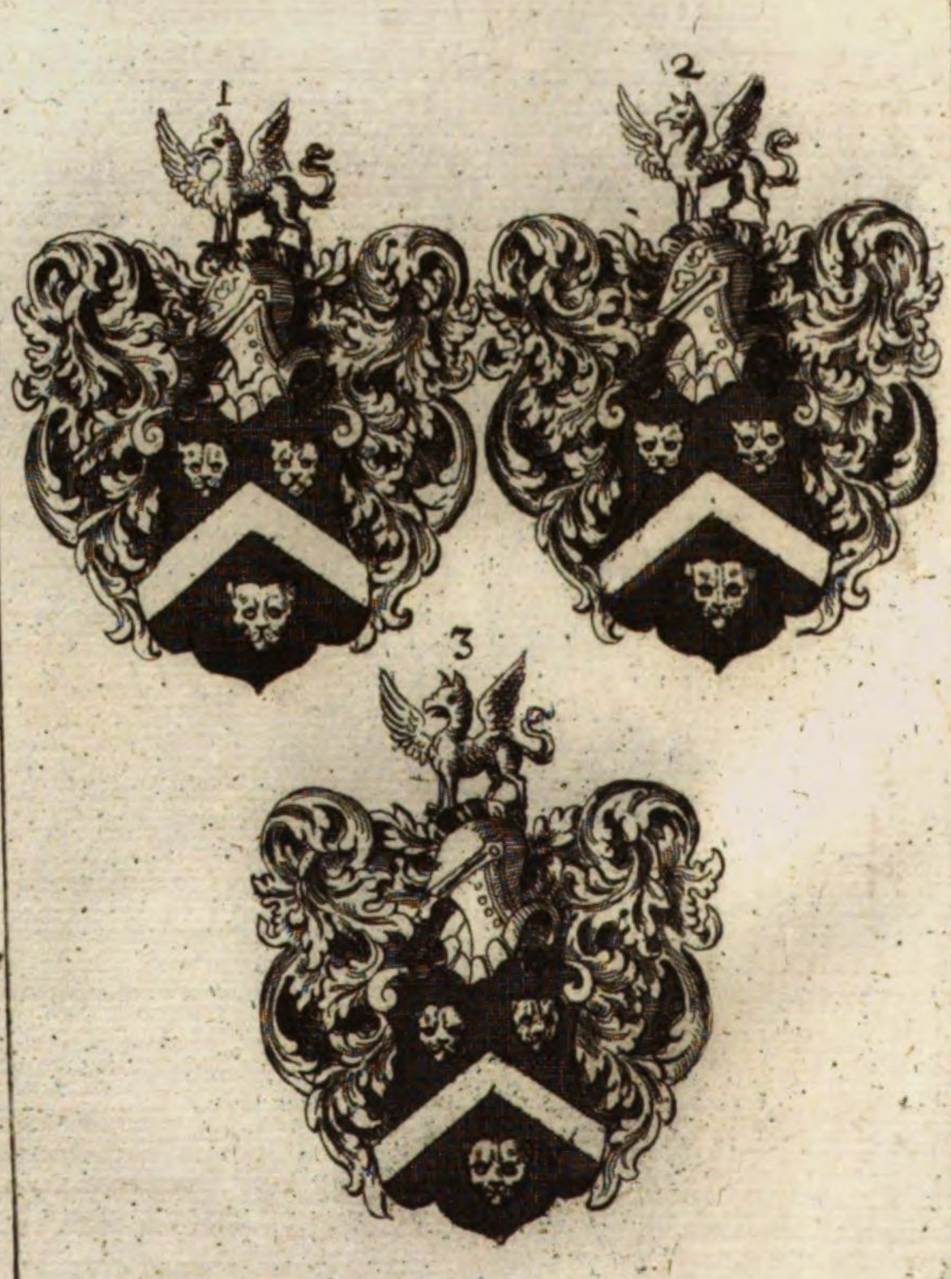
IXXX





XXXI.

XXXII



XXXI.

Le Chevalier,

GUILLAUME YONGE,

Fils ainé de Sr. WAUTIER YONGE Baronet, un des Commissaires pour l' execution de la Charge du Tresorier de l' E'chequier & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, installé le 17me Jour deJuin MDCCXXV.

XXXII.

Le Chevalier,

THOMAS WENTWORTH,

Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, installé le 17me Jour du Juin MDCCXXV.

Les Ecuyers

du Chevalier Guillaume Yonge.

1. Philip Lloyd.
2. Thomas Beale, Jun.
3. Thomas Martyn.

du Chevalier Thomas Watson Wentworth.

1. Thomas Wentworth.
2. George Wentworth.
3. Godfry Wentworth.

XXXIII.

Le Chevalier,

JEAN MONSON,

Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour de Juin MDCCXXV.

XXXIV.

Le Chevalier,

GUILLAUME MORGAN de TREDEGAR,

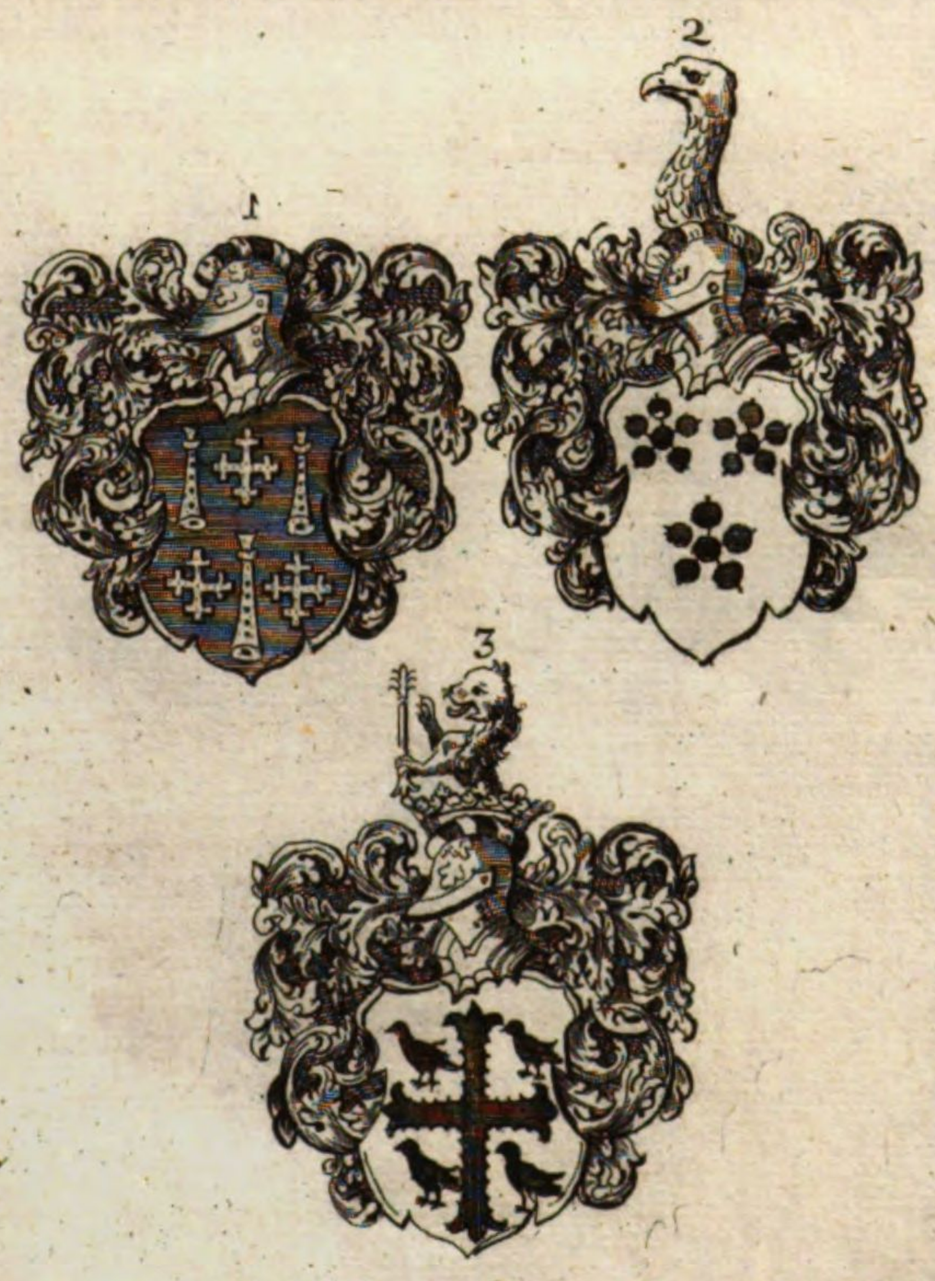
Seigneur Lieutenant de la Province de MONMOUTH, & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, inſtallé le 17me Jour de Juin MDCCXXV.

Les Ecuyers

du Chevalier Jean Monſon.	du Chevalier Guillaume Morgan.
1. Philip Monſon.	1. Guillaume Burdon.
2. George Short.	2. Alexander Chocke.
3. Guillaume Duckelt.	3. Nehemiah Griffith.

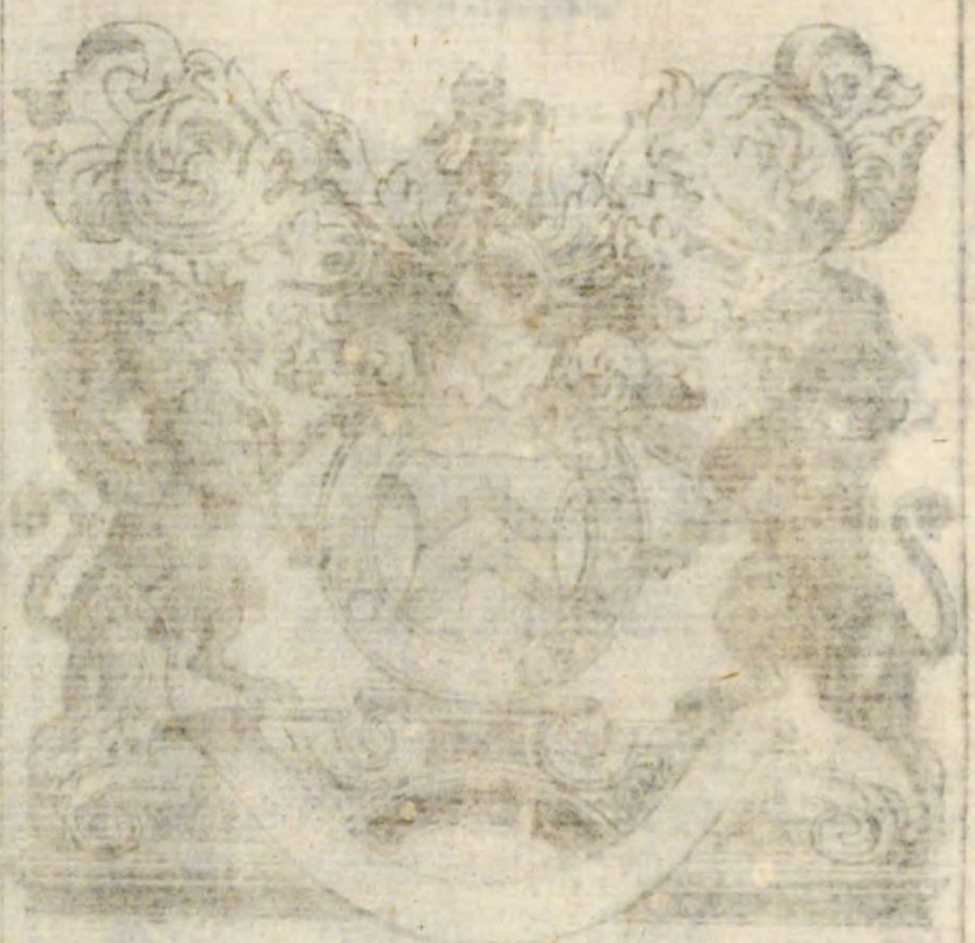
XXXIII

XXXIV

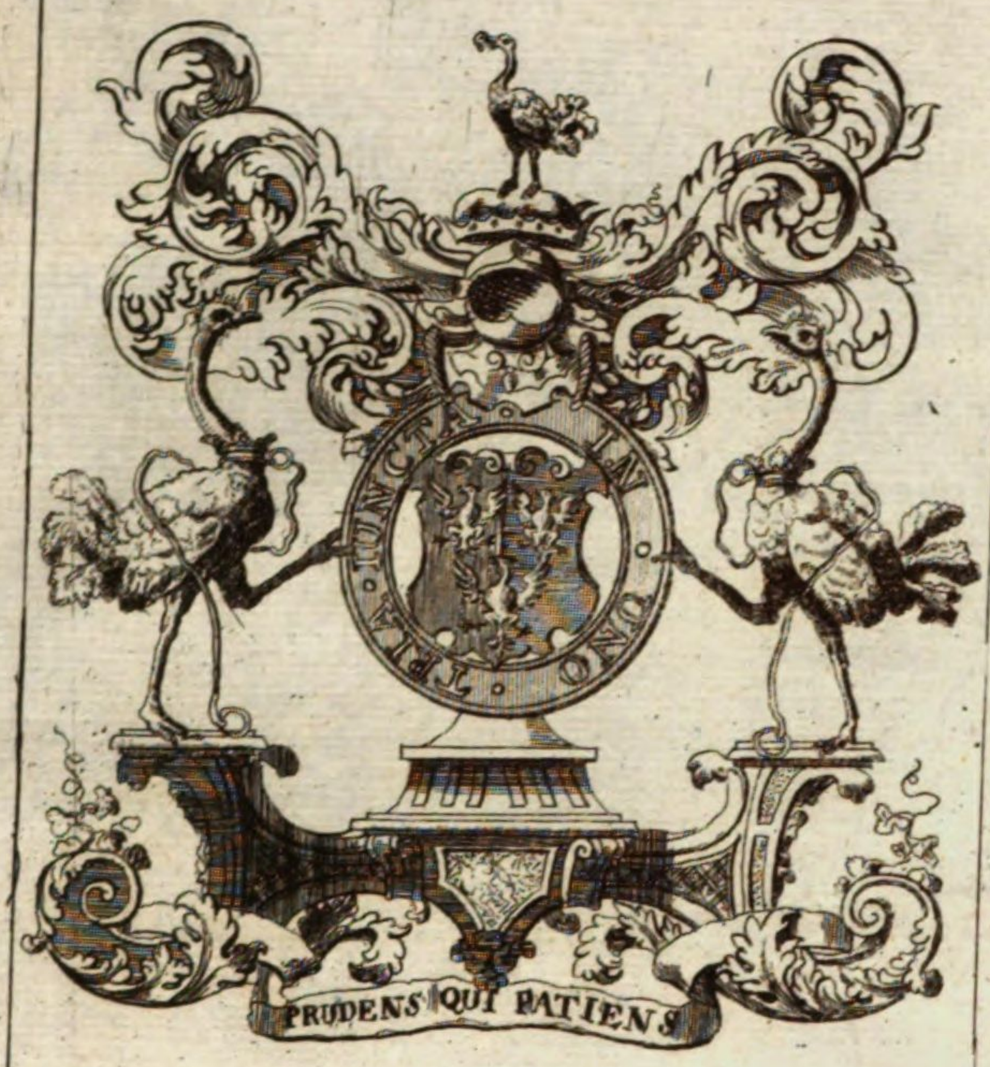


VIXXX

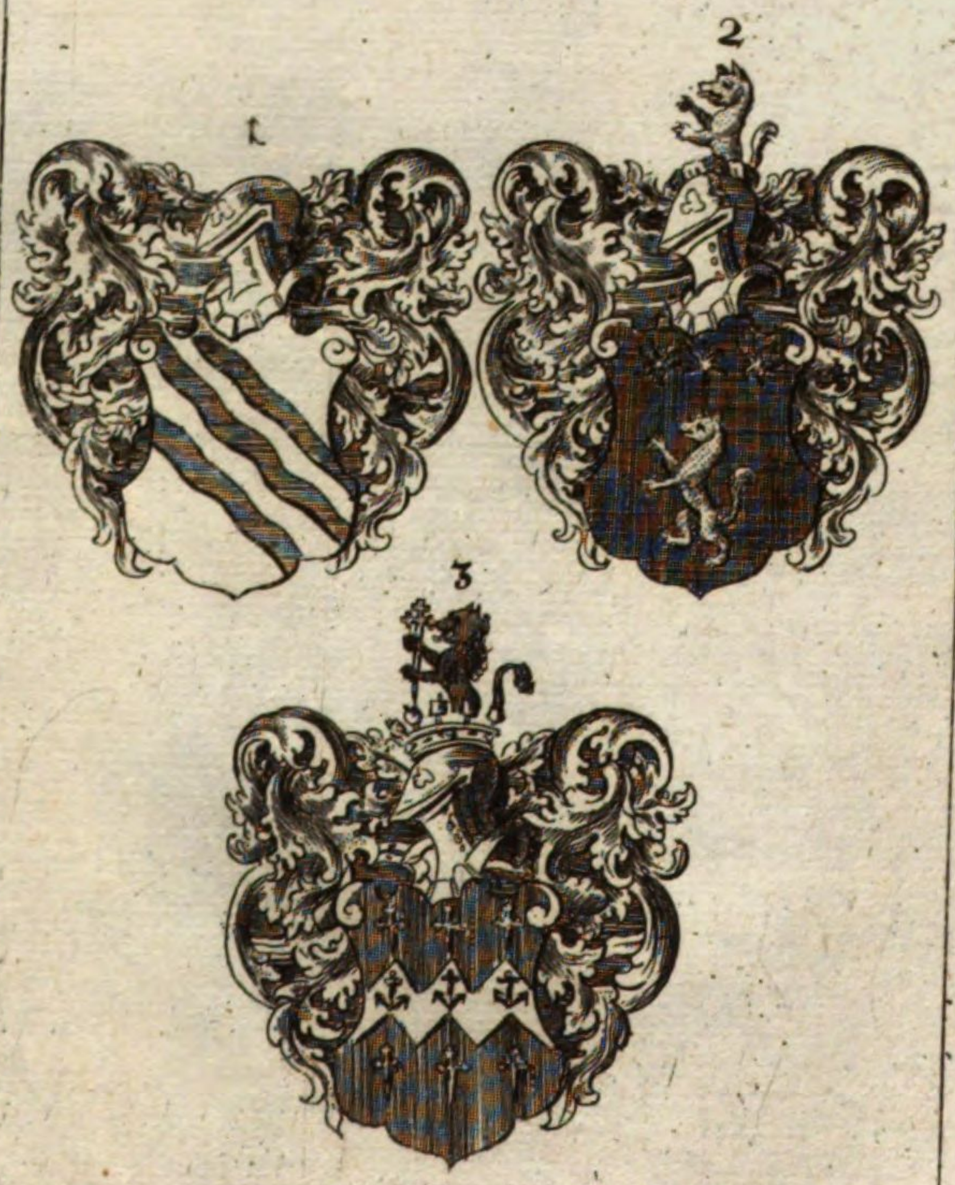
IIIXXX



XXXV.



XXXVI.



XXXV.

Le Chevalier,

THOMAS COKE,

Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, installé le 17me Jour de Juin MDCCXXV.

XXXVI.

Le tres Noble & Puissant

SEIGNEUR,

GUILLAUM OBRYEN,

Comte & Baron de INCHIQUIN, Baron de BURREN, Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN, installé le 17me Jour de Juin MDCCXXV.

Les Ecuyers

du Chevalier Thomas Coke,	du Comte d' Inchiquin.
1. Ralph Wilbraham.	1. Walter Knight.
2. Worcester Wilson.	2. Guillaume Boyle.
3. Jean Raworth.	3. Robbert Barry.

XXXVII.

Le tres Noble Seigneur,

JEAN BROWNLOWE,

Vicomte TYRCONNELL, Seigneur BROWNLOWE,
Baron de CHARLEVILLE, Baronet, & Chevalier du tres honorable Ordre du BAIN,
installé le 17me Jour de Juin
MDCCXXV.

Les Ecuyers

1. Jean Francois Richard Middlemore.
2. Nevile King.
3. Jean Cooke.

XXXVII

1

2

3

XV. Sunt præterea Equitibus adjuncti ARMIGERI (*f*) tum GUBERNATORES, quorum munus eſt, ut Candidatos Equeſtres Ordinis ſui Scopum, Dignitatem, Officia, Rituumque probe obſervandorum rationem myſticam doceant, in obeundis officiis Initiationis ipſos adjuvent & comitentur, tum JUVENES, qui Equitibus initiandis Gladios atque Balteos (*g*) præferunt. CANONICI (*h*) Templi Weſtmonaſterienſis, ut non ſolum unus illorum Vigiliis Equitum adſit, ſed & omnes ſuo, Ordinisque Decano, Sacra peragenti adſiſtant. HERALDI, APPARITORES, & CADUCEATORES (*i*) *Provinciales;* TONSOR (*k*) ut Candidatis Ordinis barbas radat, capillos reſecet, & balneum præparet. NOBILES AULÆ REGIÆ (*l*) qui ſportulis ex Creatione Equitum fruuntur atque Proceſſionibus illorum intereſſe debent. COQUUS (*m*) Regius Primarius, qui finita Inaugurationis ſolemnitate novos Equites ante Portas Templi Weſtmonaſterienſis Officii ſui admonet,

I ſecus-

(*f*) Quo titulo olim appellabantur vel qui terras tenebant per ſervitium ſcuti ſ. *ſcutagium*: vel qui nobili genere orti, arma militaria tractabant, dignitatem verò Equeſtrem nondum aſſecuti fuerant; vel qui Dominorum ſuorum vel Equitum in præliis & ludis Equeſtribus arma portabant eosque tuebantur; *Famuli* quoque *Valetti* & *Scutiferi* dicti, Longobardis *Scilpor*, Saxonibus *Scilocnave*, *Sciloknigt*, Gallis ab *Ecu*, ſcuto, *Ecuyers* & Anglis *Esquires*. Iſta vero militari ejus vocis ſignificatione jam diu exoleta, nunc apud Anglos hoc nomine venit dignitas inter Equites Auratos ſ. *Baccalaurios* & *Gentleman* ſive Nobiles ſine titulo media, atque vel natalibus vel beneficio Principis vel per inſigniora Reipublicæ munera acquiritur, de quo plur. agunt SELDENUS Tit. hon. part. II. C. 5. in f. SPELM. voce *Armiger & Scutifer*. G. DANIEL *de la Milice Francoiſe* l. 3. c. 6. AUTOR *de l' Etat preſent de la Grande Bretagne* per MIEG. p. II. C. 9. & CHAMBERLAINE P. II. l. 3. c. 4. de Armigeris vero Ordinis de Balneo jam in vetuſta charta quam infra exhibebimus integram, *Quant*, dicitur, *un Escuyer vient en la Cour pour recevoir l' Ordre de Chevalerie en temps de paix ſelon la couſtume d' Angleterre, il ſera tres noblement receu par les Officiers de la Cour, Comme le Seneſchal ou du Chamberlain, ſi ilz ſont preſenſt & autrement par les Mareſchaux & Huiſſiers. Et adonc ſeront ordonnez DEUX ESCUYERS d' Onneur & ſaiges, & bien aprins en courtoiſies & nourritures & en la maniere du fait de Chevalerie; & ils ſeront Escuyers & Gouverneurs de tout ce qui appartient a celuy qui prendra l' Ordre de ſusdit.* De ſimili plane officio quo hodie adhuc funguntur *v. STATUTA Art. VII.* de Juribus verò eorundem & Honoribus *Art. XV.*

(*g*) STATUTA *eodem Art.* in f.

(*h*) Alias PRÆBENDARII appellati, à cibi & potus portione diurna Monachis & Canonicis olim præbenda, atque nunc Beneficiis, quibus Præbendæ loco ac nomine fruuntur, diviſi in *Canonicos Actu* & *Canonicos in Herba* ſ. Minores, de quibus v. du FRESN. in *Gloſſ. v. Præbenda*; CHAMBERL. P. I. l. II. C. 3. & MIEGE P. II. C. II. p. 283 de officio verò illorum apud Ordinem de Balneo atque emolumentis, quibus propterea gaudent, STAT. *Art. VII. XVII. XVIII.*

(*i*) STATUTA *Art. VIII.*

(*k*) De cujus officio v. STAT. *Art. VII.* Privilegium verò tonſoribus ab Henrico VI. conceſſum *ſupra* §. IX. lit. (f).

(*l*) STAT. *Art. VIII.*

(*m*) STAT. *Art. eodem* in f. conſuetudine jam olim recepta, ut apparet ex *pictura*

ſecusque facturis, cultro ſuo calcaria ſe præſciſſurum minatur; MUSICORUM denique Cohors, qui Equites, Ordinis ſui Candidatos in Vigiliis ipſorum inviſuros, ſolemnemque ad Aulam Rigiam vel alium à Magno Magiſtro deſignatum locum, ubi Candidati Ordinis inaugurentur, Comitatum cum inſtrumentis ſuis muſicis *(n)* præcedunt. Nomina vero & Inſignia Gentilitia Armigerorum, Indici atque Inſignibus Gentilitiis Equitum ad præcedentem Paragraphum ſubjunximus.

XVI. Miniſteria Honoratiſſimo Ordini præſtant SEPTEM OFFICIALES: DECANUS, videlicet, qui, dum Equites inaugurantur, Sacra peragit, atque Jusjurandum illis ſuppeditat, gladios ab Altari, admonitionibus factis, reddit, & oblationes accipit; in Capitulis vero Cauſas illorum exponit, atque ipſe Seſſionis & Suffragii Jure *(o)* gaudet; REX ARMORUM *(p)* qui BATH appellatur, atque Calcaria Equitibus apponenda porrigit, Evangeliorum librum, quando Jusjurandum ab iisdem præſtatur, tenet, aliaque in Statutis paſſim commemorata, & quæ præterea à Magno Magiſtro ipſi injunguntur, agit & exſequitur; GENEALOGISTA, cujus officium eſt, ut tam Equitum quam Armigerorum Genealogias examinet, atque in Re

Ceremoniarum ſub Henrico VII. cujus ſupra fecimus mentionem §. X.

(n) STAT. *Art VIII.*

(o) STATUTA *Art. XVIII.*

(p) Quo titulo apud Anglos Primi Heraldorum inſigniuntur, ut apud Romanos olim *Rex Sacrorum*, Gallos *Reges Mercatorum & Ribaldorum.* Poſtquam enim RICHARDUS III. Heraldos Angliæ in collegium redegit, ex novem ſociis illud nunc conſiſtit, tribus nempe *Regibus armorum*, Quales ſunt *Garter*, à Periſcelide ita adpellatus; *Rex Armorum Anglicorum, Clarencieux* a Ducatu *Clarentiæ; Rex Armorum* Partium Auſtralium ſ. Cis-Trentanarum; & *Norrey, Rex Armorum* Partium Borealium ſ. Ultra Trentanarum. Deinde ſex *Heraldis* inferioribus, qui à provinciis quibus præſunt, appellantur *Windeſor, Cheſter, Richmond, Somerſet, Jorck* & *Lankaſter* Denique quatuor *Pourſuivandis.* De munere omnium tam *Regum* quam *Heraldorum SPELMANNUS v. Heraldus* p. 280. *Domi*, ait, *hi omnes tam REGES quam HERALDI Miniſterium navant in faſtu Regio adornando. In convocationibus, nuptiis, Baptismatibus, Exequiis, Principum Congreſſibus & feſtis Majoribus celebrandis, Pompas ducunt. Curant Nobilium inſignia & Genealogias. Quicquid denique ad Nobilitatem ſpectat & rem Honorariam, illorum curæ, tanquam ſacris cuſtodibus & templi honoris adituis, demandatur. Foris obeunt Legationes, Belli, Pacis, Fœderisque ſunt nuncii.* De Periſcelii Munere & Origine IDEM AUCTOR, Garter, inquit, *quem Ego Periſcelium appello, locum primum obtinet. Nulla tamen donatus provincia, at cæteris omnibus Heraldis (velut Pater Patratus Romanis Fecialibus) ſuperinductus. Hunc inſtituit Henricus v. anno Regni - - - Ut Auguſtiſſimo Equitum Garterii ſ. Periſcelidis Ordini a Miniſterio eſſet & ſolennitatibus, quod audito nomine vel tu ipſe omineris. Curat præterea Majorum Nobilium Exequias & in muneris ornamentum & recepta huc usque conſuetudine Militari Cingulo decoratur.* De reliquis vide quoque SPELMANNUM l. c. NICOLAUM UPTON. *de Stud. Milit.* l. I. C. 8. 11. 12. & CHAMBERLÆNIUM P. II. p. m. 297. Qui verò nunc tribus illis Armorum Regibus acceſſit, ut Ordini Equeſtri de Balneo à Miniſterio & Solemnitatibus eſſet, *Bath.* appellatur, à

Regeſta referat, ſcutum propterea gerens litera G. in medio trium CoronarumRegiarum (q) inſignitum; REGISTRATOR, qui Proceſſus, Transactiones, Acta, & Decreta a Capitulo pariter ac inſignia Equitum facinora in Tabulas redigit, librumque ideo cum ligamento rubro, foliisque aureis in Scuto ſuo exhibet; SECRETARIUS cujus munus eſt, ut omnia Documenta Sigillo Ordinis publicanda conficiat & pure ſcribat, & in hujus officii ſui teſſeram duas pennas in ſcuti ſui area cœrulea (r) gerit; GENEROSUS APPARITOR, cujus eſt, ut durantibus Ordinis ceremoniis portas Capellæ Henrici VII. cuſtodiat, atque inter cetera Officia Equitem, Criminis adverſus Statuta perpetrati, convictum Virga ſua feriat, ſcutumque exauctorandi frangat & Capella (s) ejiciat; TABELLARIUS denique, qui Citationes, Literas, cunctaque alia Documenta tuto & expedite ad Ordinis Socios perferre, atque ſtipendia, Armorum Regi ceterisque Officialibus ſolvenda quovis trimeſtri colligere (t) debet. Præter vero Decanum, cujus munere Decanus Templi Weſtmonaſterienſis ſimul perpetuo fungitur, omnes reliqui Officiales a Magno Ordinis Magiſtro (v) conſtituuntur, atque peculiari ſinguli Diebus Ordinis ſolemnibus ornatu præditi, certis fruuntur (w) emolumentis.

XVII. Quod vero ad Equitum requiſita attinet, non ſolum ut Nobili (x) genere nati, aptique præterea ad rem militarem eſſent, ſed & tantum

præcipuo Equites hujus Ordines initiandi ritu BALNEATIONIS.

(q) STATUTA *Art. VIII.*

(r) STATUTA ibid.

(s) STATUTA ibid.

(t) STATUTA ibid.

(v) STATUTA ibid.

(w) De quibus, ut & Honorariis, quæ Magno Magiſtro & Decano ab Equitibus initiandis ſolvuntur v. STATUTA in f. *Art. XVIII.* Fuerunt autem cum Ordo reſtauraretur *Decanus* Divi Petri Weſtm. & Ordinis de Balneo, EPISCOP. ROCHESTRIÆ; *Rex Armorum ſ. Bath.* Vir Ampliſſ. GREY LONGUEVILLE, Armiger. *Genealogiſta*, Vir Generoſ. JOHN ANSTIS. Junior. *Regiſtrator*, Vir Generoſ. & Ampliſſ. EDWARD YOUNGE, Armiger. *Secretarius*, Vir Generoſiſſ. EDWARD MONTAGUE. Generoſus *Apparitor*, Vir Ampliſſ. EDMUND SAWYER. Armiger.

(x) Ad Equeſtrem dignitatem Nobilis ortus apud omnes Gentes ſemper fuit requiſitus. Quare cum Imperator Fridricus I. ignobilibus quoque iſtos honores conceſſiſſet GUNTHERUS Poeta in *Ligurino ſuo* l. II. v. 151.

Utque ſuis omnem depellere finibus hoſtem
Poſſet & armorum Patriam virtute tueri
Quoslibet ex humili vulgo, quod
GALLIA fœdum
Judicat, ACCINGI GLADIO, *concedit Equeſtri.*

Imo, ut ex *Militibus* nati eſſent apud Germanos olim poſtulatum fuit, qua de re Fridricus II. in Codicillis ſuis apud PET. de VINEIS l. 6. Ep. C. 17. *Notum*, inquit, *facimus quod A. de N. Majeſtati noſtræ ſupplicaverit, ut, cum velit fieri Miles & parens Miles non eſſet, ſibi exinde largiri licentiam dignaremur. Quod quanquam noſtris Conſtitutionibus caveatur, QUOD MILITES FIERI NEQUEANT, QUI DE GENERE MILITUM NON NASCUNTUR: Ipſe tamen miles valeat decorari neque de cætero debet moleſtari.* De Equititibus in ſacram militiam cooptandis

in Bonis (*y*) haberent, ut Dignitatem Equeſtrem ſuſtinere poſſent, jam olim (*z*) neceſſe fuit. Nec, quod ætatem illorum ſpectat, communi gentium conſuetudine in Ordinem Equeſtrem recipiebantur, niſi Nobiles Annis Viginti Uno (*a*) majores, quod apud Anglos tanto exactius fuit obſervatum, ex quo Nobiles apud ipſos iſta ætate minores ſub tutela Regum fuerunt conſtituti, atque reditus ex illorum prædiis Fiſco Regio (*b*) ceſſerunt. Quam-

SIXTUS IV. in *Bulla* A. 1483. publicata. *Ordinamus*, jubet, *quod deinceps in fratrem ſacræ militiæ nemo aſſumatur niſi* de Antiquo genere *ex* Utroque parente *fuerit procreatus. Inhibentes hoc Magiſtro ſub pœna Excommunicationis ac decernentes receptionem irritam inanem nulliusque roboris ac momenti.* De Ordine Johannitico v. *Statuta* ejus *Tit. de Recept. Frat.* in cujus Lingua Germanica, etſi quatuor imagines alias ſufficiant, ab utriusque parentis latere *octo* atque ſic in Univerſum *ſedecim* Imagines requiri, refert CHR. OSTERHAUSEN Tit. II. Cui junge HIST. ORD. JOHANN. à nobis editam p. 107. Quod ad Ordinem de Balneo attinet, in illum quoque nonſolum olim, ut ex adductis ſupra inaugurationum exemplis apparet, non, niſi Nobili genere orti, fuerunt recepti, ſed & ut in poſterum id obſervetur, in STATUTIS ejus Ordinis *Art. III.* cautum eſt, Genealogiſta quoque, ut Candidatorum Imagines examinet. *Art. XVIII.* conſtituto.

(*y*) Certo enim Bonorum cenſu Equites de Balneo fuiſſe æſtimatos, MATTH. PARISIENSIS teſtatur, qui Anno 1256. *Exiit*, inquit, *Edictum Regium Præceptumque eſt & acclamatum per totum regnum, ut qui haberet XV. libras terræ & ſupra, armis redimitus tyrotinio donaretur, ut Anglia ſicut Italiæ Militia roboraretur, & qui nollent vel qui non poſſent Honorem ſtatus Militaris ſuſtinere, pecunia ſe redimerent.*

(*z*) Quæ hodie præter Nobile genus in Equitibus de Balneo requirantur, v. STATUTA *Art. III.*

(*a*) Iſta enim ætate & citius nonnumquàm liberi plurimarum Europæ Gentium moribus ſui Juris facti, munerumque publicorum capaces habiti fuerunt. Quod, ut alias Gentes taceam, de GERMANIS in not. noſtris ad *Tacit.* de M. G. paucis attigimus; Pluribus verò SCHILTERUS *Exercit. XI.* Illuſtr. à LUDWIG. *Opuſc. Miſc.* T. I. p. III. T. II. 43. De GALLIS quoque DU FRESN. *Diſſ. X.* ad Joinv. *Hiſt. Ludov.* DU FRESN. v. *Militia* & *Sigillum*: Atque de Anglis BRACTONUS l. II. C. 35. GLANVILL. l. II. C. 3. BRITTONUS C. 66. aliique JCti Anglorum ſatis jam abunde docuerunt, ut adeo mirum ſit, cur ſoli Romani annis demum XXV. majores ſui juris fecerint, admodum vero hallucientur, qui diverſos ceterorum populorum mores privilegiis à Jure Romano putant acceptas ferendas, multo quippe Juris Romani apud illos notitia antiquiores.

(*b*) De quo CAMBDENUS in *Deſcript. Brit.* p. m. 108. *Curia*, inquit, WARDORUM *à pupillis quorum cauſas tractat nomen habet. Veteri enim inſtituto è Normannia deducto & non ab Henrico III. ut aliqui ſcribunt, cum quis defunctus ſit, qui poſſeſſiones à Rege tenet, tam hæredes, quam eorum patrimonium reditusque in Regis poteſtate & tutela ſunt. Donec alterum & vigeſimum ætatis annum compleverint.* THOMAS SMITH de *Republ. Angl.* l. II. C. 5. *Apud nos pupillum in poteſtate habere perutile eſt. Siquidem Dominus ille à quo pupillus prædium habet ſimulatque de obitu parentis certior factus eſt, manum illico in corpus pupilli injicit, prædium occupat, cujus commoda ad ipſum ſolide perveniunt, abſq; eo, ut rationes geſtæ adminiſtrationis referat,*

Quamobrem præter Regios Principes pupillari quoque ætate (c) ad Dignitatem Equeſtrem nonnumquam evectos, in reliquis Nobilibus, ut infra viginti & unum annos in Ordinem de Balneo recipi potuerint, ſpeciali Regum Gratiâ opus fuit, eaque de cauſſa peculiaribus mandatis Regiis ad Equeſtres honores accipiendos evocari ſolebant, dum reſpectu aliorum, qui juſtam ætatem habebant, ut ad eamdem Dignitatem ſuſcipiendam comparerent, mandata ad Præſides (d) Provinciarum tantum mitterentur.

XVIII. Etſi vero Belli (e) quoque tempore, atque vel ante Urbium Oppugnationes vel Prœlia Milites ſæpius creati fuerint, Equites tamen de Balneo in Anglia non niſi Pacis, atque vel Coronationum Regiarum, vel Principum Walliæ creandorum, vel Expeditionum adverſus hoſtes ſuſcipiendarum vel ſolemniorum Feſtorum tempore inaugurari conſueverunt, numeroque pro arbitrio Regum majori vel (f) minori. Ex quo vero triginta quinque Equitum numerus definitus, cautumque fuit (g), ne is vel augeatur, vel minuatur, Electio Equitum in locum deficientium hoc modo (h) in poſterum fieri debet. Quoties nimirum locus vacare contingit, a Magno Ordinis Magiſtro id REGI ſtatim ſignificari, & qui ab illo nominatus fuerit Candidatus, de Electione ſua ſine mora certior faciendus eſt. Equites dein conſtituto tempore convocati atque Officialibus ſtipati ex Conclavi Principis, utpote Capituli loco, HENRICI VII. Capellam ſolemni Proceſſione adeunt, ubi, poſtquam ſinguli loco ſuo conſederunt, a duobus exedræ Magni Magiſtri proximis, gladius defuncti Equitis Decano offertur & ab hoc in latere Altaris deponitur. Comitatu inde ad Conclave Principis reverſo, Candidatus a Rege Armorum Ordinis de Balneo & Apparitore in illud introducitur, & poſtquam is de accipiendis Ordinis de Balneo Honoribus voluntatem ſuam declaraverit, felici apprecatione facta, tempus, ut rite ini-

 tietur,

modo pupillum educaverit. Vindicias ejus Juris v. apud HENR. SPELMAN in *Gloſſ. v. Warda.*

(c) Ita ÆSTELSTANUM Regem ab avo ſuo alfredo *præmaturè* i. e. ante annum 21. militem factum fuiſſe. WILH. MALMESB. loco §. 6. adducto refert, pluraque ejus rei exempla in expoſito ſupra inaugurationum Equeſtrium progreſſu paſſim occurrunt, quibus iunge recentiſſimum *Sereniſſimi Principis Regii*, WILHELMI, in *Statutis Ordinis de Balneo Art. IV. & ſupra* §. XIV.

(d) Cujusmodi literarum Exemplum ſub EDUARDO I. vide *ſupra* §. VIII. junctis, quæ GENEROSIS. ANSTIS. de illis eruditè diſſeruit *Obſervat.* p. 24. 25.

(e) Ita enim NIC. UPTONUS de *Stud. Milit.* l. I. C. 3. *Creantur & alio modo milites*, videlicet per Balneum, *qui modus obſervatur in Anglia & aliis Regnis ubi regnat Pax. Item creantur milites per aliquem Principem ſeu Principalem Capitaneum in villarum obſidionibus caſtrorum l. fortalitiorum & hoc diverſis modis.* Exempla ejusmodi Equitum, occaſionibus bellicis creatorum, v. apud SAVARONEM de *Enſe Francico* & G. DANIELEM *De la Milice Françoiſe* l. 3. C. 4. p. 82.

(f) Ut ex variis, quæ ſupra adduximus, inaugurationum exemplis apparet.

(g) STATUTORUM *Art. II.*

(h) De quo v. pluribus STATUTA *Art. IX.*

tietur, ei præfigitur. Quod ſi vero intra ſex menſes præſcriptis in Statutis Conditionibus haut ſatisfecerit, electio ejus nulla habetur, aliusque eo, quo dictum eſt, modo (*i*) eligitur.

XIX. Cum quoque in adductis *ſupra* Ordinis de Balneo Inaugurationum variis Exemplis, Candidatorum ejus tamquam vel DUCUM vel COMITUM vel BANERETTORUM vel BACCALARIORUM ſæpius mentio fiat, ea, quæ SELDENUS (*k*) aliique de Ducum & Comitum in Anglia Creatione, Inſignibus, Honoribus, Juribus atque Privilegiis prolixe commentati ſunt, repetere, non fert inſtituti noſtri ratio. Ejusmodi nempe Proceres una cum MARCHIONIBUS & BARONIBUS, Regni Angliæ NOBILITATEM (*l*) conſtituunt, atque Jure ſuffragii in Parlamenti Superioris Conſeſſu fruuntur omnes, Habitus autem, Inſignium, Titulorum, Honorumque ratione (*m*) inter ſe differunt. BANERETTI vero (*n*) olim dicebantur Equites, qui tot habebant prædia, ut Regis Juſſu minimum Decem Vaſallos ſub Vexillo ſuo in expeditionem ducere potuerint, atque per inveſtituram ſuam Jus Vexilli quadrati (*o*) nacti fuerant, dignitate jam diu (*p*) exo-

(*i*) Juxta STATUTA *ibidem* in f.

(*k*) De *Titulis honorum*, quem Incomparabilem librum Vir Maxime Reverendus, DAVID WILKINS, Legibus quoque *Anglo Saxonicis* Aõ. 1721. editis de Republica Literaria meritiſſimus, operum Seldeni T. III. inſeruit, Latinè verò redditum apud nos Anno 1696. imprimi curavit SIM. JOH. ARNOLD. *Inſp. Sonneb.* de *Ducibus* verò *Marchionibns, Comitibus & Baronibus* Angliæ vide inprimis ejus libri P. II. C. 3. & 5. atque ex recentioribus JOH. CHAMBERL. in *Not. M. Brit.* P. I. l. 3. C. 3.

(*l*) Quo titulo apud Anglos tantum Pares Regni intelliguntur v. SELDEN. P. II. C. 8. CHAMBERL. l. c.

(*m*) De quibus v. multis SELDENUM P. II. C. 5.

(*n*) A voce Germanica Fahn / Ban / Paner / Panier / *Vexillum*, atque vocabulo diminutivo ita appellati quaſi *Vexillarii Minores*, ut ſic diſtinguantur *à Baneriis*, Banner-Herren ſ. Baronibus, quibus proprie jus vexilli quadrati competebat. Unde quoque Baneretti, Baronettorum nomine nonnunquam veniunt, quaſi *Barones minores* ut SPELMAN. oſtendit v. *Baronettus*. Solemni autem ritu *Baneretti* non niſi in Exercitu Regio, erecto jam regni labaro, quod *Standartum* vocant, creari ſolebant. Tunc enim Rege, Bellive Imperatore loco gramineo conſtituto Candidatum, vexillum *penitum* & complicatum gerentem, duo Equites præcinentibus buccinis efferebant; factaque ab ipſo proteſtatione, ſatis ſibi eſſe in patrimonio, quo tantam tueatur dignitatem, Rex l. belli Imperator vexillum explicabat præcisoque ejusdem cono ſeu acumine, Candidato tradebat, jubens, ut erectum ferat auſpicate. Nonnumquam tamen res ſuccinctius peracta fuit, ut IDEM AUCTOR. *v. Banerettus* & G. DANIEL *de la Milice Francoiſe* l. 3. C. 5. referunt.

(*o*) Uſus enim Vexillorum maxime ſemper honorificus fuit, atque Romani nonſolum viros fortes vexillis donarunt, cujus rei exempla congeſſerunt HUMPHR. PRIDEAUX, *Marm. Oxon.* p. 142. & SALM. *ad Vopisc.* p. 648. ſed & apud Germanos per vexilla, utpote Poteſtatis & Jurisdictionis ſymbola, feuda Majora collata, indeque *Feuda*

(p) exoleta. Equitum denique BACCALARIORUM (q) nomine veniebant, qui Cingulo Militari vel auratis Calcaribus initiati ſub Vexillo Banerettorum merebantur, quæ vero Dignitas hodie Civilis eſt, atque a Rege confertur Candidati, in genua ſua proſtrati, ſiniſtro humero enſe (r) leviter tacto. Non autem hæc Discrimina reſpectu Ordinis de Balneo alium habuerunt uſum, niſi quod eminentioris Dignitatis Candidati ad ejus Ordinis Honores capiendos pretioſiori apparatu fuerint inſtructi, majoresque ſumtus (s) ferre debuerint.

XX. Ritus, quibus Equites de Balneo olim fuerunt initiati, ad hæc Summa (t) Capita redeunt. Poſtquam nempe ejus Ordinis Candidatus ab Aula Regia honorifice erat receptus, Armigeris, qui præſtandis officiis eum imbuerent, Gubernatoribus ipſi adjunctis, ad MENSAM primum REGIAM, ſi ante Prandium veniſſet, MINISTRARE atque ſcutellam Cibi ei inferre debebat. In peculiari dein Conclave ducto BARBA a Tonſore radebatur, CAPILLISQUE in formam Orbicularem reſectis, BALNEUM ſimul præparabatur. Veſperi Cubicularius Regius una cum Equitibus, Præcinentibus Fidicinibus, ipſum inviſebant, quibus auditis Armigeri Gubernatores Candidatum veſtibus repente exutum BALNEO immittebant. Poſtquam vero Equites, ſilentibus Fidicinibus, Conclave intraverant, præ-

Vexilli dicta fuerunt, ut alios vexillorum uſus taceam, de quibus OBRECHT *de Vexillis Imperii.*

(p) Perperam enim cum antiquis illis *Banerettis & Baronettis* a CHRIST. GRYPHIO *de Ord. Equeſtr.* p. 462. aliisque confunditur novus *Baronettorum Ordo*, quem Jacobus I. R. M. Brit. A. 1611. inſtituit, juxta formulam Diplomatis apud SELDEN. *Tit. Hon.* P. II. C. 5. 46. & SPELM. voce *Baronettus*,

(q) Gallis *Bacheliers* quaſi *Bas Chevaliers*, Anglis Bachelar / Batſchelors atque hinc media Latinitate *Bacalarii, Bachilarii*, qui, cum non haberent idoneum Vaſallorum numerum, ut ipſi vexillum gerere potuerint, peracto fortiter tyrocinio, cingulum milirare atque calcaria aurata, tamquam virtutis ſymbola accipiebant & ſub Banerettorum vexillo merebantur, de quibus v. SPELMAN & DU FRESN. v. *Bacalarius*. G. DANIEL *lib. cit.* p. 83. SELDENUS *Tit. Hon.* P. II. C. 3. §. 24.

(r) JOH. CHAMBERL. l. c. p. n. 172.

(s) Ut apparet ex privilegio *ſupra* §. IX. adducto atque G. DANIELE *lib. cit* p. 83.

(t) Quæ omnia in Tabula ænea, cujus ſupra §. X. mentionem fecimus, repræſentantur, pluribus verò deſcribuntur in veteri quadam CHARTA gallice ſcripta, quam primum EDWARDUS BISSÆUS in *Not. ſuis* ad NIC. UPTON. p. 21. paulo verò emendatiorem DU-FRESNIUS in *Gloſſ. v. Miles* T. II. p. 534. atque hinc cum quibusdam Illuſtrationibus G. DANIEL *de la Milice Françoiſe* p. 74. edidit. SELDENUS quidem *Tit. Honor.* P. II. C. 5. §. 46. Iſtam relationem Henrico VII. coævam facit, rectius verò GENEROSISS. ANSTISIUS *cit. loc. p. 85.* minimum ad tempora Henrici VI. eam referendam putat. Quia laudati Auctores non in omnium manibus ſunt, cum DANIELIS illuſtrationibus eam Chartam his inſerere, haud abs re duximus.

Cy apres enſuit l' ordonnance & maniére de Creer & faire nouveaux CHEVALIERS du BAING, au temps de Paix, ſelon la coûtume d' Angleterre

præcipuus illorum in genua ſua procidens Ordinis, Balneique inprimis rationem, quam poterat optime, ipſi exponebat, ſimulque aqua Balnei humeros ejus adſpergebat, quæ & a reliquis Equitibus ſucceſſive fiebant, adſtantibus ſemper Armigeris Gubernatoribus. Equitibus dein Conclavi pauliſper egreſſis, Armigeri Candidatum LECTO impoſitum deſiccabant, atque veſtibus, adverſus nocturni temporis injuriam comparatis, induebant, dum TON-

„ Quant ung Eſcuyer vient en la Cour
„ pour recevoir l' ordre de Chevalerie
„ en temps de Paix ſelon la Couſtume
„ d' Angleterre, il ſera tres noblement
„ receu par les Officiers de la Cour,
„ comme le Seneſchal ou du Cham-
„ berlain, ſi ils ſont preſenſt & autre-
„ ment par les Mareschaux & Huiſſi-
„ ers. Et adonc ſeront ordonnez deux
„ Escuyers d' onneur & ſagies & bien
„ apprins en courtoiſies & nourritures
„ & en la maniere du fait de Cheval-
„ rie : Et ils ſeront Eſcuyers & Gou-
„ verneurs de tout ce qui appartient
„ à celluy qui prendra l' Ordre de ſuſ-
„ dit. Et au cas que l' Escuyer vien-
„ gne devant disner, il ſervira le Roy
„ de une Escuelle du premier cours
„ ſeulement. Et puis les dits Escuyers
„ Gouverneurs admeneront l' Escuyer
„ qui prendra l' Ordre en ſa Chambre
„ ſans plus etre veu en cette journée.
„ Et au veſpre les Escuyers Gouver-
„ neurs envoyeront apres le Barbier, &
„ ils appareilleront ung baing gracieu-
„ ſement appareillé de toile, auſſy bien
„ dedans la cuve que dehors : & que
„ la cuve ſoit bien couverte de tapiz
„ & Manteaulx pour la froideur de la
„ nuyt. Et a doncques ſera l' Escuyer
„ rez la barbe & les Cheveux rondé.* Et
„ ce fait les Escuyers Gouverneurs
„ yront au Roy & diront, Sire, il eſt
„ veſpre & l' Eſcuyer eſt tout appareil-
„ lé au baing, quant vous plaira. Et
„ ſur ce le Roy commendera à ſon
„ Chamberlan qu'il admene avec que
„ luy en la Chambre de l' Escuyer le
„ plus gentilz & le plus ſaiges Cheva-
„ liers qui ſont preſens, pour lui infor-
„ mer & conſeiller & enſeigner l' Or-
„ dre & le fait de Chevalrie. Et ſem-
„ blablement que les Escuyers de l'
„ Oſtel avec les Meneſtrels voiſent par
„ devant les Chevaliers chantans, dan-
„ ſans & esbatans, jusques à l' uys de
„ la Chambre du dit Escuyer.
„ Et quant les Escuyers Gouver-
„ neurs orront la noiſe de Meneſtrelx,
„ ils deſpouilleront l' Escuyer & le met-
„ tront tout nu dedans le baign. Mais
„ à l' entrée de la Chambre les Escu-
„ yers Gouverneurs feront ceſſer les
„ Meneſtrelx auſſy pour le temps. Et
„ ce fait les Gentilz ſaiges Chevaliers
„ entreront en la Chambre tout coye-
„ ment ſans noiſe faire; Et adoncques
„ les Chevaliers feront reverence l'un
„ a l' autre, qui ſera le premier pour
„ conſeiller l' Escuyer au baing l' Or-
„ dre & le fait. Et quand ilz ſeront
„ accordez dont yra le premier au baing
„ & il ce ſ' agenoillera par devant
„ la cuve en diſant en ſecret : SIRE
„ a grant honneur pour vous ceſt baing;
„ Et puis lui monſtrera le fait de l'
„ Ordre au mieux qu' il pourra & puis
„ mettra de l' eaue du baing deſſues
„ l' Espaulle de l' Escuyer & prendra
„ congie : Et les Escuyers Gouver-
„ neurs garderont les coſtez du baing.
„ En meme maniere feront tous les
„ autres Chevaliers l'un aprez l'autre,
„ tant qu' ils ayent tous fait. Et donc
„ partiront les Chevaliers hors de la
„ Chambre pour ung temps. Ce fait
„ les Escuyers Gouvernenrs prendront
„ l' Escuyer hors du baing, & mettront

* Ce eſt a dire Faits & coupez en rond.

TONSOR interea Balneum tolleret, ſibique omnem ejus apparatum vindicaret. Equites conclave rurſus ingreſſi Candidatum præcinentibus tibicinibus ad Capellam ducebant, vinoque & bellariis refecti diſcedebant. Portis dein Capellæ clauſis, non niſi Armigeris, Sacerdote, & Candelarum Cuſtode præſentibus, Candidatus, pro ratione illius temporis, Sacris vacabat, indeque ſummo mane in Conclave ſuum ab Armigeris reductus, lecto rurſus imponebatur. Cum tempus adeſſet, ut ſurgeret, Equites præcedentibus

K

„en ſon lict, tant qu'il ſoit ſéchié, &
„ſoit le dit lict ſimple ſans courtines.
„Et quant il ſera ſechié il levera hors
„du lict & ſera addurné * & veſt bien
„chauldement, pour l' véillier de lanuit.
„Et ſur tous ſes draps il veſtira une cot-
„te de drap rouſſet, avecques unes lon-
„gues manches & le chapperon à la dite
„robbe en guiſe de ung hermite. Et l'
„Eſcuyer ainſi hors du baing & attor-
„né, le Barbier oſtera le baing & tout
„ce qu'il a entour, ausſi bien dedens
„comme en dehors, & le prendra pour
„ſon fié *, ensemble pour le collier,
„comme enſi, ſi c' eſt Chevalier, ſoit
„Comte, Baron, Baneret ou Bachelier
„ſelon la coutume de la Cour; Et
„ce fait les Escuyers Gouverneurs ou-
„veront l' uys de la chambre & feront
„les ſaiges Chevaliers rentrer pour
„mener l' Eſcuyer à la Chapelle. Et
„quant ilz ſeront entrez les Escuyers
„esbatans & danſans ſeront admenez
„par devant l' Escuyer avec les Me-
„neſtrelx faiſant leurs melodies jus-
„ques à la Chapelle. Et quant ilz
„ſeront entrez en la Chapelle, les eſ-
„pices & le vin ſeront preſtz à donner
„aux dits Chevaliers & Escuyers: Et
„les Escuyers Gouverneurs admene-
„ront les Chevalieurs par devant l'Es-
„cuyer pour prendre congié; Et il
„les mercira toutes ensemble de leur
„travail, honneur & courtoiſies qu'
„ilz lui ont fait: Et en ce point ilz
„departiront hors de la Chappelle. Et
„ſur ce les Escuyers Gouverneurs fer-
„meront la porte de la Chappelle & n'y
„demorera force l' Escuyer ſes Gou-
„verneurs, ſes Pretres, le Chandelier &
„le guet. Et en cette guiſe demourra
„l' Escuyer en la Chappelle tant qu'il
„ſoit jour, toujours en oraiſons &
„prieres: requerant le puiſſant Seigneur
„& ſa bennoite Mere, que de leur
„digne grace lui donnent pouvoir &
„confort ceſte haute dignité tempo-
„relle en l' onneur & louënge de
„leur, de ſainte Egliſe, & de l' Ordre de
„Chevilerie. Et quant on verra le
„point du jour on querra le Prêtre
„pour le confeſſer de tous ſes pe-
„chiez & orra ſés Matines & Meſſe &
„puis ſera accommuſchié, * ſil veult.
„Mais depuis l' entrée de la Chapelle
„aura ung cierge ardant devant lui.
„La Meſſe commençée, ung des Gou-
„verneurs tiendra le Cierge devant l'
„Escuyer Jusques a l' Evangille; & à l'
„Evangille le Gouverneur baillera le
„cierge à l' Escuyer, jusques a la fin
„de la dite Evangele, l' Escuyer Gou-
„verneur oſtera le cierge & le mettra
„devant l' Escuyer jusques à la fin de
„la dite Meſſe: Et a la levacion du
„ſacrement ung des Gouverneurs o-
„ſtera le Chapperon de l' Escuyer; Et
„apres le Sacrement le remettra jus-
„ques à l' Evangille *In Principio*: & au
„commençement de *principio*, le Gou-
„verneur oſtera le chapperon de l' Es-
„cuyer & le fera eſter * & lui donnera
„le Cierge en ſa main: maies qu'il y
„ait ung denier au plus pres de la
„lumiere fichié. Et quant ce vient
„*verbum Caro factum eſt*, l' Escuyer

* C'eſt a dire habillé.

* C'eſt a dire pour le ſervice rendu à l' Ecuyer.

* Communié.

* C'eſt a dire ſe tenir de bout, du Latin ſtare.

tibus Tibicinibus a Rege miſſi expergefactum novis (priores Candelarum Cuſtode ſibi vindicante) induebant veſtibus, atque EQUO egregie ornato vectum, ad Palatium Regium comitabantur, ubi a Mareſchallo (cui Equus cedebat) honorifice receptus, in Conclavi Regis adventum præſtolabatur, quo præſente Inauguratio Candidati hoc modo fiebat: CALCARIBUS nempe deauratis Regis Juſſu ab Equitibus ei appoſitis, Rex dein ipſe GLADIO illum accingebat, & JCTU ejus cervici inflicto, oſculabatur. His peractis

„ſe genoillera & offra le cierge & le „denier: C' eſt aſſavoir le cierge en „l' onneur deDieu & le denier en l' on- „neur de lui qui le fera Chevalier. Ce „fait les Escuyers Gouverneurs reme- „neront l' Escuyer en ſa Chambre, & „le mettront en ſon lict jusques à hau- „te jour. Et quant il ſera en ſon lict, „pendant le temps de ſon réveillier, il „ſera amendé, c' eſt aſſavoir avec ung- „couverton d' or * appellé ſigleton „& ce ſera lure du carde. Carde eſt „une eſpece de couleur. Et quant il „ſemblera temps aux Gouverneurs, „ils yront au Roy & lui diront: SIRE „quant il vous plaira, notrê Maître „reveillera. Et a ce le Roy commen- „dera les ſaiges Chevaliers, Escuyers, „& Meneſtrelx d' aler à la Chambre „du dit Escuyer pour le reveiller, at- „tourner, veſter, & admener par de- „vant luy en ſa Sale. Mais par de- „vant leur entrée, & la noiſe de Mene- „ſtrelx oye, les Escuyers Gouver- „neurs ordonneront toutes ſes neceſ- „ſaires preſts par ordre à bailler aux „Chevaliers pour attourner & veſtir „l' Escuyer. Et quant les Chevaliers „ſeront venus à la Chambre de l' Es- „cuyer, ils entreront enſemble en li- „cence * & diront à l' Escuyer: SIRE, „le tres bon jour vous ſoit donné, il „eſt temps de vous lever & adrecier. „Et avec ce les Gouverneurs le pren- „dront par les braz & le feront dre- „cier. Le plus gentil & le plus ſaige „Chevalieur donnera à l' Escuyer ſa „chemiſe; Ung autre lui baillera ſes „brages, le tiers lui donnera ung pour- „point, un autre luy veſtira avec „un Kyrtel* de rouge tartarin. Deux „autres le leveront hors du lict & „deux autres le chauſſeront: Mais „ſoient les chauſſes denouz* avecques „ſemelles de cuir. Et deux autres „laſceront ſes manches & un autre le „ceindra de la ſancture de cuier blanc, „ſans aucun harnois de métal. Et „ung autre peignera ſa teſte, & ung „autre mettra la coiffe, ung autre lui „donnera le mantel de ſoye de Kyrtel „de rouge tartarin attachiez avec un „laz de ſoye blanc, avec une paire de „gans blancs pendus au bout du laz: „Mais le chandellier prendra ſur ſon „fiés tous les garnemens * avec tout l' „arroy & neceſſaires en quoy l' Es- „cuyer eſtoit attournez & veſtuez le „jour qu' il entra en la court pour „prendre l' Ordre: enſemble le lit en „qui il coucha premierement apres le „baing, auſſibien avec le ſingleton, „que des autres neceſſitez. Pour les- „quels fiefs ledit Chandelier trouvera „à ſes despens la coiffe, les gans, la „ceinture & le las. Et puis ce fait les „ſaiges Chevaliers monteront à che- „val & admeneront l' Escuyer à la Sale, „& les Miniſtrez toujours devant, fai- „ſant leurs melodies. Mais ſoit le „cheval habillé comme il en ſuit. Il „aura une ſelle couverte de cuir noir, „les arzons de blanc fuſt * & eſquar- „tez les etriviers noires, les fers do- „rez, le poitral de noir cuir avec une „croix patée dorée pendant parde-

*C'eſt a dire, on lui mettra une couverture d' etoffe d' or.

* Je croi qu' il faut lire *en ſilence*.

* Eſpece de manteau.

* C'eſt a dire ſans jarretieres.

* Garniture

* de blanc.

actis Candidatus, ſolemni Proceſſione ab Equitibus in Capellam ductus, manu Altari magno impoſita, ECCLESIÆ JURA SE DEFENSURUM promittebat, gladioque Deo & Sanctis omnibus conſecrato, ſorbellum e vino confectum ſumebat; Capella denique egredienti COQUUS REGIUS, ni promiſſis ſtaret, CALCARIA cultro ſuo ſe præſciſſurum minabatur. Ad Palatium deinRegium reductus, cum reliquis Equitibus menſæ accumbebat, aſt inſtar novæ nuptæ nec edebat, nec bibebat, nec ſe in ullam partem move-

 bat.

„vant le piz du cheval & ſans crou-
„piere, le frain de noir a longues cer-
„res à la guiſe d' Espaigne & une
„croix patée au front. Et auſſi ſoit
„ordonné un Jeune jouvenſel Escuier
„gentil, qui chevauchera devant l'
„Escuyer. Et il ſera déchaperonné &
„portera l' eſpée de l' Escuyer, avec
„les eſperons pendans ſur les eſchal-
„les de l' eſpée, & ſoit l' eſpée à blan-
„ches eschalles fectes de blanc cuir,
„& la ceinture de blanc cuir ſans har-
„nois, & le jouvencel tendra l' eſpée
„par la poignée, & en ce point che-
„vaucheront jusques à la Sale duRoy:
„Et ſeront les Gouverneurs preſtz a
„leur meſtier & les ſaiges Chevaliers
„menans ledit Escuier. & quant il
„vient pardevant la ſale, les Mare-
„ſchaux & Huiſſiers ſe ſeront preſtz
„al'encontre de l' Escuier & lui di-
„ront: Deſcendez, & lui deſcendu le
„Mareſchal prendra ſon cheval pour
„ſon fié, Et ſur ce les chevaliers ad-
„meneront l' Escuier en la Sale jus-
„ques à la haute table & puis il ſera
„dresciez au commencement de la ta-
„ble ſeconde, jusques à la venuë du
„Roy. Les Chevaliers de coſte lui,
„le jouvenſel a tout l' eſpée eſtant par
„devant luy, par entre les dits deux
„Gouverneurs. Et quant le Roy ſera
„venu à la Sale & regardera l' Escuier
„preſt de prendre le haut Ordre de di-
„gnité temporelle, il demandera l'
„eſpée & les eſperons. Et leChamberlain
„prendra l' eſpée avecq; les eſperons du
„Jouvencel & les monſtrera auRoy & ſur
„ce le Roy prendra l' eſperon dextre, le
„baillera au plus noble & plus gentil
„& lui dira: Mittez ceſtuy a talon de
„l' Escuyer. Et celuy ſera agenoillié
„à l'un genoil & prendra l' Escuyer
„par la jambe dextre & mettra ſon
„pié ſur ſon genoil, & fichera l' eſpe-
„ron au talon dextre de l' Escuyer. Et
„le Seigneur fera croix ſur le genoil
„de l' Escuyer & lui baiſera. Et ce
„fait viendra ung autre Seigneur, qui
„fichera l' esperon au talon ſeneſtre
„en même maniere. Et doncques leRoy
„de ſa tres grande courtoiſie prendra l'
„eſpée, & la ceindra a l' escuyer: Et
„puis l' Escuyer levera ſes bras en
„hault, les mains entretenans, & les
„gans entre les pous & les doits: Et
„le Roy mettra ſes bras entour le col
„de l' Escuyer & lievera la main dex-
„tre & frappera ſur le col & dira: *So-*
„*yez bon Chevalier;* Et puis le baiſera.
„Et adoncques les ſages Chivaliers ad-
„meneront le nouvel Chivalier à la
„chapelle a tres grande melodie jus-
„ques au haut Autel. Et ylecques ſe
„agenoillera & mettra ſa dextre main
„deſſus l' Autel, & fera promiſe de
„ſouſtenir le droit de ſaincte Egliſe
„toute ſa vie. Et adoncques ſoy-mes-
„me deceindra l' eſpée avec grande
„devotion & prieres à dieu, a ſaincte
„Egliſe, & l'offreira en priant Dieu, & a
„tous ſes Saincts, qu'il puiſſe garder l'
„Ordre qu'il a prins jusques à la fin.
„Et ces accompliz, il preindra une
„ſouppe de vin. Et a l' iſſuë de la
„chappelle le Maiſtre Queux du Roy

bat. Rege a Prandio in Cubiculum ſuum reverſo, Candidatus, ut pranderet, Equitibus & Tibicinibus ſtipatus, in Conclave ſuum ducebatur, diviſisque ibi inter Officiales priſtinis veſtibus, TUNICA COERULEA & TÆNIA EX ALBO SERICO confecta in ſiniſtro humero ornabatur, eoque habitu poſt prandium ſuum ab Equitibus & Armigeris ad Regem ductus, ipſe primum atque dein Armigeri certis Verborum formulis Regi gratias agebant.

XXI.

"ſera preſt de oſter les ſſperons, & „les prendra pour ſon fié; & dira je „ſuis venu le Maiſtre Queux du Roy „& prens vos esperons pour mon fié; „& ſi vous faictes choſe contre l' Or„dre de Chevalrie (que Dieu ne ve„uille) je coupperay voz esperons de „deſſuz voz talons. Et puis les Chiva„liers le remeneront en la Sale. Et il „commencera la table de Chivaliers. „Et ſeront aſſiz entour luy les Cheva„liers: & il ſera ſervy ſi comme les „autres, mais il ne mangera, ne be„vera a la table, ne ſe mouvra, ne „regardera, ne de deça, ne dela non plus „que une nouvelle mariée. Et ce fait, „ung de ces Gouverneurs aura ung *Un mou- „cuervercher * en ſa main, qu'il ten- choir. „dra pardevant le viſage, quant il „ſera beſoin de ſe craiſier. * Et quant * pour „le Roy ſera levé hors de ſa table & cracher. „paſsé en ſa chambre, adoncques le „novel Chevalier ſera mené à grant „foiſon de Chevaliers & Meneſtrelx „devant luy, jusques a la chambre. Et „à l'entrée les Chevaliers & Meneſtrelz „prendront congié, & il yra a ſon dis„ner. Et les chevaliers departiz, la „la chambre ſera fermée & le nouvel „chevalier ſera diſpouillé de ſes pare„mens: & ilz ſeront donnez aux Roys „des Heraulx, ſe ils y ſont preſens, ou „ſi non, aux autres Heraulx, ſe ils y „ſont: autrement aux Meneſtrelx, avec„ques ung marc d'argent, ſe il eſt Ba„cheler; & ſe il eſt Baron le double: & ſe „il eſt Conte, ou de plus, le double: & „le rous ce cappe de nuyt ſera donné „au guet autrement ung Noble. Et „adoncq il ſera reveſtu d'une robe de „bleu, & les manches de cuſtote en „guiſe d'un Preſtre, & il aura à l'eſpaule „ſeneſtre un laz de blanche ſoye pen„dant. Et ce blanc laz il portera ſur „touts ſes habillements qu'il veſtira „au long de cette journée, tant qu'il „ait gagné honneur & renom d'armes, „& qu'il ſoit recordé de ſi hault re„cord comme de nobles Chevaliers, „Escuiers, & Heraulx d'armes, & qu'il „ſoit renommé de ſes faiz d'armes, „comme devant eſt dit, ou aucun „hault Prince, ou tres noble Dame, de „pouvoir couper le las de l'espaule du „Chevalier en diſant: Sire, nous avons „ouy tant de vray renom de voſtre „honneur que vous avez fait en di„verſes' parties, au grand honneur de „Chevalerie à voües mesmes & à celuy „qui vous a fait Chivalier, que droit „veult, que ceſt laz vous ſoit oſtez. „Mais aprez disner les Chevaliers d' „onneur & Gentilz hommes vendront „aprés le Chevalier & le admeneront „en la preſence du Roy; & les Escuiers „Gouverneurs par devant luy. Tres „noble & redouté Siré, de tout ce que „je puis, vous remercie de toutes ces „honneurs, courtoiſies & bontez que „vous me avez, & vous en mercie. Et „ce dit, il prendra congié au Roy. Et „ſur ce les Escuiers Gouverneurs pren„dront congie de leur Maiſtre, en di„ſant, Sire, ceo nous avons fait par le „coñendement du Roy ainſi coñenous „fuſimes obligiez, à notre pouvoir. „Mais s'il eſt ainſi que nous vous ayons „despleupar negligence, ou par fait en

XXI. Etsi vero Equites apud Hispanos (*u*) quoque, Gallos (*vv*), &

„ ceſt temps, nous vous requerons par-
„ don, d'autre part, Sire, coſme veray droit
„ eſt ſelon les couſtomes de Court, & des
„ Royalmes anciens nous vous deman-
„ dons robes, & fiefz à terme de, comme
„ Escuiers du Roy, compaignons aux
„ Bacheliers, & aux autres Seigneurs.

(*u*) Ut refert SELDENUS *Tit. Honor.* P. II. c. 4. §. 8.

(*vv*) Nonſolum enim, ut Delphinus Galliæ, aliique Proceres, Equites crearentur, apparatum, Ordini de Balneo in Anglia valde ſimilem, comparatum fuiſſe, ex computo An. 1350. refert DU FRESN. in *Gloſſ.* v. *Miles* T. II. p. 538. 539. ſed & a CAROLO VI. Rege Galliæ, ejus Conſobrinos, LUDOVICUM & CAROLUM, Principes Siciliæ, iisdem fere ritibus, quibus hodie Equites de Balneo, in Ordinem Equeſtrem receptos fuiſſe, Anonymus AUCTOR St. *Dionyſii* in *Hiſt. Caroli VI.* his verbis refert:

„ Ad celebritatis famam oris remotiori-
„ bus divulgandam, in Alemanniam, &
„ Angliam longe lateque per Regnum
curſores Regii diriguntur, & nuncii,
„ qui utriusque ſexus ingenuitatem o-
„ raculo vivæ vocis, & apicibus invita-
„ rent, ad ſolemnitatem in Villa San-
„ cti Dionyſii prope Pariſios peragen-
„ dam. Primo die Menſis, quæ fuit
„ dies Sabbathi, Sole jam ſuos delecta-
„ biles radios abſcondente, Rex ad lo-
„ cum deditum ſolemnitati acceſſit.
„ Quem, modico temporis ſpatio in-
„ terjecto, Regina Siciliæ ſecuta eſt. In
„ curru de Pariſiis exivit, cum Ducum
„ Militum & Baronum multitudine
„ copioſa, quam etiam duo ejusdem
„ filii Ludovicus Rex Siciliæ & Caro-
„ lus adoleſcentes egregii Equeſtres
„ ſine medio ſequebantur, non tamen
„ ſimil, apparatu, quo prius ſoliti erant
„ equitare. Nam Scutiferorum priſco-
„ rum ceremonias gradatim ad tyronũ

Ita-
„ ordinem aſcendentium ſervantes, tu-
„ nica lata talari ex griſeto bene fuſco
„ uterque indutus erat. Quicquid ve-
„ ro ornamenti eorum equi, vel ipſi-
„ met deferebant, auro penitus care-
„ bat. Ex ſimili quoque panno, quo
„ ambo induti erant, quasdam porti-
„ unculas complicatas, ac ſellis equo-
„ rum à tergo alligatas deferebat, ut
„ armigerorum antiquorum peregre
„ proficiſcentium ſpeciem denotarent.
„ In hoc ſtatu cum matrem usque ad
„ S. Dionyſium conduxiſſent in ſecre-
„ tioribus locis nudi in præparatis Bal-
„ neis ſe mundarunt. Quo peracto
„ circa noctis initium, ad Regem re-
„ deunt ſalutandum, a quo benigne
„ ſuſcepti ſunt: Et tunc ad Eccleſiam
„ feſtinans, eo ſequi ſe præcipit modo,
„ qui ſequitur. Indumentis prædictis
„ exuti, mox veſtimentis novæ Militiæ,
„ adornantur. Ex oloſerico rubino
„ veſtimenta duplicia minutis variis
„ foderata deferebant, unum de
„ ſubtus rotundum, ad talos usque pro-
„ tenſum; alterum ad modum Impe-
„ rialis clamydis à ſcapulis ad terram
„ dependentis. Quo habitu diſtincti
„ & absque caputiis ad Eccleſiam ſunt
„ adducti. Iuſignium virorum Comi-
„ tiva præibat & ſequebatur. Domini
„ Duces Burgundiæ & Turoniæ ad læ-
„ vam & ad dextram, Ludovicum Re-
„ gem Siciliæ deducebant. Dux etiam
„ Borbonienſis & D. Petrus de Navarra
„ Carolum deducebant. Et hi omnes
„ cum Rege ante Martyrum corpora
„ ſacroſancta, peracta oratione cum
„ pompa qua venerant, cænaturi ad
„ aulam Regiam redierunt. Tunc in
„ Menſa Regis, Regina Siciliæ, Duces
„ Burgundiæ & Turoniæ ac Rex Arme-
„ niæ ſedem ſuperiorem tenuerunt. Ad
„ lævam Rex Siciliæ & frater ejus Ca-
„ rolus conſederunt. Celebrique cœ-

„na facta, omnibus Rex valedicens ad „quieſcendum perrexit. Inſignes ve„rò adoleſcentes prædicti habitu eo„dem, quo prius, ante Martyres redu„cuntur; Ut ibidem, ſicut mos anti„quitus inolevit, in orationibus per„noctarent. Sed quia tenera ætas am„borum tanto labore minime corre„ſpondebat, ibi modica more facta, „reducuntur, ut quieti indulgerent.

„Illuceſcente aurora futurorum Mi„litum ductores prænominati ad Ec„cleſiam accedentes, adoleſcentes Re„gios proſtratos ante pignora Marty„rum ſacroſancta repererunt, quos ad „domum reducentes expectare Mis„ſarum ſolemnia præceperunt. Hæc „Antisſiodorenſis Epiſcopus cum con„ventu Monaſterii celebranda ſuſce„perat, ut novæ Militiæ inſignia ſan„ctius conferrentur. Ad quod etiam „decentius peragendum, Rex brevi No„bilium vallatus multitudine ad Ec„cleſiam pervenit. Duo armigeri cor„pori ejus cuſtodes præcipue evagina„tos enſes per cuſpidem deferentes, „in quorum ſummitate aurea calcaria „dependebant, per clauſtri portam „Eccleſiam ſunt ingreſi, quos Rex „longo & Regali epitogio indutus, ac „poſtmodum Rex Siciliæ cum fratre, „ordine, quo prius, ſequebantur. Qui „cum ad altare Martyrum pervenis„ſent, ac ibidem Reginas Franciæ & Si„ciliæ ac cæterarum Dominarum inſi„gne contubernium expectaſſent; ju„bente Rege Miſſa ſolemnis inchoatur. „Hoc peracto, Epiſcopus protinus Re„gem adiit & in ejus præſentia ambo „adoleſcentes flexis genibus petierunt, „ut tyronum adſcriberentur numero, „qui cum eis juramentum ſolitum ex„egiſſet eos noviter accinxit baltheo „militari; & per Dominum de Chau„viniaco calcaribus deauratis eos jus„ſit Rex inſigniri. In hoc ſtatu, prius „tamen ab Epiſcopo benedictione per„cepta, in aulam Regiam reducuntur, „ubi cum Rege prandium & cænam „acceperunt, utriusque ſexus evocata „nobilitate aſſiſtente, quæ ineffabili„ter congaudens, tripudiando perno„ctavit.

„Die Lunæ ſubſequente circa diei „horam nonam, ſicut condictum fue„rat, Rex viginti duobus electis mi„litibus ſpectatæ ſtrenuitatis, indici „juſſit Haſtiludiorum ſpectaculum, & „cum quanto apparatu poſſent, & ſci„rent, illud redderent glorioſum. „Quod & peragere maturarunt. Nam „mox in equis criſtatis, auro fulgen„tibus armis, & ſcutis viridibus in„ſignitis, quos etiam ſequebantur qui „lanceas, & galeas ſolemniter vectita„bant, ad regem pervenerunt, & ibi„dem inſignem catervam Dominarum, „quæ ipſorum ductrices exiſterent, „dignum dixerunt aliquandiù præſto„lari. Eæ juſſu Regis ad numerum „militum præelectæ, veſtimentis ſimi„libus ex viridi valdè fuſco cum ſer„tis aureis ac gemmatis cultu Regio „phaleratis ad ejus præſentiam addu„cuntur. Et ſicut inſtructæ fuerant, „de ſinu ſuo funiculos ſericeos extra„hentes, dulciter prædictis Militibus „porrexerunt, & eorum ſiniſtris lateri„bus adhæſerunt, cum lituis & inſtru„mentis Muſicis, eo usque ad campum „Agoniſtarum deducentes. Ardor „inde Martius militum animos inci„tavit, ut repetitione ictuum lancea„rum usque ad Solis occaſum laudis „& probitatis titulos mererentur. „Tum Dominæ quarum ex arbitrio „ſententia bravii dependebat, nomi„narunt quos honorandos & præmi„andos ſingulariter cenſuerunt. Qua„rum ſententiam gratanter Rex audi„ens, & ipſam munificentia ſolita cu„piens adimplere, præfatos viros Egre„gios, pro qualitate meritorum, do„nis donavit ingentibus. Et inde

Italos (*x*) Balneo, quibusdamque aliis ſupra commemoratis ritibus non-numquam

„ cœna peracta, quod reliquum noctis „ fuit, tripudiando transactum eſt.

„ Militari tyrocinio peracto, ſequens „ dies ad ſimilia exercenda viginti „ duobus electis ſcutiferis aſſignatur, „ & pari pompa, ut prius, à totidem „ domicellis, in campum ducti fue- „ runt, ubi alternatis ictibus, mutuo „ uſque ad noctem conflixerunt. Cæ- „ naque lauta Regio more eſt peracta, „ cum Dominæ nominaſſent, quos ſu- „ per cœteros elegerant præmiandos.

„ Quia exercitium illud militare per „ triduum ſtatuerat exerceri, die ſe- „ quenti, priore tamen ordine non „ ſervato, indifferenter milites cum „ ſcutiferis ludum laudabiliter perege- „ runt, & ut prius, virtutis præmia re- „ ceperunt, qui judicio dominarum „ ſe habuerunt fortius: Sic nox quar- „ ta finem dedit choreis.

„ Sequenti die Regia Refectione per- „ cepta, Rex pro cujuscumque merito „ Milites, & armigeros laudavit non „ ſine fluxu munerum, munificentiæq; „ Regalis manum porrigens liberalem, „ Dominas & domicellas armillis, & „ muneribus aureis, & argenteis holo- „ ſericisque donavit inſignioribus, o- „ mnibusque cum pacis oſculo vale- „ dixit, & conceſſit licentiam redeundi.

Idem inſigne teſtimonium a Labourerio gallice verſum P. G. DANIEL lib. cit. p. 79. & *Anonym.* AUCTOR *de l'Hiſtoire des Ordres Militaires*, quæ Amſtelod. A. MDCCXXI. prodiit, T. II. p. 36. exhibent.

(*x*) Apud hos enim iisdem fere Ceremoniis, quibus Equites de Balneo in Anglia inaugurari ſolebant, Equites fuiſſe creatos e duobus illuſtribus exemplis apud FRANCISCUM REDIUM, Nobilem Aretinum, ac Medicum Florentinum in ANNOTAT. ad *Bacco* ſuum *in Toscana*, *Ditirambo*, T. III. *Oper.* ejus p. 205. & *ſeqq.* patet, quorum prius ex antiqua charta ita refertur: „ Cum „ Domino, Anno 1260. die Octava Aprilis „ in Conſilio generali congregato more „ ſolito ad ſonum Campanæ, & tuba- „ rum, Domini Domini conſtituerunt, „ quod ſecunda Dominica Menſis Mai „ factus eſſet Miles ad expenſas publi- „ cas Nobilis, & fortis Vir Ildibrandus „ vocatus Giratasca. Venta igitur die „ ſecundi ſabbati Menſis Mai valde „ mane præfatus Nobilis & ſtrenuus „ Vir Ildibrandus, bene & nobiliter „ indutus, cum magna masnada ſuo- „ rum ingreditur Palatium, & juravit „ fidelitatem Dominis Dominis, & ſan- „ cto Protectori Civitatis Aretii in „ manus Notarii & ſuper Sancta Dei „ Evangelia: poſtea honorifice ivit ad „ Matrem Eccleſiam, ut haberet be- „ nedictionem & pro honore ejus ad- „ fuerunt ſex domicelli de Palatio, & „ ſex Tibicines de Palatio: In hora „ prandii fuit ad prandendum, ex de- „ liberatione Dominorum, in Domum „ Domini Ridolfini. Pro prandio fuit „ panis & aqua & ſal, ſecundum legem „ militiæ, & commenſales fuerunt cum „ eo dictus Ridolfinus, & duo Eremi- „ tæ Camaldulenſes, quorum ſenior „ poſt prandium fecit illi ſermonem „ de officio & obligationibus Militis. „ Poſt hoc Ildibrandus ingreſſus eſt „ cubiculum, in quo ſtetit ſolus per „ horam unam & poſtea ad eum ſenex „ Monachus, ſanctæ Floræ, cui devo- „ tè & humiliter confeſſus fuit pecca- „ ta ſua, & accepit ab ipſo abſolutio- „ nem & fecit pœnitentiam impoſitam. „ His peractis ingreditur cubiculum „ Barbitonſor, qui concinne caput & „ barbam ejus curavit, & poſtea ordo- „ navit omnia, quæ neceſſaria erant „ ad Balneationem. Rebus ſic ſtanti- „ bus ex deliberatione Dominorum

numquam fuerint initiati, procul dubio tamen illas Ceremonias Anglis, apud quos jam diu ante in uſu fuerant, acceptas retulerunt, atque Ordo de Bal-

„venerunt ad Domum Ridolfoni qua-
„tuor ſtrenui Milites, Andreaſſus, filius
„Marabuttini, Albertus Domigianus,
„Gllfredus Guiduternus, & Ugus de
„Sancto Polo cum masnada Nobilium
„domicellorum & cum turba jocula-
„riorum, Meneſtreliorum & Tubici-
„num. Andreasſus & Albertus ſpo-
„liaverunt Ildibrandum & collocave-
„runt eum in Balneum; Gilfredus au-
„tem Guidoternus & Ugus de Sancto
„Polo dederunt illi optima documen-
„ta de munere & officio novi Militis
„& de magna dignitate; Poſt horam
„unam balnei poſitus fuit in lecto
„mundo, in quo lintea erant albisſima
„& finisſima de musſali; & papilio &
„alia neceſſaria lecti de drappo ſerico
„albo erant. Permanſit Ildibrandus
„per horam unam in lecto & cum jam
„nox appropinquaret, fuit veſtitus de
„Medialana alba cum caputio & fuit
„cinctus cinctura coriacea. Sumpſit
„refectionem ex ſolo pane & aqua; &
„poſtea cum Ridolfono & quatuor ſu-
„pra dictis ivit ad Matrem Eccleſiam
„& per totam noctem vigilavit in Ca-
„pella, quæ eſt à manu dextra, & ora-
„vit Deum & Sanctisſimam Matrem,
„Virginem & Sanctum Donatum, ut
„facerent eum bonum Militem, hono-
„ris plenum, & juſtum. Adſtiterunt illi
„per totam noctem cum magna devo-
„tione duo Sacerdotes Eccleſiæ, & duo
„Clerici Minores; Item quatuor pul-
„cræ & Nobiles Domnicellæ, & quatuor
„nobiles Domnæ Seniores nobiliter
„indutæ, quæ per totam noctem ora-
„verunt Deum, ut hæc Militia eſſet in
„honorem Dei & Sanctisſimæ ejus Ma-
„tris Virginis & Sancti Donati & toti-
„us Sanctæ Univerſalis Eccleſiæ. Ri-
„dolfonus & quatuor alii ſupradicti
„iverunt ad dormiendum, ſed ante

„auroram redierunt. Orta jam auro-
„ra, Sacerdos benedixit gladium & to-
„tam armaturam à galea usque ad ſo-
„lerettas ferreas; poſtea celebravit
„Miſſam, in qua Ildibrandus accepit à
„Sacerdote humiliter & cum Magna
„devotione Sanctisſimum & Sacratis-
„ſimum Corpus & Sanguinem Domi-
„ni noſtri Jeſu Chriſti. Poſt hoc in-
„tulit altari unum magnum cereum
„viride, & libram unam argenti bono-
„rum denariorum Piſanorum. Item
„obtulit pro redemptione Animarum
„Sancti Purgatorii libram unam argen-
„ti bonorum denariorum Piſanorum.
„His peractis portæ Eccleſiæ apertæ fue-
„runt, & omnes redierunt in domum
„Ridolſoni, in qua domicelli de Pala-
„tio Nobilem, & divitem refectionem
„præparaverant; ponendo ſupra unam
„tabulam Magnam, magnam quantita-
„tem trageæ, diverſa genera tartarum
„& alia ſimilia cum optima guarnac-
„cia & Tribbiano. Facta refectione
„Ildibrandus ivit aliquantum ad dor-
„miendum. Interim cum eſſet jam
„hora redeundi ad Eccleſiam, novus
„futurus Miles ſurrexit è lecto, & fuit
„indutus ex drappis omnibus albis ſe-
„riceis cum cinctura rubra auro di-
„ſtincta & cum ſimili ſtola. Interim
„Tibicines de Palatio & Joculares &
„Meneſtrelii tangebant ſua Inſtrumen-
„ta; & canebant varias ſtampitas in
„laudem Militiæ & novi futuri Militis.
„Poſtea omnes iverunt ad Matrem Ec-
„cleſiam cum Magna turba militum
„& nobilium Domicellorum & magna
„quantitate plebis vociferantis: Vivat
„vivat. In Eccleſia incepit Miſſa ma-
„gna & ſolemnis. Ad Evangelium
„tenuerunt enſes nudos & elevatos
„Ludovicus de Odomeris, Antonius
„à Mammi, Cercaguerra illorum de Li-

Balneo una cum Ritibus, quos diximus, Equites ejus inaugurandi Angliæ Regno ſemper proprii manſerunt. L XXII.

„ Cioncolis,&Guillelm9Miſerangeſchi. „ Poſt Evangelium Ildibrandus juravit „ alta voce, quod ab illa hora in antea „ foret Fidelis & Vaſallus Dominorum „ Comunis Civitatis Arretii, & Sancto „ Donato. Item alta voce juravit, quod „ juxta ſuum poſſe ſemper defenderet „ Domnas, Domnicellas, Pupillos, Or- „ phanos, & bona Eccleſiarum contra „ vim & potentiam injuſtam potenti- „ am hominum, & contra illorum gual- „ danas juxta ſuum poſſe. Poſt hoc „ Amphoſus Busdragus cinxit Ildibran- „ dum calcare aurato in pede dextro & „ D. Teſta dictus Lupus cinxit eum „ calcare aurato in pede ſiniſtro. Poſt „ hoc pulcra Nobilis domnicella Alio- „ nora filia Berengherii gladium illi „ cinxit. Poſtea Ridolfonus de more „ dedit illi Gautatam & dixit illi: Tu „ es Miles nobilis Militiæ Equeſtris & „ hæc Gautata eſt in recordationem il- „ lius, qui te armavit militem, & hæc „ Gautata debet eſſe ultima injuria, „ quam patienter acceperis.

„ Finita celebratione Sacroſancti Sa- „ crificii Miſſæ, cum tubis, & tympanis „ redierunt ad domum Ridolfoni. An- „ te portam D. Ridolfoni ſtabant duo- „ decim pulcræ & nobiles Domnicellæ „ cum guirnaldis de floribus in Capite „ tenentes, in manibus catenam ex flo- „ ribus & herbis contextam, & hæ Do- „ mnicellæ facientes ſerralium nole- „ bant, quod novus Miles intraret in do- „ mum Ridolfoni. Nov9 autem Miles do- „ no dedit illis divitem annulum cum „ roſa aurea, & dixit, quod juraverat ſe „ defenſurum eſſe Domnas & Domni- „ cellas; & tunc illæ permiſerunt illi, „ ut intraret domum, in qua à Domi- „ cellis de Palatio magnum prandium „ paratum fuerat, in quo multi Mili- „ tes & Seniores ſederunt. In medio „ prandii Domini Domini miſerunt di- „ vitem donum novo milti, ſcilicet du- „ as integras, & fortes armaturas ferre- „ as, unam albam cum clavellis argen- „ teis, alteram viridem cum clavellis, „ & ornamentis auratis, duos nobiles „ & grandes Equos Alemmanicos, unum „ album, alterum nigrum; duos Ron- „ cinos; & duas nobiles & ornatas ve- „ ſtes armaturæ ſuper imponendas. In- „ ter prandendum projecta fuit ex fe- „ neſtris ad populum, qui erat in ſtra- „ ta, magna quantitas trageæ, multi „ panes muſtacei, multæ gallinæ, & pi- „ piones, & magna aucarum quantitas; „ Unde magna & incredibilis lætitia in „ tota illa contrata erat: Et populus „ exclamabat vivat vivat; & orabat, ut fre- „ quenti9 hæc feſtivitas fieret, cum jam „ eſſent plures quam viginti anni, quod „ facta non fuiſſet. Poſt prandium no- „ vus miles Ildibrandus armatura illa „ tota alba, quæ benedicta fuerat in mis- „ ſa ad auroram, armatus fuit & cum „ eo armati fuerunt multi nobiles ho- „ mines. Poſtea Ildibrandus aſcendit „ in Equum album, & ivit ad plateam „ poſitus in medio à Luchino Taſtonis „ ſupra nomine dicto Peſcolla, & à Farol- „ fo Catenaccio vocato Squarcina cum „ ornatis ſcutiferis lanceas & ſcutos de „ portantibus. In platea præparatum „ erat magnum Torneamentum, mul- „ tæque Domnæ & domnicellæ in fe- „ neſtris erant, & multa turba populi in „ platea. Sex judices in Torneamenti „ fuerunt Brunus Bonajutæ, Naimerius „ de Totis, Ubertus de Palmiano, di- „ ctus Pollezza, Guidoguerra Monte- „ buonus, Bertoldus olim Cenci, voca- „ tus Barbaquadra & Nanes de Fatalbis „ vocatus Mangiabolzon9. Haſtiludium „ prius factum fuit de corpore ad cor- „ pus cum lanceis absque ferro acuto,

XXII. Adeo enim Moris ſui in Equitibus de Balneo creandis Angli ſemper tenaces fuerunt, ut nec hodie in illis quidquam mutatum ſit, niſi quod repurgatis Sacris vel ætati noſtræ haud convenire viſum fuit. Ut enim olim ita & hodie adhuc illa Equitum de Balneo Inauguratio, tum in Præparatione ad illam, tum in ipſius inaugurationis

„ſed cum trappellis obtuſis, in quo novus miles benè, & fortitèr ſe geſſit, & cucurrit primo de corpore ad corpus contra Jacobum à domo Bovacci, ſecundo contra Inghilfredum Guaſconis, ſupra nomine vocatum Scannaguelfos, tertio contra Godentium Tagliaboves. Poſtea fuit factum Torneamentum cum evaginatis enſibus, & res fuit pulcra, & terribilis, & tanquam vera Guerra eſſet, & per gratiam Dei nihil mali, vel damni accidit, niſi quod in Brachio ſiniſtro leviter vulneratus fuit Philippus illorum à Focognano. Magnam autem virilitatem monſtravit Pierus Paganello, cui cum ex ictu enſis projecta eſſet galea de capite, & remanſiſſet cum capite nudo & absq; birreto ex maculis, noluit tamen ex torneamento exire, ut honeſtè poterat; ſed intentus ad bene agendum, & ad gloriam acquirendam ſcuto cooperiebat caput ſuum, & in majori folta pugnantium ſe ſe immiſcebat. Appropinquante jam veſperè, cum magno ſtrepitu tubarum, indictus fuit finis torneamenti; & Judices primum premium dederunt novo militi, ſecundum Piero Paganello, tertium vico de Pantaneto, qui correns de corpore ad corpus cum Toniaccio illorum de Boſtolis, lancea illum de equo projecerat, licet multi dicerent, quod hoc non fuit ex defectu Toniacci, ſed equi ipſius; tamen Toniaccius de Boſtolis non potuit ſeſe eximere, quin deportaretur in Barella deriſoria facta de fuſtis. Novus autem miles ſuum premium dono miſit per duos ornatos Scutiferos nobili & pulchræ Domnicellæ Alionoræ, quæ in Eccleſia cinxerat ipſi enſem Militiæ & premium fuit unum Bravium de drappo ſericeo vermiculato. Poſt hoc, cum jam eſſet nox alta, novus miles Ildibrandus cum quantitate luminarium & cum tubis & buccinis rediit in domum Ridolfoni, ubi cenavit cum amicis & conſanguineis, & poſt cenam diſtribuit honorifica munera Ridolfono, & omnibus illis qui aliquam operam præſtiterunt. Habuerunt etiam ſua muneraDomnæ & Domnicellæ, quæ in nocte vigiliæ Ildibrando adſtiterant, &c.

„Hæc ſcripſi ego Pierus filius Matthei à Pionta clericus anno ætatis meæ 50, qui vidi aliam ſimilem ſolemnitatem, quando anno mileſimo ducenteſimo & quadrageſimo Domno Papa Gregorio Sedente, & DomnoFriderigoImperatoreSerenisſimo Imperante, factus fuit miles Corradus Masnaderius in Eccleſia Sancti Pieri; Sed illa ſolemnitas non fuit iſta domini Ildibrandi, quæ verè fuit Magnificentisſima, &c.

Alterum exemplum ex antiquo monumento his verbis ab eodem AUTORE p. 213. refertur. „Die 25. Aprilis 1388. preſentibus Ser Dominico Ser Salvi, Fratre Georgio.

„Domini fecerunt Sindicum ad militiam Domini Joaonnis de Panciatichis & Gualtieri filii Bandini, poſtea nominati Domini Bandini, & ad omnia, & omnes actus & ceremonias Dominum Gabrielem Aymo de Venetiis Capitaneum Populi.

„Die 25. Aprilis 1388. Indictione II.

onis *Profanis* atque *Sacris* ritibus consistit. Fit autem *Præparatio* his ceremoniis : Postquam Cadidatus de Electione sua ab Ordinis de Balneo Magno Magistro certior factus præfixo tempore ad Conclave Principis in Palatio Westmonasterienſi se contulit, a duobus ipsi adjunctis Armigeris honorifice primum recipitur, atque notitia Ordinis, ejusque Dignitate

„ præsentibus Aghinolfo D. Gualterotti, „ Nicolaio Nicolai, Laurentio D. Pal- „ merii & Franciſco Nerii Fioravantis „ in Eccleſia Sancti Joannis.

1. Caput, & barbam sibi faciat fieri pulcrius quam prius esset, &c. & voluit pro completo haberi factum per Dominum Capitaneum hoc modo; quod manu detegit barbam.

2. Intret balneum in signum lotionis peccati & cujuslibet vitii &c. puritatis prout est puer, qui exit de baptismate. Commisit quod fieret per Dominum Philippum de Magalottis, D. Michaelem de Medicis, & D. Thomasium de Sacchettis, & per eos balnearetur; & sic balneatus fuit.

3. Statim post balneum intret lectum purum, & novum, in signum quietis magnæ, quam quis debet acquirere virtute Militiæ, & per Militiam. Missus in lectum per predictos commiss. &c.

4. Aliquantulum in lecto stratus; exeat & vestiatur de drappo albo, & sericeo in signum nitiditatis, quam debet custodire miles libere, & pure. De Mandato Capitanei indutus albo: & sic illo sero remansit inter tertiam & quartam horam noctis.

5. Induatur roba vermilia pro sanguine, quem miles debet fundere pro servitio Domini nostri Jesu Christi & pro Sancta Ecclesia. Die 26. dicti mensis de mane in dicta Ecclesia præsentibus supra dictis de mandato, & commissione Capitanei exutus est, & indutus vermilio per dictos Milites.

6. Calcetur caligis brunis in signum terræ, quia omnes sumus de terra & in terram redibimus. Factum est de caligis nigris de sirico successivè per dictos tres Milites.

7. Surgat in continenti & cingatur una cinctura alba in signum virginitatis & puritatis, quam Miles multum debet inspicere, & multum procurare, ne fedet corpus suum. Factum est & cinxit eum Capitaneus.

8. De calcare aureo sive aurato in signem promptitudinis servitii militaris & per militiam requisiti, prout volumus alios milites esse, ad nostram jussionem. Dicta die 26. super Arengheria factum de mandato, ut supra; Per D. Vannem de Castellanis & Nicolaum Pagnozzi.

9. Cingatur ensis in signum securicatis contra Diabolum: & duo tallii significant directuram & legalitatem, prout est defendere pauperem contra divitem, & debilem contra fortem. Factum per Dominum Donatum de Acciajolis.

10. Alba insula in capite in signum (quod) prout debet facere opera pura, & bona, ita debet reddere animam puram, & bonam Domino nostro. Omissum fuit, quia non erat insula.

11. Alapha pro memoria ejus, qui militem fecit. Non debet miles aliquid villanum, vel turpe facere timore mortis, vel carceris Quatuor generalia faciat miles.

Primo non sit in loco, in quo falsum judicium detur. Secundo non de proditione tractare; & inde discedere, nisi alias posset resistere. Tertio non ubi Dama vel Damigella exconsilietur; sed consulere recte. Quarto jejunare die veneris in momoriam Domini nostri &c. nisi valetudine vel mandato Superioris & vel alia justa causa &c.

Dicto die 26. factus fuit miles armatus Gualterius, postea ob memoriam patris dictus Dominus Bandinus, & factus fuit per Capitaneum, Sindicum &c Calciatus calcaribus per Dom. Robertum Pieri Lippi, & Dom. Baldum de Catalanis, & cinctus ense per Dom. Pazzinum de Strozzis: omnia in præsentia DD. & plurium aliorum Militum & populi multitudo maxima fuit.

D. Joannes promisit, & juravit pro se & pro D. Bandino & promisit quando legitimæ esset ætatis, infra annum coram DD. ratificaret, & juraret.

tate pariter ac Officiis Equitum inſtruitur. Balneo dein atque Lecto à tonſore præparatis, Barba ei raditur, atque Capilli reſecantur. Quibus factis Veſpertino tempore a Rege vel Magno Magiſtro Equites Rerum periti, Muſicis præcedentibus, ad ipſum mittuntur, quorum adventu audito, Candidatus veſtibus exutus *Balneo* confeſtim imponitur. Poſtquam Equites conclave intrarunt, ſilentibus Muſicis, alius poſt alium, in genua ſua prope Balneum procidentes, Candidatum leni voce de Balnei ratione atque corpore animoque impollute ſervandis admonent, inſuperque aqua balnei ejus humeros adſpergunt. Equitib9 vero pauliſper Conclavi egreſſis, Candidat9 Lecto imponitur, atque probe deſiccatus, *tunica fuſca*, manicis ad terram demiſſis, *Cingulo Serico*, coloris cinericii & fuſci, obſtricto, *Capitio* item *fuſco* atque Eremitarum cucullo ſimili, ac denique *mantello albo* induitur. Balneo quoque interea ſublato, Equites Conclave denuo ingreſſi, Candidatum ſolemni Proceſſione, Tibicinibus rurſus præcedentibus, ad Capellam Henrici VII. comitantur, in qua is, ptæſentibus ſolum Eccleſiæ Weſtmonaſterienſis Canonico, duobus Armigeris, Candelarum Cuſtode & famulo, per totam noctem preces ad Deum fundit, Armigero cereum ardentem geſtante, eumque, dum Evangelium legitur, in Candidati manus præbente. Matutino is tempore ad Conclave reductus lecto imponitur, donec tempus adſit ſurgendi, quo appropinquante, denuo ad eum Equites mittuntur, quorum alius *Induſio*, alius *femoralibus*, alius *Tunica Interiori*, alius *Tunica ampla* ſerico rubro, quod *Tartarin* vocant, intus obducta, duo alii *Caligis* eum induunt, alius *Cingulo Albo* cingit, alius *Caput* ejus pectit, alius *Galerum* ipſi porrigit, alius tandem *Pallium*, ejusdem cum tunica ampla materiæ, ipſi injicit, *Fasciaque ſerica* ligat, pendentibus ab ejus extremitate *Chirothecis*, humero autem Pallii ſiniſtro *Inſigne* Ordinis affixum eſt, ſimul cum *Funiculo ſerico, albo*. Quod ad ipſam Inaugurationem attinet, Candidatus eo, quo dictum eſt, modo veſtitus ſolemni Proceſſione vel equis, ut olim, vel pedibus inſtituta ad Regem vel Magnum Magiſtrum ducitur, præcedentibus Muſicis, Armigeris Aulæ Regiæ, Tabellario & Armigeris Ordinis de Balneo, proximeq; ante Candidatum Armigero Juvene, qui nudo Capite ejus Gladium, mucrone prehenſum, portat, calcaribus ex manubrio pendentibus. Sequitur tandem ipſe Candidatus, ſuis Armigeris Gubernatoribus ſtipatus, quo debita reverentia in Conſpectum Regis introducto, hujus juſſu ab Equite Seniori alterum *Calcar* dextro primum Candidati pedi, atque alterum ab alio Equite ſiniſtro ejus pedi adponitur; Rex vero ipſe Cervici Candidati *Ictum infligit, Gladioque accincti & Oſculo excepti* humero *tæniam*, cui *Ordinis Inſigne* affixum eſt, ita injicit, ut in fine a ſiniſtro latere appareat. His peractis, Candidatus ſolemni proceſſione in Templum Weſtmonaſterienſe ducitur, ubi poſtquam ſinguli locis ſuis conſederunt, a Magno Magiſtro *Statutorum* Exemplum Candidato traditur, a Decano vero, Armorum Rege Evangeliorum librum tenente, *Jusjurandum* ſuppeditatur, ac denique Cervici ejus a Magno

Magi-

Magiſtro *Torques* injicitur. Magno Magiſtro ad exedram ſuam reverſo, Decano vero Altari adſtante, *Cultus Divinus* celebratur, quo peracto atque Oblationibus factis, Candidatus a Rege Armorum Ordinis de Balneo & Apparitore ad Altaris Cancellos ductus, Gladium, vagina eductum, Decano offert, & ab eodem, accepta ſimul admonitione recipit. Univerſo Comitatu, eo, quo venerat, Ordine ad Conclave Principis revertente, ante portas templi Weſtmonaſterienſis Primarius Coquus Regius novos Equites Officiorum ſuorum admonet, ſecusq́; facturis Calcaria cultro ſuo ſe præſciſſurum (*y*) minatur. Uti vero his Ceremoniis Candidati præſentes inaugurantur, ita qui vel Reipublicæ cauſa vel propter Valetudinem adverſam vel alium improviſum caſum impediuntur, quo minus ipſi initientur, Honoratum Equitem ſuo loco ſubſtituere poſſunt, cujusmodi Procurator Pallium dextro ſuo brachio tenens a Porta Capellæ ad exedram Principalis Candidati procedit, ibique more ſolito inaugurandus, Jusjurandum quoq́; Vicario nomine (*z*) præſtat.

XXIII. HABITUS Equitum de Balneo ſolemnis conſiſtit in *Caligis*, quibus *Calcaria* ſunt affixa, *Tunica* tam *interiori* quam *Exteriori* ſive ampla ex rubro ſerico confecta, obductaque intus & fimbriata ſerico albo; *Pallio*, ejusdem cum tunica exteriori materiæ, atque humero ejus ſiniſtro *Ordinis Inſigni affixo*; *Galero* ſive Pileo cum erecta candidarum pennarum *Pluma*; *Tænia rubra*, ex qua inſigne Ordinis a ſiniſtro latere pendet; *Gladio* cum *cingulo albo*, atque *Torque aureo* cervici (*a*) injecto. In arbitrio tamen Equitum poſitum eſt, an extra dies ſolemnes more antiquo cœruleas veſtes cum tænia ſerica albi coloris in humero ſiniſtro geſtare, atque ejusmodi tæniam in futuris Inaugurationibus pallio ſuo annectere (*b*) velint. *Inſigne* vero *Ordinis* ſunt *tres Coronæ Regiæ* in *Campo Aureo*, circumſcriptis Verbis: *TRIA JUNCTA IN UNO* (*c*), illudque Inſigne non ſolum ex tænia rubra a dextro humero in ſiniſtrum Latus deflectente, diebus vero ſolemnibus ex Torque ſive *Catena aurea* (*d*) pendet, ſed & tunicæ exterioris humero ſiniſtro intextum (*e*) eſt.

XXIV. OFFICIA Equitum præter illa ad quæ vi jurisjurandi ſui (*f*) obſtringuntur, in his potiſſimum conſiſtunt: Ut, ad memoriam Coronationis

(*y*) Omnes hi ritus pluribus deſcribuntur STATUT. *Art. VII. & VIII.*

(*z*) Juxta *Addit.* STATUTORUM *Art. III.*

(*a*) de Iſto Habitu vid. STAT. *Art. VII. & VIII. & in Addit. Art. 1.* Effigiem autem Equitis de Balneo, hoc veſtitu ornati, in Fronte hujus libri.

(*b*) STATUT. *Art. VII. in fine.*

(*c*) Juxta ejus formam in STATUT. *Art. VII.* deſcriptam ac repræſentatam. Symbolo autem *Tria juncta in Uno:* alii *Sacro-Sanctam Trinitatem* intelligi, alii ad Angliæ, Scotiæ & Hyberniæ Regna ſub Ja-

cobo I. conjuncta nunc alludi exiſtimant. *Vid.* AUCT. de l'*Hiſt. des Ordres Milit.* p. 23. Andreas Mendo Disquiſ. I. Q. II. §. 12. Fidem, Regem & Regnum ſignificari putat, quæ ſententia jurijurando Equitum §. *ſeq.* magis congruit.

(*d*) de qua in *Addit.* ad STAT. *Art. I.*

(*e*) STAT. *Art. XII.*

(*f*) Cujus formula juxta STAT. *Art. VIII.* hæc eſt. *Honorabis Deum ſupra omnia, in Fide Chriſtiana eris conſtans, Regem, Supremum tuum Dominum amabis, eumque, ejusdemque jura pro viribus tuis defendes. Tueberis etiam*

Divi

Divi GEORGII I. celebrandam, die XX. Octobris, vel, si is in Diem Solis incidat, die sequenti singulis annis conveniant, atque Cultui Divino in Templo Westmonasterienſi adsistant (*g*), itemque ut ad Capitula, Coronationes Regias, Creationes Equitum & alias a Rege vel Magno Magistro vocati compareant, sub pœna arbitrio Capituli in absentes statuenda, nisi immunitatem sub Ordinis sigillo (*h*) obtinuerint; Denique ut Officialibus Pensiones atque Honoraria, quibus ex Statutis debentur, prompte (*k*) exsolvant.

XXV. JURA vero Equites de Balneo legitime electi atque rite creati nanciscuntur I. Sessionis & Suffragii in Capitulo, sive potestatem una cum aliis deliberandi ac decernendi (*k*) de Rebus, quas ad Dignitatem & Conservationem Ordinis pertinere judicaverint. II. Ut in Solemnibus Ordinis Conventibus antiquiores Equites præcipuo loco incedant & sedeant, Juniores vero eos sequantur, etiamsi hi Duces, Marchiones, Comites, Vice Comites vel Barones sint, exceptis Principibus e Regio sanguine ortis, quippe qui semper a Rege (*l*) sunt proximi. III. Ut, si alium altioris Dignitatis gradum non habeant, alios (*m*) præcedant. IV. Ut in supplendis Ordinis Perisscelidis locis vacuis aliis (*n*) præferri debeant. V. Ut, qui ex Nobilitate non sunt, *Telamones* (*o*) insignibus suis addere possint. Quæ Jura etsi jam maxime honorifica sint, hi tamen insuper Equitibus de Balneo HONORES haberi solent, ut, dum vivunt *Vexilla* cum inscriptis Equitum nominibus, atque *Galeæ, Gladiique* supra exedras illorum in Templo Westmonasterienſi (*p*) suspen-

jura Virginum, Viduarum, & Orphanorum, nec ullam violentiam, in quantum eam impedire poteris, tolerabis, hicque Ordo eodem insigni honore te ornet, qui unquam in ullos progenitorum tuorum, vel aliorum inde redundavit. Eadem ferè formula, teste OLAO MAGNO lib. 3. *de variis condit. Aquil. Popul.* Equites aurati apud Populos Septentrionales jurare solebant: *Ego N. opto mihi ita Deum propitium & B. Virginem ad S. Ericum, quod volo juxta extremum meum posse, per vitam & bona mea defendere fidem Catholicam & Sanctum Evangelium, & tenere ac protegere Ecclesiam & ejus Ministros in sua libertate & immunitate: Et stare contra omne, quod iniquum est, & confortare pacem & justitiam: Et defendere pupillos & orphanos, virgines viduas & pauperes: Et fore fidelem meo Regi, & Regno seu Patriæ meæ: & juste exhibere & exercere meum militarem Statum, ad honorem Dei, secundum ultimum posse meum, sicut me Deus adjuvet.*

(*g*) Juxta STATUT. *Art. X.*

(*h*) Ex STATUT. *Art. XVI.*

(*i*) de quibus vide STATUT. *Art. XVIII.* & in *Addit.* eorum *Art. IV.*

(*k*) Ita tamen, ut Decreta à Rege tanquam Supremo Ordinis Domino confirmanda sint. STAT. *Art. VIII. & XVI.*

(*l*) ibid. *Art. XIV.*

(*m*) Ibid. *Art. XI.* Equites quidem Baccalaureos tempore Jacobi I. jus Equites de Balneo præcedendi sibi arrogasse, sed argumenta illorum à THINNIO, Heraldo Lancastrensi, Tractatu nondum impresso, solide refutata fuisse, Generosis. ANSTIS. *lib. cit.* p. 63. refert.

(*n*) STATUT. *Art. XIX.*

(*o*) Sunt vero TELAMONES figuræ hominum vel animalium, quæ fulcri loco & singularis honoris causa Insignibus addi solent, Gallis *Supports Tenants, Soutiens* dictæ, Germanis Schildhalter. Vide *Addit.* STAT. *Art. ult.*

(*p*) Ibid. *Art. II.*

ſuſpendantur; quando vero obierunt, eadem quidem vexilla & reliqua Inſignia Equeſtria inde tollantur, ſed in alia ejus templi columna in perpetuam Equitum memoriam cuſtodiantur, inſuperque Viduæ & Liberi eorum priſtinis ſuis Prærogativis & Juribus (*q*) fruantur.

XXVI. Rurſus vero Honoratisſimus hic ordo amittitur, requiſitis Conditionibus a Candidatis intra ſex menſes, ex quo de Electione ſua certiores facti fuerunt, non (*r*) adimpletis; Deinde Reſignatione Equitum in Ordinem Periſcelidis cooptatorum, quæ inſtrumento propria manu ſubſcripto (*s*) fieri debet, niſi uſitatis in acceptione alterius Ordinis proteſtationibus factis, Ordinem de Balneo (*t*) ſimul retinere velint; Denique Exauctoratione, qua Equites Hæreſeos, ac Perduellionis, itemque turpis ex prœlio fugæ, aliorumque id genus Criminum & infamium facinorum convicti, non ſolum gradu ſuo in Capitulo dejiciuntur, ſed & Scuta ipſorum fracta, aliaque inſignia tam ex Conclavi Capituli quam Capella omnibus infamiæ ſignis ſolitis per Apparitorem Ordinis exturbantur, ejusque rei memoria Regeſtis (*u*) inſeritur.

XXVII. Ex iis vero, quæ de Honoratisſimo Ordine de Balneo hactenus diſſeruimus, ſumma quoque ejus Præſtantia ac Dignitas undequaque elucent. *Sive* enim Pium ejus Scopum (*vv*), *ſive* Antiquitatem, qua omnes alios

(*q*) STATUT. *Art. XI.*

(*r*) Juxta STATUTA *Art. IX.*

(*s*) vid. eadem STATUTA *Art. XX.*

(*t*) Duorum quidem Militarium Ordinum Regularium Socius nemo poteſt eſſe, atque de eo in STATUTIS *Ordinis S. Johannis Hieroſol.* Tit. II. §. 9. & 10. Ita cautum eſt. *Quicunque in alio ordine profeſſionem fecerit, in noſtro nulla unquam ratione recipiatur, & ſi receptus fuerit, habita notitia, habitu privetur. Et a conventu expellatur, ablata illi omni ſpe, habitum noſtrum aut alimenta vel quicquam aliud in Ordine noſtro ſive ſit commenda ſive membrum, vel penſio etiam de gratia ſpeciali conſequendi.*

Excipiuntur tamen Ordines Regulares ſub uno Capite juncti, utpote S. Jacobi, Calatravæ, & S. Juliani in Hiſpania, atque Ordines Seculares, quorum ſimul ac Regularis cujusdam ſocium eſſe permittitur. Quod ad ordines Seculares inter ſe attinet, plurium ſocium eſſe, omnino licet; niſi Statutis eorum id ſit prohibitum, quod multis exemplis comprobat HONORE de S. MARIE Diſſ. *Hiſt. & Critique ſur la Chevalerie* l. II. Diſſ. IV. atque de conſuetudine in Anglia recepta. *Neanmoins*, inquit, *quand deux Societés Militaires ſe rapportent aux mêmes fins & ont les mêmes fonctions qui ſont de combattre les ennemis de l' Egliſe & de la Religion, le Service du Prince, le maintiens de l' Etat, il n' eſt pas defendu d' en prendre deux enſemble. Ne ſcait on pas qu' autre fois il y avoit en Angleterre des Chevaliers qui portoieni en meme temps le Collier de l' Ordre du BAIN & celuy de la JARRETIERE.*

(*u*) Vide de his STATUTA *Art. III. & XVII.* in *fine* de officio Apparitoris Ordinis. Exemplum Equitis de Balneo ab Eduardo IV. propter crimen perduellionis exauctorati, atque modum tum procedendi refert SELDENUS *Tit. Honor.* P. II. c. 5. §. 38. Morem verò apud alios Ordines receptum HONORE de S. MARIE *lib. cit. Diſſ. VII.*

(*vv*) Dei videlicet, Religionis Chriſtianæ, Regis, Regni, Viduarum, Virginum, Orphanorum, aliorumque oppreſſorum defenſionem, ex Jurejurando in STAT.

os Ordines ſuperat (*x*); *ſive* Equites in illum receptos, Reges, Principes Regios, aliosque Proceres, Nobiliſſimo genere, ac ſummis meritis conſpicuos; *ſive* ſolemnia, quibus initiari conſueverunt, tempora; *ſive* Regum, Summorumque Procerum, Inaugurationibus Equitum non tantum præſentium, ſed & ſimul adminiſtrantium Perſonas; *ſive* magnum Inaugurationis Apparatum, publicis ſumptibus ſuppeditatum; *ſive* Ceremoniarum multitudinem, earumque pariter ac Equeſtris Habitus rationes (*y*) myſticas; *ſive* denique Equitum Honores reſpicias, omnia ad Honoratiſſimi illius Ordinis maximum ſplendorem, ſummamque Dignitatem comparata eſſe, facile apparebit.

Art. VIII. & *ſupra* §. *XXIV.*

(*x*) Atque aliis Ordinibus forte occaſionem dedit. Ut enim multam illam convenientiam inter hunc & Ordinem St. Johannis aliosque nunc taceamus, Rex Hungariæ Ludovicus & Johanna, Regina Neapolitana, *Ordinem Nodi* A. 1351. inſtituendo, *tæniam albam*, quæ humero dextro Equitum de Balneo jam olim affigi conſuevit, videntur imitari voluiſſe.

(*y*) Ceremonias enim, Veſtes, eorumque diverſos colores, Arma & Inſignia Equitum de Balneo rationes ſuas myſticas habere STATUT. *Art. VII.* diſerte innuitur; quibus propterea, ut Candidati Equeſtres imbuantur, non ſolum Armigeri Gubernatores, ſed & alii Equites periti ipſis adjungi ſolent. Ut vero quarundam tantum nunc mentionem faciamus, denotant procul dubio BALNEUM, inſtar Luſtrationis Gentilium & Baptismatis Chriſtianorum, nonſolum initiationem Ordine Equeſtri, ſed & puritatem animi & corporis conſervandam; LECTUS, cui Equites imponuntur, illam animi Tranquillitatem, quam ex Rebus bene fortiterque geſtis capiunt; OSCULUM, quo excipiuntur, Pacis Studium; JCTUS, qui cervici ipſorum infligitur, Honoris ſui defenſionem, atque turpem ab hoſte fugam evitandam; VESTIUM priſtinarum cum novis mutatio, novam, atque Equitibus dignam Vitæ rationem; CALCARIA, promptum erga Superiores obſequium, & Virtutis quavis data occaſione exercitium; GLADIUS CONSECRATUS, uſum ejus ad Dei gloriam atque Religionis defenſionem; TÆNIA ALBA, dextro Equitum humero affixa, donec ab illis fortiter quid geſtum fuerit, vel a Virgine quadam ea aufferatur, Virtutis exercendæ ſtudium atque Virginum defenſionem; INSIGNIA trium CORONARUM, ut & TORQUES, ex quo illæ pendent, præmia ex Rebus fortiter geſtis exſpectanda innuunt; atque in univerſum ARMA Equeſtria admonere quoque videntur Equites Armaturæ, qua Chriſtiani Homines indui debent juxta Apoſtoli monitum (*) *Propterea aſſumite univerſam illam* armaturam Dei, *ut poſſitis reſiſtere tempore adverſo & omnibus confectis ſtare. State igitur* lumbis circumcincti *veritate*, & *induti* thorace Juſtitiæ. Calceatis pedibus *Præparatione Evangelii Pacis; Inſuper aſſumto* Scuto Fidei, quo *poſſitis omnia jacula mali illius ignita exſtinguere.* Galeam *etiam Salutis recipite*, & Gladium Spiritus, *hoc eſt verbum Dei.* COLORES vero, quibus Veſtes & Inſignia Equitum diſtinguuntur, ſuas quoque rationes myſticas habere, atque *AL-*

(*) *Epheſ. VI. v. 13, 14, 15.*

ALBUM Religionis, Fidei, Caſtitatis, & Sinceri Animi; NIGRUM Mortalitatis, Firmitatis & Conſtantiæ; AUREUM Præſtantiæ & Felicitatis; RUBRUM Magnanimitatis ſimul ac Religionis & Patriæ cum Vitæ periculo defendendæ; CÆRULEUM Studii Rerum Divinarum; VIRIDEM animi Vigoris; PURPUREUM denique Summæ Nobilitatis Symbola eſſe, juxta alios Artis Heraldicæ Scriptores HENR. SPELMANNUS in *Aſpilogia* ſua docet, pluribus vero iſtarum Ceremoniarum omnium rationes ſe expoſiturum eſſe, Vir Ampliſſimus, JOHANNES ANSTISIUS, Libro ſæpius laudato, ſpem fecit. Italorum, quos in creandis Equitibus multas ejuſmodi Ceremonias quoque adhibuiſſe, *ſupra p. 79.* diximus, rationes de illis vide *ſupra* p. 83.

M

Quod ſupereſt, ſervet Deus Optimus Maximus SERENISSIMUM atque POTENTISSIMUM Magnæ Britanniæ Regem, GEORGIUM II. Ejuſque Incolumitatem augeat in Regni ſui Incrementum, Domus Suæ Regiæ Firmamentum ac Honoratiſſimi Ordinis Militaris de Balneo Præſidium. Servet Sereniſſimos Principes Regios, FRIDERICUM, Principem VValliæ, ac VVILHELMUM, Ducem Cumberlandiæ, atque tot Populorum, in quorum Spem nati ſunt, Vota pro Incolumitate ipſorum, & majoribus indies Virtutum Regiarum incrementis firma, ac

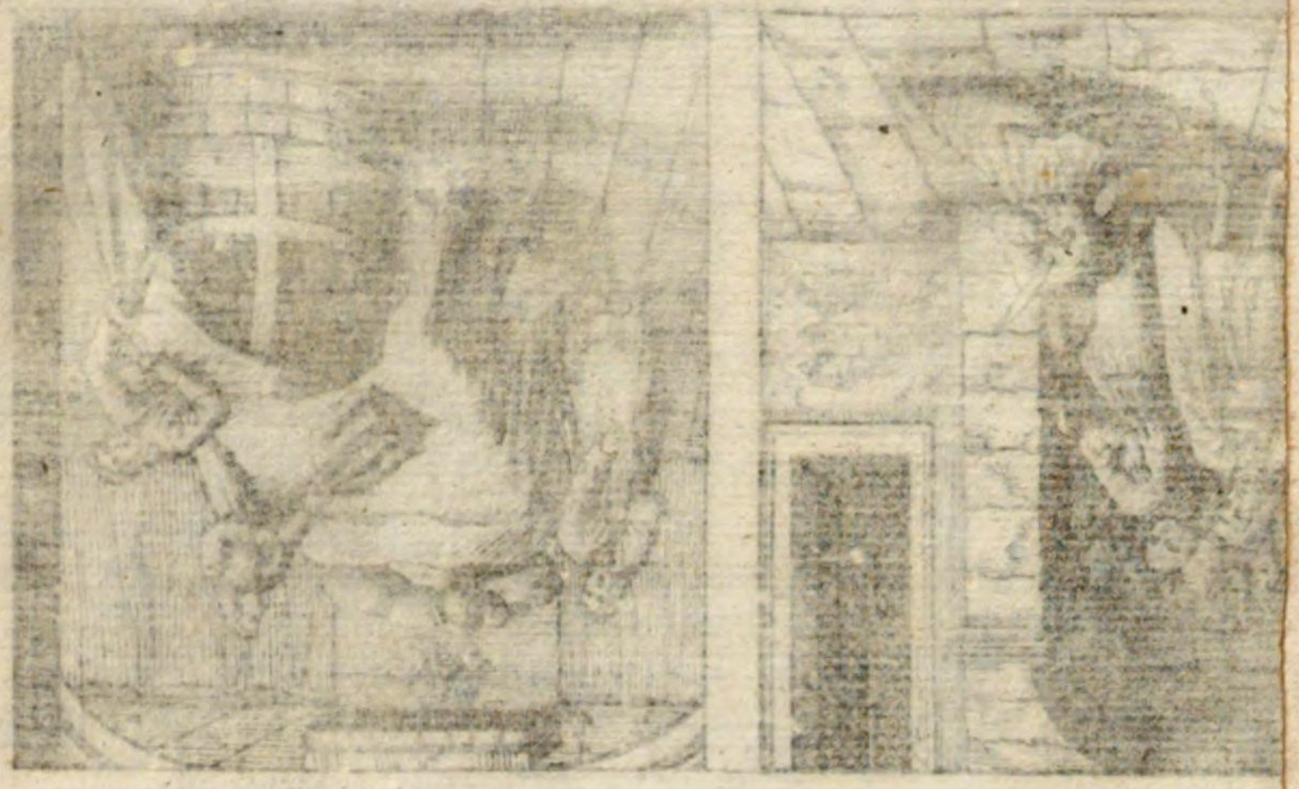
rata

rata esse jubeat. Servet Illustrissimum atque Celsissimum Principem, JOHANNEM, DUCEM de MONTAGU, Honoratissimi Ordinis de Balneo MAGNUM MAGISTRUM, atque reliquos ejus Ordinis Illustrissimos atque Nobilissimos Socios, utpote tot Magnæ Britanniæ Fulcra, quam diutissime præstet Superstites ac Sospites. Servet denique universum Honoratissimum Ordinem, in omne ævum, quam prosperrimum atque florentissimum.

STAT.

STATUTES
Of the moſt HONOURABLE
ORDER
OF THE
BATH

STATUTA
HONORATISSIMI
ORDINIS MILITARIS
De
BALNEO



BADGE

OF

ORDER

OF THE

GARTER

CREATION
Of the most HONOURABLE
ORDER
OF THE
BATH.

INSTAURATIO
HONORATISSIMI
ORDINIS
De
BALNEO.

GEORGE, *by the Grace of God, of* Great-Britain, France, *and* Ireland *King, Defender of the Faith &c. To all, to vvhom theſe Preſents ſhall come, Greeting: Whereas Our Royal Predeceſſors, upon divers vviſe, and honourable Conſiderations, have, on Occaſion of certain auguſt Solemnities, conferred, vvith great State, upon their Royal Iſſue Male, the Princes of the Blood Royal, ſeveral of their Nobility, Principal Officers, and*

GEORGIUS Dei, gratia Rex *Magnæ Britanniæ, Franciæ & Hiberniæ, Defenſor Fidei* &c. Omnibus quibus hoc Diploma innotescet, Salutem: Cum Regii noſtri Prædeceſſores variis atq; honorificis ductirationibus, ex occaſione certarum Auguſtarum Solemnitatum, magna cum Pompa in Regiam ſuam eamque Maſculam Progeniem, in Principes ex Regio Sanguinĕ prognatos, in diverſos ex Nobilibus & Miniſtris primariis, inque Viros alios vel Genere vel

and other Persons distiuguished by their Birth, Quality, and personal Merit, That Degree of Knighthood, vvhich hath been denominated the Knighthood of the BATH; *We being moved by the same Considerations, do hereby declare our Royal Intention, not only to re-establish, and support the said Honour of Knighthood in its former Lustre and Dignity; but to erect the same into a regular military Order: And accordingly of our especial Grace, certain Knovvledge, and meer Motion, and by Virtue of our Royal Prerogative, being the Fountain of Honour, We have instituted, erected, constituted, and created, and by these our Letters Patents do institute, erect, constitute, and create a military Order of Knighthood to be, and be called for ever hereafter by the Name and Title of* The Order of the BATH, *vvhereof vve, our Heirs, and Successors Kings of this Realm for ever shall be Sovereigns, vvhich said Order shall consist of a Great Master to continue during the Pleasure of Us, our Heirs, or Successors, and thirty six Companions to be from Time to Time nominated, and appointed by Us, our Heirs, and Successors, vvherein a Succession shall*

Conditione vel meritis propriis illustres contulerint gradum illum Ordinis Militaris, qui de *Balneo* denominatus est; Nos iisdem moti Considerationibus, Literis hisce declaramus Regiam Nostram intentionem, non tantum restaurandi memoratum Honorem Ordinis hujus Equestris, eique priorem Splendorem ac Dignitatem restituendi, verum etiam eundem erigendi in Ordinem *Militarem Regularem*: Quapropter ex singulari gratia, certa notitia & proprio motu, ac ex Regia nostra Prærogativa, qua omnis Honoris Fons ac Origo sumus, instituimus, erexímus, constituimus & creavimus, atque Literis hisce patentibus instituimus, erigimus, constituimus ac creamus Ordinem Militarem Dignitatis Equestris, qui sit, & abhinc semper vocetur nomine ac titulo *Ordinis de Balneo*, cujus Nos, Heredes Nostri & Successores, Reges hujus Regni, in omne ævum absoluti Domini erimus; Quem memoratum Ordinem constituent Magnus Ordinis Magister, qui Dignitatem hanc servabit pro Beneplacito Nostro, nostrorum Heredum vel Successorum, & triginta sex Socii, qui Progressu temporis a Nobis, Heredibus nostris & Successoribus nominandi ac designandi sunt, quorum

succes-

ſhall be alvvays regularly continued; Which ſaid Order ſhall be governed by Statutes, and Ordinances to be from Time to Time made, ordained, altered, and abrogated by Us, our Heirs, and Succeſſors at Our, and their Pleaſure. And to the End, that ſuch Statutes may be legally eſtabliſhed, We, followving the Example of our Royal Predeceſſor King EDWARD *the Third of glorious Memory, Founder of the moſt Noble Order of the* GARTER, *vvho gave Sanction to the Statutes of that Order, by affixing to them the Seal, vvhich had been by his Command made, and appointed for the ſame Order, do hereby direct, and appoint, that a Seal ſhall be immediately engraven, having upon one Side the Repreſentation of our Royal Perſon on Horſeback in Armour, the Shield* Azure, *Three Imperial Crovvns Or, the Arms uſually aſcribed to the Renovvned King* ARTHUR, *vvith this Circumſcription,* Sigillum Honoratiſſimi Ordinis Militaris de Balneo; *and on the Reverſe the ſame Arms empaling our Royal Arms: And our Royal Will, and Pleaſure is, that the ſaid Seal ſhall for ever hereafter be the Seal of the ſaid Order of the* BATH, *And that the Statutes to*

ſucceſſio ſemper regulariter continuabitur; Qui dictus Ordo regetur Statutis atque Decretis progreſſu temporis a Nobis, Heredibus noſtris & Succeſſoribus dandis, ordinandis, mutandis & abrogandis pro Noſtra Illorumq; arbitrio. Ut autem hæc Statuta legitime ſtabiliantur, Nos, ſequentes exemplum Regii Noſtri Prædeceſſoris, Regis *Eduardi* Tertii, glorioſæ memoriæ, Fundatoris Nobiliſſimi Ordinis *Periſcelidis*, qui Statuta iſtius Ordinis ſanciebat, affigendo iis Sigillum, quod ex ejus mandato factum erat, eidemque Ordini traditum, hiſce mandamus & conſtituimus, ut ſigillum e veſtigio incidatur, in altero latere Imaginem gerens Perſonæ Noſtræ Regiæ, equo inſidentis cum omni Armatura ſua, Scuto coloris cærulei, & tribus coronis Regiis aurei coloris, ceu inſignibus communiter celebratiſſimo Regi *Arthur* adſcriptis, cum hac circumſcriptione: *Sigillum Honoratiſſimi Ordinis de Balneo*; in altero autem latere eadem inſignia, Regia Noſtra inſignia circumdantia. Et Voluntas Noſtra Regia ac Beneplacitum eſt, ut dictum Sigillum abhinc ſemper ſit Sigillum memorati *Ordinis de Balneo*, utq; Statutæ

to be perpetually, and inviolably obſerved vvithin the ſaid Order, ſhall be eſtabliſhed, and ſealed by and vvith the ſame Seal. And vve do hereby for Us, our Heirs, and Succeſſors declare, and ordain, that the ſaid Statutes ſo to be given by Us, our Heirs, or Succeſſors, to vvhich the ſaid Seal ſhall be affixed, ſhall be of the ſame Force, and Validity, as if the ſame Statutes, and every Article of them had been verbatim recited in theſe Our Lettres Patents, and had been paſſed under the Great Seal of this our Realm. And further vve do hereby ordain, conſtitute, nominate, and appoint our Right Truſty and Right entirely beloved Couſin John *Duke of* Montagu *to be the firſt* Great Maſter *of the ſaid Order, To hold the ſaid Office during our Pleaſure, vvith ſuch Povvers, Privileges, and Emoluments, and ſubject to ſuch Regulations, as ſhall be for that Purpoſe appointed in the Statutes to be eſtabliſhed by Us, our Heirs, or Succeſſors, as aforeſaid: And vvhereas it is abſolutely neceſſary for the Dignity, and Service of this Order, that there ſhould be Officers peculiarly appropriated thereto, We do by theſe Preſents for Us, our Heirs, and Succeſſors, vvill and ordain, That*

perpetuo & inviolabiliter in hoc Ordine obſervanda ſanciantur atque obſignentur eodem Sigillo. Adeoque ſimul pro Nobis, Heredibus noſtris & ſucceſſoribus declaramus & ordinamus, ut dicta Statuta a Nobis, Heredibus noſtris aut Succeſſoribus promulganda, quibus memoratum Sigillum affixum erit, ejusdem ſint valoris & ponderis, ac ſi eadem Statuta cum quocunque in iis articulo *verbotenus* in his literis Noſtris Patentibus recitata atque magno Regni noſtri Sigillo firmata eſſent. Præterea hiſce ordinamus, conſtituimus, nominamus & deſignamus perfidelem Noſtrum & dilectiſſimum Conſanguineum, JOHANNEM DUCEM de MONTAGU, ut primus ſit *Magnus* dicti *Ordinis Magiſter*, utq; ſervet hoc officium pro noſtro lubitu, tali iuſtructus Poteſtate, Privilegiis & Emolumentis, ac ſubjectus talibus Legibus, quales hunc in finem a Nobis, Heredibus noſtris & Succeſſoribus præſcribentur, uti memoratum eſt ſupra: Cum vero in hujus Ordinis Dignitatem & uſum abſolute neceſſarium ſit, ut Officiales quidam ad eum peculiariter pertineant, Nos hiſce pro Nobis, Heredibus noſtris & Succeſſoribus volumus ac ordinamus,

ut

That there ſhall be for ever hereafter a Dean, Regiſter, King of Arms, Genealogiſt, Secretary, Uſher, and Meſſenger of, and belonging to the ſaid Order, vvhoſe reſpective Duties, Privileges, Emoluments, and Perquiſites ſhall be particularly expreſſed, and declared in the ſaid Statutes. And vve do hereby for Us, our Heirs, and Succeſſors, conſtitute, create, and appoint the Dean of the Collegiate Church of St. Peter's weſtminſter *for the Time being, to be for ever hereafter Dean of the ſaid Order; and do for Us, our Heirs, and Succeſſors, give, and grant full Povver, and Authority to the* Great Maſter *of the ſaid Order for the Time being to conſtitute, nominate, and appoint, under the Seal hereby appointed for the ſaid Order, a Regiſter, King of Arms, Genealogiſt, Secretary, Uſher, and Meſſenger of the ſaid Order; and from Time to Time to fill up the Places of ſuch Officers upon Vacancies, according to ſuch Rules, and Directions, as ſhall for that Purpoſe be laid dovvn, and expreſſed in the ſaid Statutes to be given, as aforeſaid. And to the End, that the reſpective Fees to be paid to the ſeveral Officers of the ſaid Order of the* BATH, *by ſuch Perſons, as ſhall be nominated unto, and accept the Honour of a Companion of the ſaid Order may be certain, and fixed; We*

ut dehinc ſemper ſint Decanus, Regiſtrator, Rex Armorum, Genealogiſta, Secretarius, Apparitor & Tabellarius, ad dictum Ordinē pertinentes, quorum reſpective Officia, Privilegia, Emolumenta & Accidentia ſpecialiter exprimentur & declarabuntur in Statutis memoratis. Adeoq; hiſce pro Nobis, Heredibus & Succeſſoribus noſtris, conſtituimus, creamus, ac deſignamus *Decanum Eccleſiæ Collegiatæ* Sti *Petri Weſtmonaſterienſis*, qui tunc temporis erit, ut dehinc ſemper ſit *Decanus* dicti *Ordinis*, ſimulq; pro Nobis, Heredibus noſtris & Succeſſoribus, *Magno* hujus Ordinis pro tempore *Magiſtro* damus & concedimus plenam poteſtatem ac auctoritatem conſtituendi, nominandi, atq; Sigillo, eidem Ordini modo præſcripto, confirmandi *Regiſtratorem, Regem Armorum, Genealogiſtam, Secretarium, Apparitorem & Tabellarium* Ordinis memorati. Idem progreſſu temporis in talium Officialium decedentium locum alios ſubſtituet, juxta tales regulas & ordinationes, quales hunc in finem in Statutis præſcribendis injungentur & exprimentur, uti jam monitum eſt. Et propterea, ut diverſa Emolumenta, diverſis hujus *Ordinis de Balneo* Officialibus ſolvenda a talibus viris, qui

idcirco

We do by theſe Preſents, for Us, our Heirs, and Succeſſors, vvill, and declare, that all ſuch Fees ſhall be ſpecially, and particularly aſcertained, and eſtabliſhed in and by the Statutes to be given, and ordained to, and for the ſaid Order, by Us, our Heirs, or Succeſſors, under the Seal hereby appointed for the ſaid Order, and ſhall be of the like Force, and Effect, as if the ſame had been particularly expreſſed, and ſet forth in theſe our Letters Patents. And laſtly, vve do hereby for Us, our Heirs, and Succeſſors, grant, that theſe our Letters Patents, or the Inrollment, or Exemplification thereof ſhall be, in and by all Things, good, firm, valid, ſufficient, and effectual in the Lavv, according to the true Intent and Meaning thereof, any Omiſſion, Imperfection, Defect, Matter, Cauſe, or Thing vvhatſoever to the contrary thereof in any vviſe notvvithſtanding: In Witneſs vvhereof, vve have cauſed theſe our Letters to be made Patents. Witneſs our Self at *Weſtminſter* the Eighteenth Day of *May*, in the Eleventh Year of our Reign.

By Writ of Privy Seal,

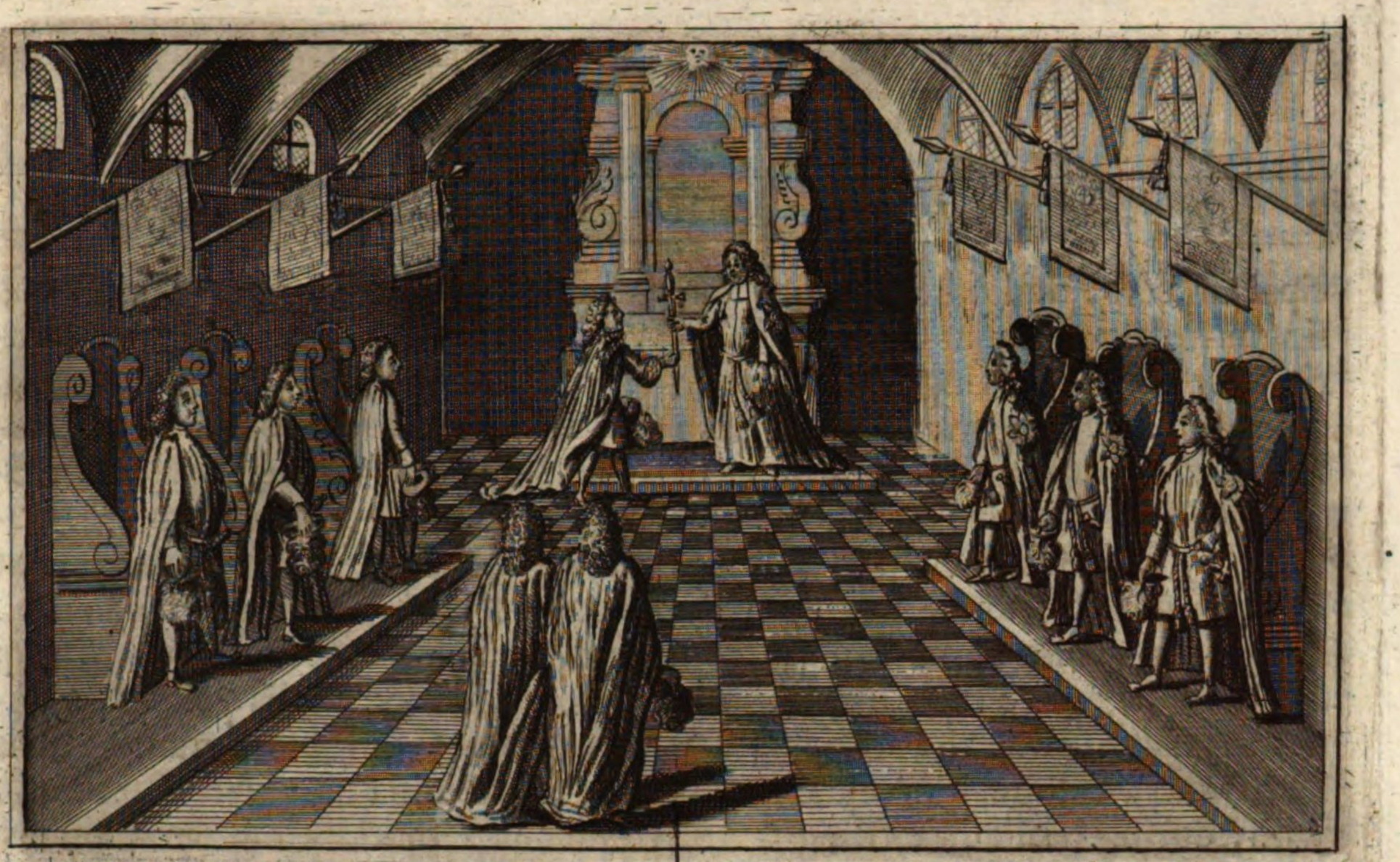
BISSE *and* BRAY.

idcirco nominabuntur, & in hunc Ordinem cooptabuntur, certa ſint & fixa; Nos hiſce pro Nobis, Heredibus noſtris & Succeſſoribus, volumus ac declaramus, ut omnia hæc ſtipendia ſpecialiter & particulariter rata fiant, ac conſtabilita in & per Statuta huic Ordini injungenda, atq; Ordinanda a Nobis, Heredibus noſtris aut Succeſſoribus, ſub Sigillo, dicto Ordini jam præſcripto, eruntque hæc ejusdem valoris & effectus, ac ſi eadem in Literis hiſce Patentibus ſigillatim expreſſa eſſent & propoſita. Tandem hiſce pro Nobis, Heredibus noſtris & Succeſſoribus, concedimus, ut hæ Literæ Noſtræ Publicæ, ſive relatio in eas, ſive earum Copiæ, omni ratione bonæ, firmæ, validæ, ſufficientes & efficaces in judicio habeantur, ſecundum earum veram intentionem ac ſenſum, nulla omiſſione, imperfectione, defectu, materia, cauſa, aut re quacunq; contraria eas impedientibus: In cujus rei teſtimonium has Literas noſtras Patentes reddi curavimus, quod Ipſi teſtamur *Weſtmonaſterii*, die decimo octavo Maji, *anno Regni Noſtri undecimo*

Obſignatum Sigillo Privato

BISSE & BRAY.

STATU-



STATUTES
Of the most Honourable ORDER OF THE BATH.

GEORGE R.

GEORGE, by the Grace of God, of *Great-Britain, France,* and *Ireland* King, Defender of the Faith &c. To all, to wohm theſe Preſents ſhall come, Greeting. Whereas Our Royal Predeceſſors, for divers wiſe, and honourable Conſiderations, have, on Occaſion of ſeveral ſplendid, and auguſt Solemnities, conferred, whit great State and Ceremony, upon their Royal Iſſue Male, the Princes of the Blood Royal, ſeveral of their Nobility, principal

STATUTA
HONORATISSIMI ORDINIS De BALNEO.

GEORGIUS REX.

GEORGIUS Dei Gratia *Magnæ Britanniæ, Galliæ & Hiberniæ* Rex, *Defenſor Fidei* &c. Omnibus, quibus hæc Statuta innoteſcent, Salutem. Cum Regii noſtri Prædeceſſores variis atque honorificis ducti rationibus ex occaſione diverſarum ſplendidarum & auguſtarum ſolemnitatum magna cum Pompa & Ceremoniis in Regiam ſuam eamque maſculam Progeniem, in Principes e Regio Sanguine prognatos, in diverſos ex Nobilibus &

cipal Officers, and other Perſons diſtinguiſhed by eminent Birth, and Merit, That Degree of Kinghthood, which from the Rite preparative to it, hath been denominated te Knighthood of the *Bath*; an Honour which moſt of Our Royal Predeceſſors have accepted in their own Perſons, with all the Forms thereunto appertaining, from the *Saxon* Ages, to the Coronation of the late King *Charles* the Second inclusive, who was himſelf inveſted therewith, during his Father's Reign: And whereas we being moved by all the like Conſiderations, and in Regard to the many laudable Precedents of Antiquity, and intending not only to re-eſtabliſh, and ſupport the ſaid Honour of Knighthood in its former Luſtre and Dignity, but to erect te ſame in to a regular Military Order, did, by our Royal Lettres Patents, bearing Date the Eighteenth Day of this Inſtant *May*, Inſtitute, Erect, and Create a Military Order of Knighthood, to be, and be called for ever hereafter, by the Name and Title of the Order of the *Bath*, whereof We, Our Heirs, and Succeſſors, Kings of this Realm for ever, shall be Sovereigns: And whereas we hafe ordained and appointed a Great Seal of the ſaid Order, having upon one Side the Repreſentation of Our Royal Perſon on Horſeback in Armour; the Shield *Azure* Three Imperial Crowns *Or*, the Arms uſually aſcribed to the Renowned King *Arthur*, with this Circumſcription, *Sigillum Honoratiſſimi Ordinis Militaris de Balneo;* and on the Reverſe the ſame Arms empaling Our Royal Arms: And

Miniſtris primariis, inque alios Viros vel genere vel meritis Illuſtres contulerint gradum illum Ordinis Militaris, qui ob ritum inauguralem denominatus eſt de *Balneo;* quem quidem Honorem plurimi Noſtrorum Regiorum Prædeceſſorum ipſi acceperunt omnibus cum Ceremoniis ad eum pertinentibus, a Seculis *Saxonicis* usq; ad coronationem Regis *CAROLI* Secundi incluſive, qui ipſe durante Patris Regno eo initiatus erat: Cumque ſimilibus moti Conſiderationibus, multaque laudabilia Antiquitatis exempla reſpicientes, intentio Noſtra fuerit, non tantum reſtaurandi memoratum Honorem Ordinis hujus Equeſtris, eique priorem ſplendorem & dignitatem reſtituendi, verum etiam eundem erigendi in Ordinem Militarem Regularem, hinc Regiis Noſtris Literis Patentibus editis die decimo octavo hujus menſis Maji, inſtituebamus, erigebamus & creabamus Ordinem Militarem Dignitatis Equeſtris, qui ſit & ab hinc ſemper vocetur nomine ac titulo Ordinis de *Balneo*, cujus Nos, Heredes Noſtri & Succeſſores, Reges hujus Regni, in omne ævum Abſoluti Domini erimus. Porro ordinavimus & deſignavimus magnum dicti Ordinis *Sigillum*, in altero latere imaginem gerens Perſonæ Noſtræ Regiæ, equo inſidentis, cum Armatura ſua, Scuto coloris *cærulei*, & tribus aureis coronis Regiis, quæ ſunt inſignia communiter celebratiſſimo Regi *Arthur* adſcripta, cum hac circumſcriptione: *Sigillum Honoratiſſimi Ordinis de Balneo;* in altero autem latere eadem Inſignia, Regia Noſtra Inſignia circum-

And whereas by Our ſaid Letters Patents, We did ordain, That the ſaid Order ſhall be governed by Statutes and Ordinances, and that the ſaid Statutes to be perpetually and inviolably obſerved within the ſaid Order, ſhall be eſtabliſhed, and ſealed by and with the ſaid Seal, as by the ſaid Letters Patents may appear. Now know ye, That in Purſuance of the ſaid Letters Patents, and by Virtue of our Prerogative Royal, We have made, ordained and eſtabliſhed, and by theſe Preſents, ſealed with the abovementioned Seal of the ſaid Order, this Twenty third Day of *May*, in the eleventh Year of our Reign, do make, ordain, and eſtabliſh, the following Statutes and Ordinances, to be perpetually and inviolably obſerved within the ſame Order, *viz.*

circumdantia: Tandem iisdem Literis Patentibus ordinabamus, ut memoratus Ordo gubernetur Statutis atque Ordinationibus, utque dicta Statuta, perpetuo atque inviolabiliter in hoc Ordine obſervanda ſancirentur & obſignarentur eodem Sigillo, uti ex memoratis Literis Patentibus apparebit. Sciatis igitur, quod conformiter his Literis Patentibus, & ex auctoritate Regiæ Noſtræ Prærogativæ præſcripſerimus, ordinaverimus & ſanxerimus, quodque hiſce præſentibus obſignatis ſupra memorato dicti Ordinis Sigillo, hoc die viceſimo tertio Maji, anno undecimo Regni Noſtri præſcribamus, ordinemus & ſanciamus ſequentia Statuta & ordinationes, ut perpetuo & inviolabiliter in eodem Ordine obſerventur. Scilicet,

FIRST, It is declared, ordained, and enjoined, That we, our Heirs, and Succeſſors, Kings of this Realm are, and for ever ſhall be, Sovereigns of this moſt honourable Order of the *Bath*; to whom doth, and ſhall appertain, the Reſolution, Reformation, Interpretation, and Determination of every Doubt, Obſcurity or Ambiguity, contained in any of the antient Ceremonials, or in any particular Article of theſe Our preſent Statutes, touching this moſt honourable Order, for maintaining the Dignity, and perpetual Succeſſion of it.

PRIMO, declaramus, ordinamus & injungimus, Nos, Heredes Noſtros, & Succeſſores, Reges hujus Regni, eſſe omneque in ævum fore abſolutos Dominos hujus Honoratiſſimi Ordinis de *Balneo*, ad quos pertinet & pertinebit enodatio, reformatio, interpretatio & determinatio omnis dubii, obſcuritatis & ambiguitatis, in antiquis ceremoniarum Regeſtis contentæ, ſive in quocunque ſpeciali articulo horum Noſtrorum præſentium Statutorum, huic Honoratiſſimo Ordini traditorum, ad Dignitatem ejusdemq; perpetuam Succeſſionem tuendam.

SECONDLY, That this Order ſhall conſiſt of the Sovereign, of a Prince of

SECUNDO, Hunc Ordinem conſtituent Rex, Princeps ex Regio Sang-

of the Royal Blood, of a Great Maſter, and of Thirty five other Companions, and that this Number ſhal never be augmented; But when any Stall ſhall become void, it ſhall be filled by the Nomination of another Perſon, to be elected Knight, to the End ſuch Succeſſion may be always regularly continued.

THIRDLY, It is hereby declared, That the Perſons to be admitted into this Order, ſhall be Gentlemen of Blood, bearing Coat Arms, and void of all Reproach, that is, They ſhall not be convicted of Hereſy againſt the Articles of the chriſtian Religion; not attainted of High Treaſon, without being firſt reſtored by a Pardon; neither ſhall they be ſuch, who out of Cowardice have fled from any Field of Battle; And in Caſe any Companion ſhall be found guilty of Reproach in any Inſtance of this Kind (which God forbid) He ſhall be Degraded at the next Chapter, his Eſcocheon ſhall be thrown out of his Stall, with all the uſuall Marcks of Infamy, and a Memorial thereof ſhall be entred in the Regiſter.

FOURTHLY, It is hereby declared, Our dear entirely beloved Grandſon Prince *William* ſhall be the firſt, and principal Companion, and ſhall be placed next unto the Sovereign within this moſt honourable Order: And ſince by Reaſon of the Tenderneſs of his Age, he is not able to bear the Fatigue of Bathing, and the Vigils attending it, or at preſent to apprehend ſufficiently the Import, and Obligation of an

uine prognatus, Magnus Magiſter, & triginta quinque membra alia, qui quidem numerus nunquam augendus; Verum quandocunque membrum aliquod deceſſerit, alius in ejus locum ſufficietur & Eques eligetur, quo hæc Succeſſio ſemper regulariter continuetur.

TERTIO, Hiſce declaramus, ut omnes Socii, in hunc Ordinem admittendi, ex Generoſa Stirpe prognati ſint, geſtantes inſignia, & ab omni infamia liberi, id eſt, non debent convicti eſſe hæreſeos contra articulos Religionis Chriſtianæ, neque perduellionis rei, niſi venia criminis accepta reſtaurati ſint; Neque tales erunt, qui ob timiditatem ex prœlio aliquo aufugerint; Adeoque ſi membrum aliquod inveniretur, quod quadam hujus generis infamia notandum ſit, (quod Deus prohibeat) de gradu ſuo in proximo Ordinis Capitulo dejicietur, inſigne ejus ex ipſius exedra exturbabitur, omnibus infamiæ ſignis ſolitis, & ejus rei monimentum Regiſtro inſeretur.

QUARTO, Hiſce declaramus, ut Noſter Dilectiſſimus Nepos, Princeps WILHELMUS, Socios ceteros loco & dignitate antecedat, atque in Honoratiſſimo hoc Ordine proxime poſt Regem ſequatur: Cum autem ob teneram ætatem moleſtias Balnei & Vigiliarum ſubſequentium ſuſtinere non valeat, neque modo ſufficienter apprehendere poſſit ſenſum & obligationem jurisjurandi; Nos, imitantes exempla Noſtro-

an Oath; We, following the Precedents of Our Royal Predeceſſors in the like Caſes, do hereby diſpenſe with him in theſe, and all other Particulars, where a Diſpenſation may be required; declaring it to be Our Royal Pleaſure, That our conferring the Degree of Knighthood upon him by the Sword of State, ſhall be ſufficient to inveſt him fully, and effectually with this Order, and that he ſhall enjoy the ſame, with the Name, Title, Dignity, and Privileges belonging to a Knight of the *Bath*, in as large, and ample Manner, as if he had perſonally performed all the Solemnities, according to the antient Formularies

Noſtrorum Regiorum Prædeceſſorum in ſimilibus occaſionibus, immunem ipſum declaramus ab hiſce & omnibus aliis particularibus ceremoniis, à quibus immunitas poteſt requiri, indicantes, tale Regium Noſtrum Beneplacitum eſſe, ut pro ſufficienti, plena & efficaci hujus Dignitatis Equeſtris in ipſum Collatione habeatur, ſi in hunc Ordinem Honorifico Gladii Imperatorii ictu recipiatur. Adeoque fruetur eodem Ordine, ſimul cum Nomine, Titulo, Dignitate & Privilegiis ad *Equitem* de *Balneo* pertinentibus, ſenſu æque lato & amplo, ac ſi omnes Solemnitates juxta antiquam formam ipſe obſervaſſet.

Fifthly, In Conſideration of the great Merit, Vertue, Prudence, Generoſity, Valour, and Loyalty, whereby the Perſons, whoſe Names here follow, have ſingularly and ſeverally diſtinguiſhed themſelves, We declare it to be Our Royal Pleaſure, to advance them to be Companions of this Order as ſoon as they, and each of them have received this Knigthood, according to the antient laudable Rites, or ſhall be releaſed from the Obſervance of ſuch Rites, or any Part of them, by Virtute of eſpecial Diſpenſations, that is to ſay, Our Right Truſty and Right entirely beloved Couſins, the Duke of *Richmond*, an the Duke of *Manchester*, Our Right Truſty and Right well-beloved Couſins, *Charles Beauclair* Earl of *Burford*, The Earls of *Leiceſter*, *Albemarle*, *Deloraine*, *Halifax*, *Suſſex*, and *Pomfret*; Our Right Truſty and well-beloved Couſin Lord *Naſſaw Pawlet*, Our Right Truſty and well-

Quinto, Nos ex conſideratione magnorum Meritorum, Virtutis, Prudentiæ, Abſtinentiæ, Munificentiæ, Fortitudinis & Fidelitatis, quibus Viri, quorum nomina hic ſequntur, ſingulari & diverſo modo eminent, indicamus, Regium Noſtrum Beneplacitum eſſe, ipſos in membra hujus ordinis cooptandi, ſimul ac iidem & unuſquisque eorum Dignitatem hanc Equeſtrem juxta antiquos laudabiles ritus acceperit, niſi ex ſpeciali immunitate liber ſit declaratus ab obſervatione talium rituum vel in totum vel ex paret. Scilicet perfideles & dilectiſſimi Noſtri Conſanguinei, Dux de *Richmond* & Dux de *Mancheſter*, perfideles & valde dilecti Conſanguinei Noſtri *Carolus Beauclair*, comes de *Burford*, Comites de *Leiceſter*, *Albemarle*, *Deloraine*, *Halifax*, *Suſſex*, & *Pomfret*; Perfidelis Noſter & perdilectus Conſanguineus, (a) Dominus *Naſſaw Pawlet*; Perfidelis Noſter

(a) Stylo loquimur *Spelmanni* & *Seldeni*, qui vocabulum LORD voce DOMINI reddere ſolent.

well-beloved Couſin, and Councellor *George* Viſcount *Torrington*, Our Right Truſty and well-beloved the Lords *Malpas*, *Glenorchy*, *Delawar*, *Clinton*, and *Walpole*, Our Right Truſty and well-beloved Councellor, *Spencer Compton* Eſq; Our Right Truſty and well-beloved, *William Stanhope*, *Coniers Darcy*, and *Thomas Lumley Sanderſon* Eſqrs, Our Right Truſty and well-beloved Councellors, *Paul Methuen* Eſq; *Robert Walpole* Eſq; Sir *Robert Sutton*, and *Charles Wills* Eſq; Our Truſty and well-beloved Sir *John Hobart*, Sir *William Gage*, *Robert Clifton*, *Michael Newton*, *William Yonge*, *Thomas Watſon Wentworth*, *John Monſon*, *William Morgan*, and *Thomas Coke* Eſqrs, Our Right Truſty, and Right well-beloved Couſin the Earl of *Inchequeen*, and Our Right Truſty, and wellbeloved Couſin Viſcount *Tyrrconnel;* Provided, that by the Manner according to which theſe Perſons are here named, no other Precedency ſhall be claimed, than within the Chapters, Conventions, Stalls, Proceſſions, and Ceremonies of this Order; And that in Caſe any Perſon, or Perſons thus appointed by Us, ſhall omit to qualify himſelf, or themſelves by the Reception of this Knighthood, or ſhall neglect to be Inſtalled, according to the Methods herein after-mentioned, beyond the Term of ſix Months from the Date of theſe Statutes, That this our Nomination ſhall then be void as to ſuch Perſon, or Perſons; And it ſhall be lawful for Us to elect another Perſon, or Perſons, to ſupply every Vacancy, that may happen on ſuch Account.

& perdilectus Conſanguineus ac Conſiliarius *Georgius*, Vicecomes *Torrington*; Perfideles Noſtri & Perdilecti Domini, *Malpas*, *Glenorchy*, *Delawar*, *Clinton* & *Walpole;* Perfidelis Noſter & Perdilectus Conſiliarius *Spencerus Compton*, Armiger; Perfideles Noſtri & Perdilecti *Wilhelmus Stanhope*, *Coniers Darcy* & *Thomas Lumlejus Sanderſon* Armigeri; Perfideles Noſtri & Perdilecti Conſiliarii *Paulus Methuen*, Armiger; *Robertus Walpole*, Armiger; *Robertus Sutton* Eques Baronettus; & *Carolus Wills* Armiger; Perfideles Noſtri & Perdilecti *Johannes Hobart*, *Johannes Gage*, Equites Baronetti; *Robertus Clifton*, *Michael Newton*, *Wilhelmus Yonge*, *Thomas Watſon Wentworth*, *Johannes Monſon*, *Wilhelmus Morgan* & *Thomas Coke*, Armigeri; Perfidelis Noſter & valde dilectus, *comes* de *Inchequeen*, & Perfidelis Noſter ac Perdilectus Conſanguineus Vicecomes *Tyrrconnell;* Hi Viri autem pro ſerie, juxta quam hic nominati ſunt, ſuperiorem locum, quem in ea obtinent, nullibi alias ſibi arrogabunt, niſi in Capitulis, Congregationibus, Sedibus, Proceſſionibus & Ceremoniis hujus Ordinis. Et, ſi perſona quædam aut perſonæ, ſic deſignatæ a NOBIS, omittant, quo minus ſe ipſum vel ſe ipſos aptos reddant ad receptionem hujus Dignitatis Equeſtris, aut negligant Initiationem ſecundum methodum in Statutis hiſce memorandam ultra terminum ſex menſium, à die horum Statutorum numerandum, tunc Nominatio Noſtra reſpectu talis Perſonæ aut Perſonarum erit vana, & licebit NOBIS aliam Perſonam aut Perſonas eligere, ad ſupplendum omnem locum, hac ratione vacuum.

SIXTHLY

SEXTO,

SIXTHLY, Since the important, weighty, and urgend Affairs of State and Government, will ſometimes neceſſarily require the immediate Direction of the Sovereign, ſo that he may not conveniently give all the Attention requiſite for the Benefit of this Order; We have therefore ordained, and conſtitudet a Great Maſter of this Fraternity, who under the Sovereign, and in his Abſence, ſhall ſupply the Sovereign's Place, and take eſpecial Care, That theſe Statutes, and the antient Rituals belonging to this Knighthood be obſerved with the greateſt Exactneſs; and he ſhall do, and perform whatever elſe ſhall be meet, and commodious for the Dignity thereof, And have nominated, conſtituted, and appointed Our Right Truſty, and Right entirely beloved Couſin *John* Duke of *Montagu* to be the firſt Great Maſter of this Order, and we do hereby diſpenſe with his Performance of the Rites of Bathing, and Vigils, and other preparative Ceremonies, which by the Conſtitution of this Order he would be obliged to; Declaring it to be Our Royal Pleaſure, That we having conferred the Honour of Knighthood on him formerly with the Sword of State, his receiving the Symbol of the Knighthood of the *Bath*, with the Ribbon of the ſaid Order from Our Royal Hands, and his taking the Oath in our Preſence, ſhall be ſufficient to inveſt him fully, and effectually with the Knighthood of this Order, and in the Office of Great Maſter thereof, giving to him the full Power, and Authority before-mentioned;

SEXTO, Cum permagna, ampliſſima & operoſa Imperii ac Regiminis negotia neceſſario interdum immediatam Regis directionem requirant, ut haud facile omnem attentionem, quam hujus Ordinis commoda expoſcunt, impendere poſſit; Hinc Nos ordinavimus & conſtituimus Magnum hujus Fraternitatis Magiſtrum, qui ſub Rege eoque abſente ejus locum ſuppleret, & ſingularem curam gereret, ut hæc Statuta & autiqui ritus ad hanc Dignitatem Equeſtrem pertinentes exquiſitiſſime colerentur. Idem aget & exſequetur quodcunque alias ad honorem ejus tuendum aptum & congruum judicabit. Et quidem nominavimus, conſtituimus & deſignavimus Noſtrum Perfidelem & Dilectiſſimum, JOHANNEM Ducem de MONTAGU, ut primus ſit Magnus hujus Ordinis Magiſter, ſimulque hiſce immunem ipſum declaramus a celebratione rituum Balnei & vigiliarum, aliarumque Ceremoniarum præparatoriarum, ad quam ex Conſtitutione hujus Ordinis obſtrictus eſſet, indicantes, id Regium Noſtrum beneplacitum eſſe, ut, cum olim honorifico gladii Imperatorii ictu Dignitatem Equeſtrem in ipſum contulerimus, recipiendo ex Regiis Noſtris manibus Symbolum *Equitis* de *Balneo* cum tænia hujus Ordinis, & juramento, præſentibus Nobis, fidem ſuam adſtringendo, hoc modo ſufficienter, plene & efficaciter initietur, tum Dignitate Equeſtri hujus Ordinis, tum Officio Magni ejusdem Magiſtri, concedentes ipſi plenam Poteſtatem & Auctoritatem modo memoratam; Adeoque hiſce

omni

ned; And we do hereby enjoin all the Companions to render him due Service, ſo fat as he ſhall act within this Order, and according to the Tenour of theſe Statutes: And ſince it may be found neceſſary by Reaſon of unforeſeen Accidents, to diſpenſe with ſome of the Particulars in the ancient Ceremonials of it; We do hereby impower, and authorize the Great Maſter to grant ſuch Diſpenſations, under the above-mentioned Seal of this Order; which Seal ſhall for the future remain in the Cuſtody of the Great Maſter for the Time being, with a Power veſted in him to affix the ſame to all Summons, Significations of Elections, Commiſſions, Mandates, Certificates, and Tranſcripts of theſe Statutes, to be delivered unto each Perſon elected, and to all other Inſtruments whatſoever relating to this Oder.

omnibus Membris injungimur, ut debito cultu ipſum proſequantur, in quantum hunc Ordinem concernentia & juxta præſcripta in his Statutis aget: Cumque improviſi caſus forte efflagitare poſſint, ut nonnullæ ſpeciales circumſtantiæ in antiquis Ceremoniis omittantur; Nos hiſce Magnum Magiſtrum ea induimus poteſtate & auctoritate, ut immunitates tales ſupra memorato hujus Ordinis Sigillo obſignatas largiri poſſit, quod quidem Sigillum in poſterum Magnus Magiſter durante munere ejus cuſtodiet, ſimulque ſolus poteſtatem habebit, illud affigendi omnibus Citationibus, Electionum ſignificationibus, Commiſſionibus, Mandatis, Libellis & Apographis horum Statuorum, cuique Membro electo diſtribuendorum, omnibusque aliis hunc Ordinem reſpicientibus Inſtrumentis, cujuscunq; ſint nominis.

SEVENTLY, That all Perſons herein nominated to be Companions (ſaving Our ſaid Grandſon, with whom we have diſpenſed) and all other Perſons, that may hereafter be elected into this Order, ſhall have Signification of ſuch their Election made unto them by the Great Maſter, and ſhall alſo upon the Summons of the Great Maſter for their Creation into the ſaid Knighthood, as alſo for their Inſtallation, repair to the Prince's Chamber, within the Palace of *Weſtminſter*, (which is hereby declared to be the Chapter-Room of this Order) at the Time, or Times to be appointed in the ſaid Summons; Each of them to be attended by two Eſquires of Honour, Gent-

SEPTIMO, Omnes Perſonæ hic nominatæ, ut eſſent Socii, (excepto dicto Nepote Noſtro) quem immunem declaravimus, cunctæque Perſonæ aliæ, in poſterum in hunc Ordinem cooptandæ ſignificatione talis Electionis ſuæ a Magno Magiſtro accepta, ut & Citationibus Magni Magiſtri evocatæ, ut crearentur & ornarentur dicta Dignitate Equeſtri, ad Principis Conclave intra Palatium *Weſtmonaſterienſe* ſe conferent, (quod hiſce ſimul locus Capituli hujus Ordinis conſtituitur) tempore aut temporibus in dictis Citationibus præfigendis; Unamquamque talem Perſonam comitabuntur duo Armigeri Honorati ex generoſa ſtirpe oriundi, & geſtantes inſignia

Gentlemen of Blood, and bearing Coat Arms, (to be approved by the Great Maſter,) who ſhall be worſhipfully received, at the Door of that Chamber, by the King of Arms, and the Gentleman-Uſher of this Order; and the Perſon thus elected ſhall enter into that Chamber, with the Eſquires, who being experienced in Matters of Chivalry, are to inſtruct him in the Nature, Dignity, and Duties of this military Order, and to take diligent Care, That all the Ceremonies thereof, (which hafe their allegorical Significations) ſhall be powerfully recommended, and punctually obſerved; And ſuch Eſquires, who from this Service, have been uſually denominated Eſquires Governours, ſhall not permit the elected to be ſeen abroad, during the Evening of his firſt Entry, but ſhall ſend for the proper Barber to make ready a Bathing-Veſſel, handſomely lined on the Inſide, and Outſide with Linnen, having croſs Hoops over it, covered with Tapeſtry, for Defence againſt the cold Air of the Night, and a Blanket ſhall be ſpread on the Floor by the Side of the Bathing-Veſſell, Then the Beard of the Elected being ſhaven, and his Hair cut, the Eſquires ſhall acquaint the Sovereign, or Great Maſter; That it being the Time of Evenſong, the Elected is prepared for the *Bath*; Whereupon ſome of the moſt ſage, and experienced Knights, ſhall be ſent to inform the Elected, and to counſell and direct him in the Order and Feats of Chivalry; which Knights being preceded by ſeveral Eſquires of the Sovereign's Houſehold, making

inſignia (a Magno Magiſtro approbandi) qui juxta portam hujus conclavis ab Armorum Rege, & generoſo hujus Ordinis Apparitore perhonorifice recipientur. Tunc Vir ſic Electus intrabit in conclave illud cum Armigeris, qui in rebus ad Dignitatem Equeſtrem pertinentibus exercitati inſtruent ipſum de Natura, Dignitate & Officiis Ordinis hujus Militaris, & diligenter curabunt, ut omnes Ceremoniæ ejus (quæ allegoricam ſignificationem habent,) commendentur graviter & exacte obſerventur; Et Armigeri tales qui hujus officii cauſa communiter Armigeri Gubernatores appellati ſunt, non permittent, Electum durante veſpera, primum ejus introitum ſequente, foras conſpici, ſed ad peculiarem *Tonſorem* mittent, ut Lavacrum præparet, eleganter linteis cum in interiori tum in exteriori parte obductum, quod tranſverſis etiam orbibus *aulæo* tectis, quo frigidior noctis aër arceatur, ſuperius inſtructum erit, & ſtragulum in pavimento ad lavacri latus extendatur, tunc barba Electi raſa & cæſarie præciſa Armigeri Regem aut Magnum Magiſtrum certiorem facient, quod tempore ad veſpertinas preces fundendas inſtante Electus ad *Balneum* præparatus ſit. Quo facto quidam ex prudentiſſimis & maxime exercitatis Equitibus delegandi ad inſtruendum Electum, ad conſulendum ipſi, eumque dirigendum in ordine & expeditionibus militiæ equeſtris: Qui Equites, præeuntibus pluribus Armigeris ex Domeſticis Regis, omnes uſitatos lætandi geſtus imitantibus,

making all the uſual Sings of rejoicing, and having the Minſtrels playing on ſeveral Inſtruments before them, ſhall forthwith repair to the Door of the Prince's Chamber, while the Eſquires Governours, upon hearing the Muſick ſhall undreſs the Elected, and put him into the Bath, and the muſical Inſtruments then ceaſing to play, theſe grave Kinghts entring into the Chamber without any Noiſe, ſhall ſeverally, one after the other, kneeling near the Bathing-Veſſel, with a ſoft Voice, inſtruct the Elected in the Nature and Courſe of the *Bath*, and put him in Mind, that for ever hereafter, he ought to keep his Body, and Mind pure, and undefiled; And thereupon the Knights ſhall each of them caſt ſome of the water of the *Bath* upon the Shoulders of the Elected, and then retire, while the Eſquires Governours ſhall take the Elected out of the *Bath*, and conduct him to his Palled-Bed, which is to be plain, and without Curtains, and as ſoon as his Body is dry, they ſhall clothe him very warm, in Conſideration, that he is to watch that wohle Night; And therefore they ſhall then array him in a Robe of Ruſſet, having long Sleeves reaching down to the Ground, and tyed about the Middle with a Cordon of aſh-coloured, and ruſſet Silk, with a Ruſſot Hood like to an Hermit, having a white Napkin hanging to the Cordon, or Girdle; And the Barber having removed the Bathing-Veſſel, the experienced knigths ſhall again enter, and from thence conduct the Elected to the Chappel of King *Henry* the Seventh, (wherein it is our Pleaſure,

& fidicinibus, variis inſtrumentis muſicis ludentibus, præmiſſis, illico ad januam Conclavis Principis ſe conferent, dum Armigeri Gubernatores, audientes muſicam, Electo veſtes exuent, & in Balneum immittent, atque Inſtrumentis muſicis tunc ſilentibus hi Equites cubiculum absque ullo ſtrepitu intrantes, quisque unus poſt alium in genua prope Lavacrum procidentes, leni voce Electum inſtruent de natura & Officiis Balnei, admonebuntque, ut in poſterum ſemper purum & impollutum corpus & animum ſervare debeat. Quibus peractis, quisque Equitum particulam aquæ balnearis in humeros Electi injicient, tuncqne ſe ſubducent, dum Armigeri Gubernatores Electum ex *Balneo* recipient, & ad ſtratum ſuum deducent, quod ſimplex eſſe debet & absque *velis*, ſimul ac vero corpus erit *abſterſum*, amictu illud tegent, calorem inducente, quoniam per integram illam noctem excubare debebit; Et propterea induent ipſum tunica fuſca, manicis longis ad terram usqne demiſſis inſtructa, & circa mediam partem cingulo ſerico coloris cineracei & fuſci obſtricta, addent etiam caputium ſuſcum, Eremitæ cucullo ſimile & mantelium album cingulo annexum; Poſtea autem quam *Tonſor* lavacrum ſubmovit, Equites exercitati iterum couclave introibunt, & Electum inde ad Sacellum Regis Henrici Septimi (ubi pro Noſtro beneplacito ceremoniæ religioſæ

ſure, that the religious Ceremonies relating to this Order ſhall for the future be conſtantly performed,) and they being there entred, preceded by all the Eſquires, making Rejoiceings, and the Minſtrels playing before them, during which Time, Wine and Spices ſhall be laid ready for theſe Knights, the Elected and the Eſquires Governours; And the Elected having returned Thanks to theſe Knights, for the great Favours of their Aſſiſtance, the Eſquires Governours ſhall ſhut the Chappel Door, permitting none to ſtay therein, ſave the Elected, One of the Prebendaries of the Church of *Weſtminſter* to officiate, the Chandler to take Care of the Lights, and the Verger of the Church; where the Elected ſhall perform his Vigils, during the whole Night, in Oriſons and Prayers, to Almighty God, having a Taper burning before him, held by one of his Eſquires Governours, who at the reading of the Goſpel ſhall deliver it into the Hands of the Elected, which being read, he ſhall redeliver it to one of his Eſquires Governours, who ſhall hold it before him during the Reſidue of divine Service; and when the Day breaks, and the Elected hath heard Matins, or Morning Prayer, the Eſquires Governours ſhall reconduct him to the Prince's Chamber, and lay him in Bed, and caſt over him a Coverlet of Gold, lined with Carde; and when it is a proper Time, theſe Eſquires ſhall acquaint the Sovereign, or Great Maſter that the Elected will be ready to riſe from his Bed, who ſhall again command the experienced Knights,

gioſæ ad hunc Ordinem pertinentes in poſterum conſtanter exercendæ) deducent, quod cum intraverunt, præcedentibus omnibus Armigeris geſtientibus & fidicinibus ludentibus præmiſſis, dum interea vinum & aromata his Equitibus, Electo & Armigeris Gubernatoribus apponentur, & poſtquam Electus gratias egerit Equitibus illis pro favore magno auxilii eorum, Armigeri Gubernatores Sacelli portam claudent, non permittentes, quemquam illic remanere præter Electum, unum ex Præbendariis Eccleſiæ *Weſtmonaſterienſis*, ad celebrandum cultum *divinum*, candelarum, cuſtodem, qui curam earum gerat, & famulum templi. Hic Electus excubias ſuas aget, per totam noctem orans, & preces ad Deum Omnipotentem fundens, alter autem Armigerorum Gubernatorum cereum ardentem manu præferet, quem in lectione Evangelii in manus Electi tradet, quo lecto illum uni ex Armigeris ſuis Gubernatoribus reddet, qui eum durante reliquo cultu divino geſtabit. Et die oriente, cumque Electus preces matutinas audiverit, Armigeri Gubernatores ipſum ad Conclave Principis reducent, curantes, ut in lectum ſe recipiat, & velamento aureo, lana ſubditicia obducto, tegatur; Et tempore opportuno hi Armigeri Regem aut Magnum Magiſtrum certiorem facient, Electum, paratum fore ad ſurgendum de lecto, qui rurſus Equitibus exercitatis injunget, ut ſe ſupra memorato modo

Knights, preceded as before, to repair to the Prince's Chamber; And the Elected being awakened by the Muſick, and the Eſquires Governours having provided every Thing in Readineſs, the experienced Knights at their Entry ſhall wiſh the Elected a good Morning, acquainting him, that it is a convenient Time to riſe, whereupon the Eſquires Governours taking him by the Arm, the moſt antient of theſe Knights ſhall preſent to him his Shirt, the next his Breeches, the third his Doublet, another the Surcoat of red Tartarin, lined and edged with white Scarcenet, two others ſhall take him out of his Bed, two others ſhall put on his Boots in Token of the Beginning of his Warfare, another ſhall gird him with his white Girdle without any Ornament, another ſhall combe his Head, another ſhall deliver him his Coif, or Bonnet, and laſtly, another ſhall put upon him the Mantle of this Order, being of the ſame Silk, and Colour of the Surcoat, lined and edged in like Manner, which ſhall be tied, and made faſt about the Neck with a Lace of white Silk, having a Pair of white Gloves hanging at the End thereof; and on the left Shoulder of the ſaid Mantle ſhall be the Enſign of this Order, That is, Three Imperial Growns *Or*, ſurrounded with the Motto of the Order upon a Circle *Gules*, with a Glory, or Rays iſſuing from the Center, as the ſame is delineated in the Margin,

ad Conclave Principis conferant; Electo autem muſica e ſomno excitato & Armigeris Gubernatoribus omnia in promptu habentibus, Equites exercitati in introitu ſuo fauſtum Electo diem apprecabuntur, admonentes, quod tempus conveniens ſurgendi inſtet, quo facto Armigeri Gubernatores brachium ejus prehendent, Senior horum Equitum offeret ipſi induſium, proximus Femoralia, tertius Togam interiorem, alius Tunicam amplam, confectam ex ſerico rubro, Tartarin vocato, obductamq; & fimbriatam ſerico albo, Scarcenet appellato, duo alii ex cubili ſuo eum ſument, duo alii Caligis ipſum induent, in ſignum initii militiæ ejus, alius cinget ipſum Cingulo albo, omnique ornamento deſtituto, alius caput ejus pectet, alius porriget ipſi Tiaram ſive Galerum, tandemque alius injiciet ipſi Pallium hujus Ordinis, ejusdem ſerici, & coloris cum tunica ampla, obductumque & fimbriatum eodem modo, quod cervici circumdabitur Faſcia ſerica coloris albi, duabus Chirothecis albis extremitati ejus appendentibus; Et humero ſiniſtro dicti Pallii affixum erit Inſigne

hujus Ordinis, nimirum *tres Coronæ Regiæ in area aurea*, Emblemate hujus Ordinis inſcripto *circulo coloris rubri*, ſplendore ſeu radiis ex centro ſe extendentibus, prout illud delineatum eſt in margine, uti & eidem humero dicti

Margin, And on the ſame Shoulder of the ſaid Mantle, the Lace of withe Silk antiently worn by the ſaid Knights: The Elected being thus habited, in Caſe there ſhall be a Cavalcade, it is to be performed according to the Tenour of the antient Rituals, otherwiſe a Proceſſion ſhall be made on Foot to the Preſence of the Sovereign, or to the Place, where the Great Maſter ſhall appoint, in the following Manner, that is, The Miniſtrels ſhall play on their ſeveral Inſtruments, the Eſquires of the Sovereign's Houſehold ſhall follow them, Then the Meſſenger of the Order, and after him the Eſquires of the Order, being apparelled in Surcoats of white Silk, lined and edged with red, having Hoods of the ſame thereto affixed, and on the right Shoulder of their Surcoats, the plain Eſcocheon of the Order, *Azure* Three Imperial Crowms *Or;* Next a young Eſquire, a Gentleman of Blood, and Coat Arms in the like Surcoat, who being uncovered ſhall carry the Sword of the Elected, by the Point, in a Scabbard of white Leather, the Pummel and Croſs Bar-Hilts being gilded, and his Belt without any Embelliſhments; at the Croſs Hilts of the Sword ſhall hang the Spurs, with wihte Leathers; And then ſhall follow the Elected himſelf, ſupported between his two Eſquires Governours, who being introduced with due Reverence to the Preſence of the Sovereign, or Great Maſter, the King of Arms of this Order there attending, ſhall take the Spurs, and deliver them with the moſt humble, and

dicti Pallii affigetur Funiculus ſericus, coloris albi, quo dicti Equites antiquitus uſi: Electo ſic veſtito, ſi iter ſolemne equis inſtituendum ſit, illud perficitur ſecundum tenorem vetuſtorum rituum, alias in proceſſione pedeſtri in conſpectum Regis, vel ad locum a Magno Magiſtro deſignatum ibunt ſequenti modo: Fidicines ludent in diverſis inſtrumentis ſuis, quos ſequentur Armigeri ex Domeſticis Regis, deinde Tabellarius ibit, & poſt ipſum Armigeri hujus Ordinis, induti tunicis amplis ſericis coloris albi, obductis & fimbriatis ſerico rubro, quibus affixa erunt caputia eodem modo confecta, & humero dextro harum tunicarum adnectetur planum hujus Ordinis Inſigne in area cærula, ſcilicet tres coronæ Regiæ coloris aurei; proximus erit Armiger Juvenis ex generoſa ſtirpe oriundus & Inſigne in ſimili tunica geſtans, qui nudato capite Gladium Electi portabit, prehenſum mucrone, atque opertum vagina ex corio albo, globulo & capulo cancellato inauratis, & baltheum ejus omni ornamento deſtitutum, ex cancellis autem manubrii gladii calcaria cum coriis albis pendebunt; Tandem ſequetur Electus ipſe, ſuſtentatus a duobus ſuis Armigeris Gubernatoribus; quibus debita reverentia in conſpectum Regis vel Magni Magiſtri introductis, Rex Armorum hujus Ordinis illic præſens calcaria accipiet, eademque Regi, aut eo abſente, Magno Magi-

and ſedulous Expreſſions of Duty, to the Sovereign, or in his Abſence to the Great Maſter, who ſhall command the eldeſt Knight, or moſt noble Perſon there preſent, to put one Spur upon the right Heel of the Elected; which Office he is to perform by kneeling down upon one of his Knees, and putting the right Leg of the Elected upon his other Knee, and having faſtned the Spur, and the other Spur being in like Manner put upon his left Heel by another Knight, or by ſome other noble Perſon, in like Manner; The Sovereign, or Great Maſter, after he haht received the Sword from the ſaid King of Arms, ſhall buckle it over the Body of the Elected, and then ſhall give him the Accollade, or Dubbing, and kiſs him; And then ſhall put the red Ribbon, having the golden Badge of this Order thereto affixed, over the Head of the Knight, in ſuch Manner, as the Badge may ang hon his left Side.

ſtro humillimis & frequentiſſimis officii ſui additis ſignificationibus tradet, qui injunget Seniori Equiti ſeu nobiliſſimæ Perſonæ, illic præſenti, ut alterum Calcar pedi dextro Electi adaptet, quod Officium præſtabit in alterum genu procidendo, & pedem dextrum Electi alteri genu imponendo; Poſtquam autem calcar alligavit, & altero calcare ſimili modo ab Equite alio ſive nobili quadam Perſona ſiniſtro pedi appoſito, Rex vel Magnus Magiſter, Enſem a dicto Armorum Rege receptum ſupra Electi corpus fibula colligabit, tuncque Equitem eum creabit atque oſculo excipiet; quo facto, capiti Equitis tæniam rubram ſuperinjiciet, cui Inſigne aureum hujus Ordinis affixum erit, & tali quidem modo, ut inſigne in ſiniſtro latere pendeat.

EIGHTHLY, Theſe Ceremonies being performed, or elſe a Diſpenſation granted for the Non-obſervance of them, or of any Rart of them, (which Diſpenſation it ſhall always be in the Power of the Sovereign, or Great Maſter to grant under the Seal of the Order,) All the Perſons named in the fifth Article of theſe Statutes, ſhall reſpectively be Inſtalled in the Chappel of King *Henry* VII, in the following Manner; That is to ſay, Every one of them appearing in the Chapter-Room, wearing his Mantle, Ribbond, Surcoat, Sword, and having his Spurs on, There ſhall be a Proceſſion made from thence

OCTAVO, His Ceremoniis peractis, aut Diſpenſatione, pro libero earum vel in totum vel ex parte neglectu, accepta (quales Diſpenſationes ſub Sigillo Ordinis concedendi ſemper in Poteſtate Regis aut Magni Magiſtri poſitum erit) omnes Viri, quinti horum Statutorum Articulo nominati, in Capella Regis HENRICI VII, reſpective ſequenti modo inaugurabuntur: Scilicet, omnibus in Capitulo hujus Ordinis congregatis, indutisque Pallio, Tænia, Tunica ampla, Gladio & Calcaribus, inde Proceſſio fiet ad dictam Capellam, in qua

thence, to the ſaid Chappel, in which Proceſſion, all the Menail Servants in the Sovereing's Houſehold, who by Grant, or Preſcription, can claim Fees upon the Creation of any Knights of the *Bath*, ſhall be ranged, two and two, according to their regular Precedencies, Then te Meſſenger of the Order, then the young Eſquires in their Surcoats, two and two, thoſe of the junior Knights going foremoſt, then the Eſquires Governours in their Surcoats four in Breaſt, in like Manner; But in Caſe the young Eſquire, or Eſquires Governours of the Knights in the oppoſite Stalls, or either of them be abſent, Then the young Eſquire, or Eſquires Governours preſent, ſhall go by him, or themſelves: After them the Prebendaries of the Church of *Weſtminſter* in their Mantles, two and two, the Juniors going firſt, being followed by the Purſivants, Heralds, and Provincial Kings of Arms in their Tabarts, And then the Knights, that are to be Companions in the full Robes of the Order above recited, each of them carrying in his Hand a white Hat, adornet with a ſtanding Plume of white Feathers, proceeding with his Fellow in the oppoſite Stall; But if ſuch Fellow ſhall be abſent, the Knght preſent to go ſeparate by himſelf, He or they who are to be placed in the loweſt Stalls ſtill going foremoſt, being followed by the Regiſter of the Order, having the Secretary of the Order on his right, and the Gentleman-Uſher on his left Hand; Then Our *Garter* Principal King of Arms, inveſted with his Tabart, Collar, and Eſcocheon only, having

qua Proceſſione cuncti Servi domeſtici Aulæ Regis, qui vel conceſſione, vel Præſcriptione ſportulas ex creatione Equitum de Balneo ſibi arrogare poſſunt, bini pro vario, qnem occupant, gradu diſponentur. Tunc Tabellarius Ordinis, poſt eum autem Armigeri juvenes in tunicis ſuis amplis ſequentur bini, ita ut juniores præcedant, deinde Armigeri Gubernatores in tunicis ſuis amplis ibunt quaterni; Verum ſi Armiger juvenis aut Armigeri Gubernatores Equitum in ſedilibus quæ ex adverſo erunt, aut aliquis eorum abſit, tunc Armiger Juvenis aut Armigeri Gubernatores præſentes ſolus vel ſoli incedent: Poſt illos Præbendarii Templi *Weſtmonaſterienſis*, veſtiti palliis ſuis, bini, ita ut Juniores anteeant, quos ſequentur Apparitores, Caduceatores, & Provinciales Reges Armorum cum paludamentis ſuis; Et tunc venient Equites conſecrandi, integro Ordinis amictu, ſupra deſcripto, inſignes, ita ut quisque eorum pileum album pluma erecta pennarum candidarum adornatum manu teneat, & ſocium ſuum in ſede oppoſita Comitem habeat; Si vero talis Socius abſens eſſet, Eques præſens ſolus ibit, ita ut ipſe vel illi, qui infimas ſedes occupant, ſemper primi eant; ſequentur autem Regiſtrator Ordinis cum Secretario Ordinis ad dextram, & Apparitore ad ſiniſtram manum; Dein Principalis Noſter *Rex Armorum Ordinis* de *Periſcelide*, veſtitus paludamento ſuo, collari & Scuto ſuo procedet, cui Comites adjungen-

having on his right Hand the Genealogiſt of this Order in his Habit, and with the Enſings of this Order and on his Left *Bath* King of Arms in his proper Robe, and with his Badge; Then the Dean of this Order in his Mantle, and with his Cognizance, carrying in his Hand the Oath, and Admonition, fairly written on Vellum, being followed by the Great Maſter alone; And after him ſhall go Our dear entirely beloved Grandſon Prince *William*, both of them with all the Habits, and Enſings of the Order, and covered with their white Hats; And laſtly, this Proceſſion ſhall terminate in the Perſon of the Sovereign, if he ſhould be preſent, attended with his neceſſary Retinue, having the Sword of State carried before him, and his Train ſupported; And this Form is enjoined to be the conſtant Method of Procedure upon all future Inſtallations into this Order; Excepting only, that in all ſubſequent ones, the Knights, who have been actually Inſtalled, ſhall proceed covered with their white Hats; and that the Eſquires of the Companions deceaſed ſhall be placed according to the Directions inſerted in the Tenth Article. Theſe Knights being all entred into the Chapel, ſhall ſtand before their ſeveral Stalls til the Sovereign (if preſent) hath ſeated himſelf; then the Prince of the Blood, then the Great Maſter, and afterwards every Knight, either ſingle, or at the ſame time with his Fellow, according to the Heighth of their Stalls: And having thus taken their reſpective Stalls, the Dean of the Order ſhall repair to his Chair, placed at

jungentur ad dextram Genealogiſta Ordinis, in habitu ſuo & cum inſignibus Ordinis iſtius, ad ſiniſtram autem Rex Armorum Ordinis, de Balneo, cum peculiari ſua chlamyde & Symbolo ſuo; Poſtea Decanus hujus Ordinis Pallio veſtitus, & cum *Inſignibus ſuis* incedet, manu geſtans juramentum & admonitionem eleganter in charta pergamena deſcripta, quem ſequetur Magnus Magiſter ſolus; Poſt ipſum vero ibit Dilectiſſimus Noſter Nepos, Princeps WILHELMUS, ambo amicti habitu integro & inſignibus Ordinis, atq; albis ſuis pileis tecti; Tandem hanc Proceſſionem Perſona Regis claudet, ſi ſit præſens, ſtipati neceſſario ſuo comitatu, enſe Imperii ante ipſum geſtato, & veſtis extremitate ſublata. Et hæc quidem forma injuncta eſt, ut conſtans methodus ſit in omnibus futuris Inveſtituris hujus Ordinis procedendi; Hoc ſolummodo diſcrimine intercedente, quod in omnibus ſubſequentibus Equites, qui nunc inveſtiti ſunt, pileis ſuis albis operti inceſſuri ſint; Armigeri autem ſociorum demortuorum ſecundum directiones Articulo decimo inſertas diſponentur. Hi Equites poſtquam omnes Capellam intraverint, ante peculiares exedras ſuas ſtabunt, donec Rex, (ſi præſens) conſederit, deinde Princeps ex Regio Sangvine prognatus, poſtea Magnus Magiſter & tandem Equites, vel ſinguli, vel ſimul cum Sociis ſuis pro ſedium ſuarum eminentia conſidebunt; Poſtea vero quam exedras ſuas reſpective occuparint, Decanus Ordinis ad Sedile ſuum ſe conferet, ad pedes exedræ Regis conſti-

tutum

at the Foot of the Sovereign's Stall, and *Garter*, and the Genelalogiſt, *Bath* King of Arms, the Regiſter, Secretary, and Gentleman-Uſher to their Benches, or Formes before it; the Eſquires Governours, ſhall retire to their Seats under the Stalls of the Knights, whom they ſeverally attend; and the young Eſquires ſtanding before them; The Prebendaries ſhall place themſelves on Benches, ſet on the right, and left ſide of the Tomb of King *Henry* VII. The menial Servants of the Sovereign's Houſhold, (entitled to Fees as aforeſaid) before the young Eſquires, nearer to the Middle of the Chapel, ſtanding according to their ſeveral Precedencies; the Officers of Arms in the ſame Range, but nearer to the uppermoſt Stalls on each Side. Then *Bath* King of Arms, and the Gentleman-Uſher, ſhall ariſe from their Seats, being followed by the Dean of this Order, and proceed towards the Stall of the Great Maſter; who then deſcending, ſhall enter into that of the Knight, which ſhall be the higheſt next his own, and ſhall deliver unto ſuch Knight, the Tranſcript of theſe Statutes, to whom the Dean ſhall adminiſter the following Oath, *Bath* King of Arms holding the Book of the Goſpels.

tutam, & Rex Armorum *Garterius* ac Genealogiſta, Rex Armorum *Bath* ſive de *Balneo*, Regiſtrator, Secretarius & Apparitor ad ſcamna ſua ante eam collocata ſe recipient; Armigeri Gubernatores retrocedent ad ſedes ſuas infra exedras Equitum, quos ſeorſim adjuvant, Armigeris Juvenibus coram ipſis ſtantibus; Præbendarii ſolos ſe collocabunt in ſubſelliis, a dextro & a ſiniſtro latere Buſti Regis HENRICI VII. poſitis: Servi domeſtici Aulæ Regiæ (ſportulas, ut dictum, ſibi vindicantes) coram Armigeris juvenibus, propiores meditullio Capellæ, conſiſtent ſecundum cuique peculiarem gradum; Officiales inſignium in eadem ſerie erunt, propiores tamen ſupremis exedris in utroque latere: Quibus peractis, *Bath*, Rex Armor. de Balneo & Apparitor de Sedibus ſuis ſurgent, ſequente Decano hujus Ordinis, & verſus exedram Magni Magiſtri procedent, qui tum deſcendens, intrabit exedram Equitis, Suæ proximam, talique Equiti tradet horum Statutorum Apographum, eidemque Decanus jusjurandum ſequens adminiſtrabit, Rege Armorum de Balneo librum Evangeliorum tenente:

You *ſhall honour God above all Things; You ſhall be ſtedfaſt in the Faith of Chriſt; You ſhall love the King your Sovereign Lord, and him and his Right defend to your Power; You ſhall defend Maidens, Widows, and Orphans, in their Rights; and ſhall ſuffer no Extortion, as far as you may prevent it; and of as great Honour be this Order*

Honorabis Deum ſupra omnia; in fide Chriſtiana eris conſtans; Regem ſupremum tuum Dominum amabis, ejusq; jura pro viribus tuis defendes; Tuebéris etiam jura Virginum, Viduarum & Orphanorum; Nec ullam Violentiam, in quantum eam impedire poteris, tolerabis, bicq; Ordo eodem inſigni Honore te

ornet,

Order unto you, as ever it was to any of your Progenitors, or others.

AND then the Great Maſter ſhall put the Collar about his Neck, and ſhall ſeat him in his Stall, with all proper Sings of Reſpect; and then the Great Maſter ſhall reſort unto the next Stall, and ſo ſucceſſively throughout the whole Stalls, performing the like Ceremonies to every Knight reſpectively; which Cerimonies being finiſhed, and the Great Maſter reſeated in his Stall, the Dean ſhall go to the Altar, and *Bath* King of Arms, and the Gentleman-Uſher being returned to their Bench, Divine Service ſhall be celebrated according to the Rubrick of the Liturgy; and at the Offering, the Sovereign (if preſent) ſhall, attended by *Garter*, *Bath*, and the Gentleman-Uſher, and aſſiſted by the Great Maſter, make his Oblation; then the Prince of the Blood; then the Great Maſter, attended by *Bath*, and the Gentleman-Uſher, and afterwards all the Reſidue of the Companions with their reſpective Fellows (if preſent) otherwiſe ſingle; thoſe in the higheſt Stalls ſhall offer firſt, being attendet ſeverally by two Provincial Kings, or Heradls of Arms; Divine Service being concludet, every Companion Inſtalled, ſhall be conducted by *Bath* King of Arms, and the Gentleman-Uſher to the Rails of the Altar, where having unſheathed his Sword, he ſhall offer it naked with great Devotion, and the Dean ſhall reſtore ſuch Sword, with the following Admonition:

ornet, qui unquam in ullos Progenitorum tuorum vel aliorum inde redundavit.

Quo facto Magnus Magiſter cervici ejus Torqueum Equeſtr. injiciet, eumque in exedram ſuam collocabit, omnibus debitis venerationis ſignis adhibitis; Deinde Magnus Magiſter ad exedram ſequentem & ſic ſucceſſive ad cunctas exedras procedet, ſimiles Ceremonias in quocunque Equite reſpective obſervans; Quibus Ceremoniis finitis, & Magno Magiſtro ad exedram ſuam reverſo, Decanus Altare adibit, & Rege Armorum de Balneo ac Apparitore ad ſubſellia ſua recedentibus, cultus Divinus juxta Rubricam Liturgiæ celebrabitur; Et in oblatione Rex (ſi præſens) ſtipatus Regibus Armorum de *Balneo*, ac *Ord. Periſcelidis* aſſiſtente Magno Magiſtro primus offeret; Deinde Princeps ex Regio Sangvine prognatus, tum Magnus Magiſter, ſtipatus Rege Armorum de Balneo & Apparitore; poſtea autem omnia reliqua Membra cum Sociis ſuis reſpective (ſi præſentes) alias ſinguli; ita, ut ſupremas ſedes occupantes primi offerant, ſtipati quique ſeorſim duobus Regibus Armorum Provincialibus, ſeu Caduceatoribus; Cultu autem divino abſoluto, quisque Socius conſecratus, a Rege Armorum de Balneo & Apparitore ad Altaris cancellos deducetur, ubi gladio educto, ipſum vagina nudatum magna devotione offeret, Decanus vero gladium talem ei reddet, hac addita admonitione:

BY

Per

BY *the Oath you have this Day taken, I exhort and admoniſh you, to uſe this Sword to the Glory of God, the Defence of the Goſpel, the Maintenance of your Sovereign's Right, and Honour, and of all Equity, and Juſtice to the utmoſt of your Power;* So help you God.

Per jusjurandum, hoc die a Te præſtitum, Te adhortor & moneo, ut hoc gladio utaris in Dei Gloriam, Evangelii defenſionem, ad vindicanda jura & Honorem Regis tui, quantum in viribus tuis ſitum erit; Sicut Te Deus adjuvet.

A Proceſſion ſhall then be had the Companions, in theſe their full Habits, to the Chapter-Room; and the Sovereign's Maſter-Cook, ſtanding at the Outſide of the Door of the Church of *Weſtminſter*, with a Linnen Apron, and a Chopping Knife in his Hand, ſhall ſay to each Companion Inſtalled: *Sir, You know, what great Oath you have taken; which if you keep, it will be great Honour to you; but if you break it, I ſhall be compelled by my Office to back off your Spurs from your Heels.*

Quibus finitis Proceſſio ab univerſis Membris in hoc integro amictu ad Capitulum Ordinis inſtituetur; Et Regis Coquus primarius, foras portæ Eccleſiæ Weſtmonaſterienſis adſtans, præcinctorio linteo cinctus, & cultrum inciſorium manu tenens, cuiq; Membro dicet: *Domine ſcis, quo jurejurando Te adſtrinxeris, quod ſi ſervabis, magno id Tibi honori erit; ſi franges, officio meo coactus calcaria, Tua hoc cultro calcibus Tuis præcidam.*

THE Companions being thus returned to the Prince's Chamber, are hereby authoriz'd to hold a Chapter, and to determine whatever ſhall be judged proper for preſerving the Dignity of the Order, within theſe Rules; and then diveſting themſelves of their Robes, may depart: And it ſhall be at the Diſcretion, and Pleaſure of every Companion, whether he will afterwards Apparel himſelf in blue Veſtiments, wearing the Lace of white Silk on his Left Shoulder, according to the antient Formularies, and whether He will wear ſuch Lace on his Mantle at future Inſtallations.

Socii ſic ad Conclave Principis reverſi, hiſce auctoritatem nanciſcuntur, Capitulum habendi, & quodcunque ad conſervandam dignitatem Ordinis juxta hujus regulas utile judicabitur, determinandi, tuncque tunicis depoſitis iis abire licebit: Erit autem in beneplacito & arbitrio cujuscunque Socii poſitum, num poſthac veſtes cæruleas induere velit, & tæniam ſericam coloris albi in humero ſiniſtro ſecundum antiquam formulam geſtare, numve talem tæniam pallio ſuo in futuris Inaugurationibus annectere.

NINTHLY, When any of the Stalls ſhall become void, the Great Maſter with

NONO: Quandocunque exedra quædam vacua reddetur, id Magnus

with all convenient Speed ſhall ſignify the Vacancy to the Sovereign; And having received the Sovereign's Election, or Nomination of the Perſon to fill it, ſhall forthwith ſignify the ſaid Election to the Perſon ſo nominated, and ſhall then cauſe the Companions to be ſummoned by Letters, to appear in the Prince's Chamber, at a Time therein to be ſpecified; when, and to which Place they are ſtrictly required to repair (unleſs they have firſt obtained a Diſpenſation, or ſhall be excuſed for a reaſonable Cauſe); and then being Habited in their Mantles, Surcoats, and Enſings, and their Officers attending in their proper Robes, and with their Badges, a Proceſſion ſhall be made into the Chapel of King *Henry* the Seventh; where the Companions being ſeated in their Stalls, two of them, who ſhall be in the higheſt Stalls, next to that of the Great Maſter, ſhall offer the Sword of the Companion deceaſed, which ſhall be received, and depoſited upon the Side of the Altar by the Dean; and the Companions being returned unto the Chapter-Room, the Great Maſter ſhall there ſignify to them the Sovereign's Nomination of Perſon Elected; who being in Attendance by vertue of a Letter from the Great Maſter, ſhall be introduced into the Chapter-Room by *Bath* King of Arms, and the Genthleman-Uſher, that he may acknowledge the Acceptance of the Order; and the Complements of the Society being made to him, upon his receiving this diſtinguiſhing Mark of Honour; and the Times being appointed for his Creation to this Knighthood,

Magiſter omni congrua feſtinatione Regi nunciabit; Et recepta a Rege Electione vel Nominatione Perſonæ, quæ Sedem vacuam ſuppleret, illico de dicta Electione Perſonam nominatam certiorem faciet, quo facto Membra Literis citari curabit, ut tempore in iſtis determinato in Principis conclavi appareant: Membra autem exacte tempore & loco præſcriptis (niſi prius immunitatem obtinuerint, aut juſta de cauſa ſe excuſare queant) congregabuntur; Tuncque induti palliis ſuis, tunicis amplis, & Inſignibus, ac ſtipati officialibus ſuis, qui ſuis peculiaribus chlamydibus & Symbolis ſuis inſtructi erunt, inde ad Capellam Regis *Henrici* Septimi Proceſſio fiet, ubi, poſtquam cuncti Socii in exedris ſuis conſederunt, duo eorum in ſupremis exedris conſtituti, & proximi exedræ Magni Magiſtri gladium Membri demortui offerent, quem Decanus accipiet, & in latus Altaris deponet; Sociis autem ad Capitulum Ordinis reverſis, Magnus Magiſter nominationem Viri a Rege Electi ipſis notam faciet, qui literis a Magno Magiſtro vocatus exſpectabit, usque dum a Rege Armorum de Balneo & Apparitore in Capitulum introducatur, ut declaret, ſe hunc Ordinem accepturum. Quo facto univerſa Societas ipſi tunc eximium Honoris Gradum gratulabitur; Et tempore ad Equeſtrem ejus Inaugurationem, conſtituto, eadem juxta Regulas ſupra memoratas citra ullam immutationem vel circumſtan-

hood, as alſo for his Inſtallation, the ſame ſhall be diſtinctly performed according to the Rules above recited, without any Alterations, or additional Circumſtances, beſides thoſe which the Neceſſities of the occaſions may abſolutely require: Provided always, that in caſe any Perſon nominated by Us, or our Succeſſors, do not perform the Conditions required, within Six Months after his Election, and that he have not Certificates thereof from the Great Maſter; then the ſaid Election to be void; And the Notice of ſuch his Omiſſion being given to the Sovereign by the Great Maſter, another Perſon ſhall be nominated to fill that Vacancy; to the end, an uninterrupted Succeſſion may be always regularly continued.

TENTHLY, That every Year, on the Twentieth Day of *October*, or if that ſhall happen upon a *Sunday*, on the next Day, there ſhall be a Convention of all the Companions, to celebrate the Anniverſary of Our Coronation, who are hereby required, without any other Summons, to meet in their Chapter-Room, inveſted with their proper Habits and Enſigns, with the Officers of this Order, their Eſquires, the Prebendaries of *Weſtminſter*, all of them in their reſpective Robes, and from thence they ſhall make a Proceſſion to the Chapel of King *Henry* VII. and there hear Divine Service, and make their Offerings, and from thence return to the Chapter-Room: But in caſe any Companion deceaſed, ſhall leave either, or both of his Eſquires Governours ſurviving, ſuch Eſquire, or Eſquires, ſhall

cumſtantias additas, præter tales, quas ipſa neceſſitas occaſionum abſolute requirere videbitur, exacte perficietur; Attamen quandocunq; Perſona quædam a Nobis aut Succeſſoribus Noſtris deſignata Conditiones requiſitas intra ſex menſes, poſt Electionem ſuam, non implebit, ſique nullam ejus rei a Magno Magiſtro teſtimonium habeat, tunc dicta Electio erit nulla; Hac autem omiſſione ejus Regi a Magno Magiſtro indicata, Vir alius ad ſupplendum hunc locum nominabitur, quo Succeſſio perpetua ſemper exacte conſervetur.

DECIMO, Quocunque anno, die *viceſimo Octobris*, vel ſi hic in diem Solis inciderit, die proximo, univerſi Socii ad celebrandam anniverſariam Coronationis Noſtræ memoriam convenient, quibus his id injungitur, ut abſque ullis aliis Citationibus ad Capitulum Ordinis ſe conferant, veſtiti peculiaribus ſuis Habitibus & Inſignibus, cum Officialibus hujus Ordinis, Armigeris ſuis & Præbendariis templi *Weſtmonaſterienſis*, omnibus propriis ſuis chlamydibus diſtinctis, & inde Proceſſionem ad Capellam Regis Henrici Septimi inſtituent, atque Divino ibi cultui attendent, oblationes ſuas peragent, ſicque ad locum Capituli revertentur; Verum ſi mortuum aliquod membrum alterutrum aut ambos Armigeros Gubernatores ſuos ſuperſtites relinquat, talis Armiger

ſhall proceed in Breaſt on the Left Hand of the Eſquire, or Eſquires of the Knight, who at that time ſhall be in Poſſeſſion, or be entitled to be placed in the Stall, wherein the deceaſed Companion was ſeated; and the ſame Method ſhall be obſerved with regard to the young Eſquires, who ſhall ſurvive the Companions, to whom they officiated,

ſive Armigeri ad ſiniſtram manum procedent Armigeri vel Armigerorum Equitis, qui tunc temporis poſſidebit, aut deſignatus erit ad poſſidendum exedram illam, in qua Socius vita functus conſederat; Eademque ratio quoad Armigeros Juvenes, qui ſupervixerint Socios, quibus miniſtraverunt, obſervabitur.

ELEVENTHLY, That at all future Coronations, and other Solemnities, wherein Knights of the *Bath* have been heretofore uſually Created; all the Companions of this moſt honourable Order, for the Time being, who by reaſon of the Honours and Offices then enjoyed by them, may not be entitled to an higher Degree of *Precedency*, ſhall enjoy the Precedencies, and all other Privileges whatever within, and without the Sovereign's Houſhold, which have been heretofore allowed to any Knight of the Bath, by antient Laws, Uſages, and Cuſtoms of this Realem, not only during the Preparation for ſuch Solemnities, but while they are in Performance, and likewiſe at all other Times and and Seaſons; And that the Wives of theſe Companions, and their Relicts during their Widowhoods, with their Children, ſhall enjoy their antient Preheminencies, and all other Rights, in as ample manner, an they were enjoyed under the Reigns of any of our Predeceſſors.

UNDECIMO: In omnibus futuris Coronationibus aliisq; Solemnitatibus, quibus olim Equites de Balneo communiter creati ſunt, univerſi hujus Honoratiſſimi Ordinis Socii tunc viventes, qui Dignitatum & Officiorum, quibus fruuntur, cauſa ſibi altiorem Gradum vindicare nequeunt, alios tamen Præcedent, cunctisque ceteris Privilegiis quibuscunque cum intra tum extra Regis Aulam utentur, quæ olim ulli Equiti de Balneo ex veteſtis Legibus, Ritibus & Conſuetudinibus hujus Regni conceſſa fuere, idque non ſolum durante præparatione ad ejuſmodi Solemnitates, ſed etiam dum celebrantur atque ſimiliter omni alio tempore, & occaſione. Uxores etiam horum Sociorum eorumque Viduæ durante earum viduitate cum liberis ſuis antiquis Prærogativis ſuis aliisque juribus omnibus eodem ampliſſimo modo fruentur, quo unquam ſub Regnis Prædeceſſorum Noſtrorum fruitæ ſunt.

TWELFTHLY, That every Companion, after his Inſtallation, ſhall conſtantly wear the Badge, Cognizance, or

DUODECIMO: Omnis Socius poſt Inauguratioem ſuam conſtanter geſtabit Symbolum, aut Signum hujus Ordi-

or Enſing of this Order, being, Three Imperial Crowns *Or*, which ſhall be placed within the antient Motto of the Order, *Tria Juncta in Uno;* which Badge ſhall be pendent to a Red Ribbond, placed obliquely over the Right Shoulder to the Left Side; and each of them ſhall likewiſe wear the Enſign of this Order (deſcribed in the Seventh Article) embroidered upon the Left Side of his Upper Veſtment, with Rays of Silver, or Glory iſſuing from the Center; And before the Inſtallation of every Knight into this Order, there ſhall be fixed to the Back of his Stall, an Eſcocheon of his Arms enamelled, within a Circle *Gules*, having thereon the Motto of the Order in Lettres of Gold, under which the Name and Title of the Companion with the Time of his Inſtallation, ſhall be inſcribed; and every Companion may, if he think proper, bear his Arms, in this manner on his Seall, and upon his Furniture at all Times and upon all occaſions whatever, and a Banner of his Arms ſhall be placed over his Stall.

Ordinis, ſcilicet tres Coronas Regias aureas, quas vetuſtiſſimum Ordinis Emblema: TRIA JUNCTA IN UNO, circumdabit, quod ſignum ex tænia rubra pendebit, quæ oblique ex humero dextro ad latus ſiniſtrum deflectet; Quisque etiam eorum ſimiliter geſtabit inſigne hujus Ordinis, (ſeptimo Articulo deſcriptum) intextum alteri ſiniſtro veſtis exterioris, cum radiis argenteis ſeu gloria ex centro prodeunte; Eques vero quivis antequam hoc Ordine initietur, exedræ ejus a poſtica parte affigetur clypeus inſignium ejus, inuſtus intra circulum rubrum, inſerto Symbolo Ordinis, literis aureis depicto, cui nomen & titulus Membri cum tempore Inaugurationis ejus ſubſcribentur; Et quisq; Socius, ſi placuerit ipſi, inſignia ſua hoc modo in ſigillo ſuo gerere poterit, atque in utenſilibus ejus, omni tempore & occaſione quacunque, & vexillum inſignium ejus ſupra exedram ejus erigetur.

THIRTEENTHLY, We do hereby declare it to be Our Royal Will and Pleaſure, That all Robes, and Materials whatſoever, which in the Reigns of our Predeceſſors, according to antient Cuſtoms, have been providet by any Servants of the Sovereign, by Reaſon of their different Offices, ſhall be iſſued and dilivered upon the Warrants of the Great Maſter, for theſe Purpoſes, towards the Creation of the Perſons hereby elected, and for all other ſuch Perſons, as ſhall hereafter be nominated by us, or by Our Succeſſors Kings of

DECIMOTERTIO: Hiſce declaramus, Regiam Noſtram Voluntatem & Beneplacitum eſſe, ut veſtes omnes & quæcunque neceſſaria, quæ in Regnis Prædeceſſorum Noſtrorum ſecundum vetuſtos ritus, ab his illisque Regiis Servis, pro diverſo quorumvis officio comparata fuere, ab iisdem, acceptis hac de cauſa a Magno Magiſtro literis publicis, præparentur & tradantur, ut inſerviant Creationi Perſonarum hiſce electarum, omniumque aliorum Virorum in poſterum a Nobis aut Succeſſoribus Noſtris, Regibus hujus

Regni

of this Realm, to ſupply ſuch Vacancies as may happen in this Order.

FOURTEENTHLY, That there may be no Miſtake in the Method, wherein the Perſons elected by us, ſhall be ranged in the Stalls, We have thought proper to inſert a Scheme of them.

Regni ad ſupplenda loca, quæ in hoc Ordine vacua reddentur, nominandorum.

DECIMO QUARTO Ne error in methodum, ſecundum quam Perſonæ a Nobis electæ in exedris ſuis diſponentur, irrepat, ſchema earum hic inſerendum eſſe, congruum judicavimus.

On the right Hand of the Entry into te Chappel, facing de Altar	*On the left Hand of the Entry into the Chappel, facing the Altar*
1 Sovereign.	2 Prince *William.*
3 Duke of *Montagu*, Great Maſter.	4 Duke of *Richmod.*
5 Duke of *Mancheſter.*	6 Lord *Burford.*
7 Earl of *Leiceſter.*	8 Earl of *Albemarle.*
9 Earl of *Deloraine.*	10 Earl of *Halifax.*
11 Earl of *Suſſex.*	12 Earl of *Pomfret.*
13 Lord *Naſſaw Pawlet.*	14 Viſcount *Torrington.*
15 Lord *Malpas.*	16 Lord *Glenorchy.*
17 Lord *Delawar.*	18 Lord *Clinton.*
19 Lord *Walpole.*	20 *Spencer Compton.*
21 *William Stanhope.*	22 *Coniers D'arcy.*
23 *Thomas Lumley Sanderſon.*	24 *Paul Methuen.*
25 *Robert Walpole.*	26 Sir *Robert Sutton.*
27 *Charles Wills.*	28 Sir *John Hobart*, Bart.
29 Sir *William Gage* Bart.	30 *Robert Clifton.*
31 *Michael Newton.*	32 *William Yonge.*
33 *Thomas Watſon Wentworth.*	34 *John Monſon.*
35 *William Morgan.*	36 *Thomas Coke.*
37 Earl of *Inchequeen.*	38 Viſcount *Tyrconnel.*

In dextro latere Introitus in Capellam e Regione Altaris ſedebunt:	*In ſiniſtro latere Introitus in Capellam e Regione Altaris ſedebunt:*
1 REX.	2 Princeps WILHELMUS.
3 Dux de *Montagu*, Magnus Magiſter.	4 Dux de *Richmond.*
5 Dux de *Mancheſter.*	6 Lord *Burford.*
7 Comes de *Leiceſter.*	8 Comes de *Albemarle.*
9 Comes de *Deloraine.*	10 Comes de *Halifax.*
11 Comes de *Suſſex*,	12 Comes de *Pomfret.*
13 Lord *Naſſaw.*	14 ViceCom. *Torrington.*
15 Lord *Malpas.*	16 Lord *Glenorchy.*
17 Lord *Delawar.*	18 Lord *Clinton.*
19 Lord *Walpole.*	20 *Spencerus Compton.*
21 Wilhelmus *Stanhope.*	22 Coniers *D'arcy.*
23 Thomas *Lumleijus Sanderſon.*	24 *Paulus Methuen.*
25 Robertus *Walpole.*	26 *Robertus Sutton.*
27 Carolus *Wills.*	28 Joh. *Hobart*, Eq. Bart.
29 Wilh. *Gage.* Eq. Bart.	30 Robertus *Clifton.*
31 Michaël *Newton.*	32 *Wilhelmus Yonge.*
33 Thomas *Watſon. Wentworth.*	34 *Johannes Manſon.*
35 Wilhelmus *Morgan.*	36 *Thomas Coke.*
37 Com. de *Inchequeen.*	38 ViceCom. *Tyrconnel.*

THAT is, the Stall oppoſite to that of the Sovereign ſhall be the next to it in Precedency, and ſo alternately from the Sovereing's Side to that on the Prince's Side, throughout the whole Courſe; And for the future, when any Vacancy ſhall happen, the Perſon nomina-

Hoc modo exedra, oppoſita exedræ Regis, ei dignitate proxima erit, ſicque alternative a latere Regis ad latus Principis per totam ſeriem; In poſterum autem quandocunque locus vacuus erit redditus, Vir nominatus ad illum ſupplendum, ſive ſit Dux, Marchio

nominated to ſupply it, whether Duke, Marqueſs, Earl, Viſcount, or Baron, or One under the Degree of Nobility, ſhall conſtantly be placed in the loweſt Stall; in which Caſe all the Companions in the Stalls, lower to that, inclusive, wherein the Knight deceaſed was placed, ſhall be gradually promoted to the next ſuperior Stall, and their Plates ſhall be removed accordingly. But whenever any Prince, or Princes of the Blood Royal ſhall be elected into this Fraternity, He or they ſo elected, ſhall be ſeated in the Stalls next to that of the Sovereign; And if there ſhould be no Vacancy in ſuch Stall, or Stalls, Then the Plates of the other Companions, in that Caſe are to be removed to lower Stalls; and each Companion it to take Place, within all te Ceremonies of this Order, according to the Situation of his Stall, and not according to the Grandeur of his Eſtate, Degree, or Office.

Marchio, Comes, Vice-Comes aut Baro vel etiam infra Dignitatem Parium Regni conſtanter in infimam exedram collocabitur; tuncque omnes Socii in ſedibus inferioribus, inclusive, in qua Eques defunctus conſtitutus erat, gradatim ad proxime ſuperiorem exedram promovebuntur, & conſequenter Inſignia eorum removebuntur. Verum quandocunq; Princeps aliquis vel Principes ex Regio Sangvine prognati in hanc Fraternitatem cooptabuntur, Ipſe aut Ipſi ſic electi in exedris Regis Sedi proximis conſtituentur, atque ſi nullus locus vacuus in tali exedra ſeu exedris ſit, tunc Inſignia ceterorum Membrorum ad inferiores exedras removebuntur; Et quisque Socius in omnibus hujus Ordinis Ceremoniis pro ſerie exedræ ſuæ locum ſibi proprium occupabit, non vero pro eminentia ſuæ Conditiones, Gradus vel Officii.

FIFTEENTHLY, That the Coat Armour of the Eſquires Governours, and young Eſquires, ſhall alſo be affixed to the Back of the Seats, under the Stalls of their reſpective Knights, in ſmall Enamell'd Eſcocheons, with their Names, and the Names of the Knights, whom they attended, with the reſpective Dates of the Times, when their Knights were Inſtalled: Which ſhall be removed in like Manner withe the Plates of their reſpective Knights, to whom they performed Service; All which ſaid Eſquires, ſhall during the Terms of their ſeveral Lives, enjoy all Rights, Liberties, Privileges, Exemptions,

DECIMO QUINTO: A poſtica parte Sedium ſub exedris ſuorum reſpective Equitum ſimiliter Inſignia Armigerorum Gubernatorum & Armigerorum Juvenum in exiguis inuſtis Scutis affigentur cum eorum nominibus, nominibusque Equitum, quibus miniſtrarunt, addito quoque die & tempore reſpective, quo Equites eorum initiati ſunt; Quæ pariter cum Inſignibus ſuorum reſpective Equitum, quibus auxiliati ſunt, removebuntur; Qui quidem dicti Armigeri cuncti, quamdiu vixerint, fruentur omnibus Juribus, Liberratibus, Privilegiis, Immunitatibus & Prærogativis,

ptions, and Advantages, which the Eſquires of the Sovereign's Body, or the Gentlemen of the Privy Chamber do lawfully Enjoy, or are Entituled unto by Virtute of any Grant, Preſcription, or Cuſtom whatſoever; And the eldeſt Son of every of theſe Eſquires, ſhall have, and uſe the Addition, and Title of Eſquire, in all Acts, Proceedings, and Pleadings; Provided, That all theſe Eſquires to be Entituled to theſe Privileges, all-have Certificates of their Qualifications before their reſpective Admiſſions, And likewiſe an Exemplification of their actual performing their Duties upon the Creation of any Knight, or Knights of the *Bath*, atteſted by the Great Maſter, under the Seal of the Order.

quibus Armigeri Regis ſive Nobiles Aulici legitime fruuntur, quæve ſibi vindicare poſſunt vi cujusdam Conceſſionis, Præſcriptionis vel Conſvetudinis cujuſcunque; Et Filius natu maximus omnium horum Armigerorum poſſidebit & utetur cognomine & titulo Armigeri in omnibus Decretis, Proceſſibus & Actis Forenſibus; Attamen omnes hi Armigeri Privilegiis hiſce ornandi teſtimonio ſuæ aptitudinis reſpective ante admiſſionem ſuam habere debebunt, & ſimiliter tranſsumtum, quod revera in Creatione alicujus Equitis ſeu Equitum de *Balneo* officii ſui partes impleverint, eaque a Magno Magiſtro ſub Sigillo Ordinis confirmata.

Sixteenthly, Whenever the Sovereign ſhall pleaſe to have a Chapter, to be held, the Great Maſter ſhall cauſe Letters of Summons to be ſent to all the Companions reſident within the Realm, to appear Robed in their Mantles, and with their Badges, in the Prince's Chamber; where being ſeated according to the Courſe of their Stalls, and attended by the Officers of this Order, they ſhall deliberate, treat, determine, and conclude, all Matters, which concern the Dignity, and Preſervation of the Intereſts of this Order; and all ſuch Determinations, and Reſolutions, ſhall be forthwith preſented to the Sovereign for his Royal Approbation; And, if the Sovereign ſhall not ſignify his Diſallowance thereof, and the ſame ſhall not be contrary to theſe Statutes, ſhall be Rules and

Decimo Sexto: Quandocunq; Regi placuerit, Capitulum vel Capitula habere, Magnus Magiſter Literas citatorias ad univerſos Socios intra hoc Regnum viventes mitti curabit, ut in Conclavi Principis appareant, palliati, ſuisque Inſignibus inſtructi; Ubi cum conſederint pro ſerie exedrarum ſuarum & ſtipati Officialibus hujus Ordinis, deliberabunt, tractabunt, determinabunt & concludent materias omnes, quæ Dignitatem & Conſervationem commodorum hujus Ordinis concernunt; Cunctæque tales determinationes & concluſa illico cum Rege, ad Regiam ejus Approbationem, communicabuntur; Et, niſi Rex ſe illa improbare ſignificet, eademque Statutis hiſce non contrarientur, Regulæ &

Ordi-

and Ordinances, and be from thenceforth taken to be Part and Parcel of the Statutes of this moſt Honourable Order; And ſuch Puniſhments ſhall be inflicted on the Companions, who ſhall then be abſent without lawful Excuſes, or Diſpenſations obtained, and alſo upon ſuch Companions, as ſhall transgreſs againſt any Article, or Articles of theſe Statutes, or againſt ſuch Rules, as ſhall be made in any Chapters, to be held under the Reſtriction aforeſaid, as to the Majority of the Companions preſent ſhall ſeem juſt and expedient.

Ordinationes erunt & ab hinc ut pars & portio Statutorum hujus Honoratiſſimi Ordinis accipientur; Tales autem pœnæ infligentur Sociis tunc abſque legitima excuſatione aut immunitate obtenta abſentibus, uti ab illis Membris, qui aliquem Articulum aut Articulos horum Statutotum lædent, vel Regulas iſtas, quæ in ullis Capitulis, ſub modo memorata reſtrictione habitis, conſtituentur, infringent, quales juſtæ & convenientes pluribus Membris tunc præſentibus videbuntur.

SEVENTEENTHLY, Whereas the Prebendaries of the Church of *Weſtminſter* will be obliged to attend in the Proceſſions of this Order, and to aſſiſt in celebrating Divine Service, whenever it is conferred, They ſhall on all ſuch Occaſions be habited in white Mantles, lined with red, having on the right Shoulder the Badge of the Order, in like Manner with the Eſquires Governours.

DECIMO SEPTIMO: Quum Præbendarii Templi *Weſtmonaſterienſis* obligati ſint, ut ſe ſiſtant in Proceſſionibus hujus Ordinis, &, quandocunq; idem confertur, in celebratione Cultus Divini aſſiſtant, hinc in omnibus his occaſionibus veſtiti Palliis albis, lineo rubro aſſuto & in humero dextro Symbolo Ordinis, ſimili cum Armigeris Gubernatoribus modo, inſtructi incedent.

EIGHTEENTHLY, There ſhall be ſeven Officers of this Order, a Dean, a Genealogiſt, a King of Arms, a Regiſter, a Secretary, Gentleman-Uſher, and a Meſſenger.

DECIMO OCTAVO: Officiales hujus Ordinis erunt ſeptem; Decanus, Genealogiſta, Rex Armorum, Regiſtrator, Secretarius, Generoſus Apparitor & Tabellarius.

THE Dean ſhall be the Dean of the Church of *Weſtminſter* for the Time being, who in all Ceremonies, ſhall be Inveſted with the like Mantle, and Enſign, that the Companions are to wear; And in the Proceſſions ſhall be covered; He ſhall ſolemnize Divine Servi-

DECANUS erit ipſe, qui tunc temporis Decanus futurus Templi *Weſtmonaſterienſis*, qui in omnibus Ceremoniis ſimili pallio & inſigni veſtitus erit, quibus Membra induentur; In Proceſſionibus caput teget; In Divino Cultu Res Sacras peraget, oblationes

Service, receive the Offerings, administer the Oaths, and give the Admonitions; And alſo declare in the Chapters the Occaſion of calling them, and have Right to give his Suffrage, and Vote, in all Matters therein tranſacted; and may bear his own Coat Arms, Impaling thoſe of the Church of *Weſtminſter*, ſurrounded with the Circle, and Motto of the Order.

THE Genealogiſt, whom Our Great Maſter is to nominate and conſtitute, to continue during his good Behaviour, ſhall examine, and enter the Pedigrees of the reſpective Perſons now elected, and of ſuch, who ſhall hereafter be elected into this Order, and of their Eſquires Governours, and of the young Eſquires, with their ſeveral Coat Arms, and fairly to enter the ſame into Books, to remain to Poſterity, for the Memorial of their Families; for which he ſhall receive ſuch Reward, as ſhall be determined by the Great Maſter, with Regard to the Length of the Pedigrees, the authentick Proofs thereof, and the Pains taken therein; In all Ceremonies of this Order, he ſhall be habited in a Mantle, like to that of the Prebendaries, and ſhall wear under it a Surcoat like to the Eſquires Governours, and on his Breaſt, hanging to a Golden Chain about his Neck, an Eſcocheon of Gold, enamell'd, on a Field *Azure*, Three Imperial Crowns of Gold, having in the Center between the Three Crowns, the Cyphers or Letters G, in the manner deſcribed in the Margin.

accipiet, juramenta adminiſtrabit, & admonitiones adjunget; Similiter in Capitulis occaſionem ipſa convocandi declarabit, & jure fruetur, in omnibus cauſis ibi tranſactis, dandi ſuffragium ſuum, ac votum; & licebit ipſi propria ſua Inſignia gerere, involventia iſta Eccleſiæ *Weſtmonaſterienſis* & cincta circulo ac Symbolo Ordinis.

Genealogiſta, quem Magnus noſter Magiſter nominabit, & conſtituet, ut officium ſuum, quam diu ſe bene gesſerit, conſervet, examinabit Genealogias Perſonarum nunc reſpective electarum & Regeſtis inferet, atque omnium, qui in poſterum in hunc Ordinem cooptabuntur, ut & Armigerorum Gubernatorum ac Armigerorum Juvenum, cum peculiaribus ſuis inſignibus, eademque in libros eleganter inferet, ut poſteritati, in memoriam Familiarum eorum, mandentur; Tale autem præmium ideo accipiet, quale a Magno Magiſtro reſpectu habito ad amplitudinem Genealogiarum, ad earum demonſtrationes authenticas, atque labores in iis impenſos, determinabitur; In omnibus Ceremoniis hujus Ordinis inductus erit Pallio, ſimili illi Præbendariorum & ſub iſto geſtabit Tunicam amplam, ſimilem illi Armigerorum Gubernatorum, atq; in pectore ejus apparebit ex catena aurea, collum circumdante, pendens Scutum aureum, inuſtum in area cærulea, tribus coronis Regiis aureis, includens in centro inter tres coronas iſtas notam ſive literam G. juxta modum in margine deſcriptum.

THE King of Arms, whom our Great Maſter is alſo to nominate, and who ſhall be created by our Great Maſter with the Ceremonies accuſtomed in the Caſes of Creations of other Kings of Arms, to continue in the ſaid Office during his good Behaviour, ſhall be denominated *Bath*, in *Latin*, *Rex Armorum Honoratiſſimi Ordinis Militaris de Balneo*, and ſhall ſedulouſſy attend the Service of this Order: He ſhall in all the Ceremonies of this Order, be habited in a Mantle, like to that of the Prebendaries, and under it a Surcoat, like to the Eſquires Governours; He ſhall wear on his Breaſt hanging to a Golden Chain about his Neck, an Eſcocheon of Gold, enamelled, with the Arms of the Order, empaling the Arms of the Sovereign, crowned with an Imperial Crown, and ſhall carry the white Rod of this Order, which ſhall have on the two greater Squares of the Banner the Arms of the Order, empaling thoſe of the Sovereign, and on the leſſer Squares the Arms of the Order, the whole ſurmounted with an Imperial Crown; And at all future Coronations, he ſhall precede the Companions of this Order, and ſhall carry, and wear his Crown, as our other Kings of Arms are obliged to do; which Chain, Eſcocheon, Rod, and Crown, ſhall be of the like Materials, Value, and Weight, with theſe born, and uſed by our Garter Principal King of Arms, and of the like Faſhion, excepting only the Variations herein before ſpecified: Beſides the Duties required of him in the former Articles of theſe Statutes, He ſhall diligently

Rex Armorum, quem pariter Magnus Noſter Magiſter nominabit, quique a Magno Magiſtro Ceremoniis, conſuetis in Creationibus aliorum Regum Armorum, creabitur, ut officium ſuum, quamdiu ſe bene geſſerit, conſervet, denominabitur *Bath*, latine: *Rex Armorum Honoratiſſimi Ordinis Militaris de Balneo*, & ſedulus Miniſterio hujus Ordinis vacabit: In omnibus Ceremoniis hujus Ordinis indutus erit, pallio ſimili illi Præbendariorum, ac ſub illo geſtabit Tunicam amplam, ſimilem illi Armigerorum Gubernatorum, atque in pectore ejus apparebit ex catena aurea, cervicem ejus circumdante, pendens Scutum aureum, inuſtum inſignibus Ordinis, includentibus Inſignia Regia; coronatusq; corona Regia portabit virgam albam hujus Ordinis, quæ in duobus vexilli quadratis majoribus inſtructa erit Inſignibus Ordinis, includentibus Inſignia Regia, & in quadratis minoribus, Inſignibus Ordinis; in apice autem erit inſignita Corona Regia; Et in omnibus futuris Coronationibus Socios hujus Ordinis præibit ac præferet, & geſtabit Coronam ſuam, ſimiliter ac alii Noſtri Armorum Reges facere obſtricti ſunt, quæ Catena; Scutum, Virga & Corona erunt ex iisdem materiis confecta, ejusdemque valoris & ponderis cum iſtis geſtatis & uſis a Principali Noſtro Garterio, Rege Armorum Ordinis Periſcelidis, ut & ejusdem formæ, exceptis tantummodo illis variationibus hic ſupra deſignatis: Præter officia in prioribus horum Statutorum Articulis ab ipſo requiſita, diligenter quoque perficiet,

ligently perform whatever the Sovereign, or Great Maſter ſhall farther Command.

THE Regiſter, who ſhall alſo be nominated, and conſtituted, by the Great Maſter to continue during his good Behaviour, ſhall, with the greateſt Fidelity, enter all Tranſactions whatſoever, within the Order, and the Decretes, and Proceedings in every Chapter, with the valiant Exploits, and Atchivements of the Companions: In all Ceremonis of this Order, he ſhall wear the like Mantle and Surcoat with the King of Arms, and on his Breaſt, hanging tho a Golden Chain, an Eſcocheon enamelled on a Field *Azure*, Three Imperial Crowns *Or*, having in the Center, the Repreſentation of a Book bound *Gules*, the Leaves thereof *Or*.

THE Secretary to be likewiſe appointed by the Great Maſter, to continue during his good Behaviour, ſhall prepare Draughts of all Inſtruments, to be paſſed under the Seal of the Order, and angroſs them; And in all Ceremonies of this Order he ſhall wear the like Mantle and Surcoat as the Regiſter and on his Breaſt, hanging to a Golden Chain, an Eſcocheon enamelled, on a Field *Azure*, Three Imperial Crowns *Or*, having in the Center two Pens placed Salterwiſe.

WE likewiſe authoriſe the Great Maſter to conſtitute, and appoint a Gentleman-Uſher of the Scarlet Rod, ſurmoun-

quodcunque Rex aut Magnus Magiſter ulterius mandabunt.

Regiſtratator, qui ſimiliter a Magno Magiſtro nominabitur & conſtituetur, ut officium ſuum, quamdiu ſe bene geſſerit conſervet, ſumma fidelitate omnes Tranſactiones, intra hunc Ordinem factas, & Decreta ac Proceſſus in omni Capitulo, cum Geſtis Membrorum fortibus ac facinoribus in libros referet: In omnibus Ceremoniis hujus Ordinis ſimili Pallio & Tunica ampla veſtitus erit cum Rege Armorum, & in pectore ejus apparebit ex aurea Catena pendens Scutum, inuſtum in area *cærulea*; tribus Coronis Regiis *aureis*, in centro includens repræſentationem libri cum ligamento rubro foliisque ejusdem aureis.

Secretarius, pariter a Magno Magiſtro conſtituendus, ut officium ſuum, quamdiu ſe bene geſſerit, conſervet, exemplaria omnium Inſtrumentorum ſub Sigillo Ordinis publicandorum conficiet, eaque pure deſcribet; Et in omnibus Ceremoniis hujus Ordinis indutus erit ſimili Pallio & Tunica ampla cum Regiſtratore, & in pectore ejus apparebit Scutum, pendens ex catena aurea, inuſtum in area *cærulea*, tribus coronis Regiis *aureis*, in centro habens duas pennas in tranſverſum poſitas.

Porro etiam Magno Magiſtro poteſtatem damus conſtituendi & deſignandi *Generoſum Apparitorem*, virga coccinea, in

ſurmounted with Three Imperial Crowns, who ſhall continue in ſuch Office during his good Behaviour; And in all Ceremonies of this Order ſhall wear the ſame Robe and Surcoat with *Bath* King of Arms, and at a Golden Chain about his Neck, an Eſcocheon *Azure*, Three Imperial Crowns *Or*, hanging upon his Breaſt: He ſhall have the Cuſtody of the Door of the Chapter Room, and of our Chapel founded by King *Henry* the Seventh; during the Ceremonies relating to this Order. Beſides the Duties enjoined in the former Articles of theſe Statutes, it ſhall appertain to him to touch with his Rod any Companion, that ſhall be convicted of any Crime, contrary to the Tenor of theſe Statutes; And in caſe of a Degradation, to pluck down the Eſcocheon of ſuch Knight, and to ſpurn it out of the Chapel; And he ſhall alſo diligently execute whatever the Sovereign, or Great Maſter ſhall farther enjoin him, relating to the Intereſts of this Order.

in cujus apice tres Coronæ Regiæ, qui officium ſuum, quamdiu ſe bene geſſerit, conſervabit; Et in omnibus Ceremoniis hujus Ordinis, inductus erit ſimili Chlamyde & Tunica ampla cum Rege Armorum Ordinis de *Balneo*, & ex catena aurea, collum ipſius circumdante pendebit Scutum *cærulei* coloris, cum tribus coronis Regiis coloris *aurei*, ita ut in pectus ejus demittatur: Durantibus Ceremoniis hunc Ordinem reſpicientibus portas Capellæ, a Rege *Henrico* Septimo fundaræ, cuſtodiet. Præter officia in ſuperioribus horum Statutorum Articulis ipſi injuncta, ad eum quoque pertinebit, ut virga ſua omnem Socium feriat, convictum criminis alicujus contra tenorem horum Statutorum commiſi; Utq; quando Membrum exauctorandum, Scutum talis Equitis divellat, & e Capella ejiciat: Idem diligenter exſequetur, quæcunq;, ad commoda hujus Ordinis pertinentia, Rex aut Magnus Magiſter ipſi porro injungent.

The Genealogiſt, *Bath* King of Arms, the Regiſter, Secretary, and the Gentleman-Uſher of the Scarlet Rod, who attend within our Royal Palace, for the Service of this Order, ſhall continually remain under the Protection of the Sovereign, and are hereby declared to be Servants of the Sovereign's Houſhold, and ſhall enjoy all Privileges, and Exemptions, belonging by Right, or Cuſtom, to the Gentlemen of his Privy-Chamber; And we hereby direct, That their Robes, and Enſings, ſhall be prepared at the Charge

Genealogiſta, *Rex Armorum* Ordinis de Balneo, *Regiſtrator*, *Secretarius* & *Apparitor* Virgæ coccineæ, qui intra Regium Noſtrum Palatium Ordini huic a Miniſteriis ſunt, perpetuo ſub protectione Regis manebunt, & hiſce declarantur Servi Domeſtici Aulæ Regiæ, & fruentur omnibus Privilegiis ac immunitatibus vel jure vel uſu ad Armigeros Regis ſive Nobiles Aulicos pertinentibus; Simulque hiſce conſtituimus, ut chlamydes eorum & Inſignia præparentur ſumtibus Regis

Charge of the Sovereign, and be iſſued upon the Warrants of the Great Maſter.

AND to the End, that all Summons, Diſpenſations, Letters, aud all other Inſtruments, may be ſafely, and expeditiously conveyed to the Companions, the Great Maſter is likewiſe empowered to conſtitute and appoint a Meſſenger for this Service, who ſhall likewiſe collect the quaterly Payments herein after mentioned from the Companions, to the Genealogiſt, King of Arms, Regiſter, Secretary, and Uſher of the Order; He ſhall wear the ſame Surcoat and Badge with the Eſquires of the Order; And on his Breaſt hanging to a Golden Chain, One Imperial Crown of Gold: He ſhall alſo diligently execute Whatever the Sovereign, or Great Maſter ſhall farther enjoin him, relating to the Intereſts of this Order.

ALL theſe Officers, at their Admiſſion, ſhall take their Oaths, which ſhall be adminiſtred unto them hy the Great Maſter, That they ſhall yield Obedience to the Soyereign, and alſo to the Great Maſter of this moſt Honourable Order of the *Bath*, in ſuch things as appertain to the Order; That they ſhall not diſcloſe the Secrets of the Order, and that they ſhall be faithful in the Executions of their ſeveral Offices.

AND that theſe Offices may in ſome degree be ſupported, We hereby direct and enjoin, That every Companion of this Order ſhall, upon every Quarter-

gis & acceptis a Magno Magiſtro literis publicis exhibeantur.

Ut vero omnes Citationes, Diſpenſationes, Literæ, cunctaque alia Inſtrumenta tuto & expedite ad Socios perferantur, ſimiliter Magno Magiſter poteſtatem concedimus, conſtituendi & deſignandi *Tabellarium* ad hæc negotia obeunda, qui ſimul a Sociis quocunque trimeſtri colliget hic infra memorata Stipendia Genealogiſtæ, Regis Armorum, Regiſtratoris, Secretarii & Apparitoris Ordinis. Indutus erit ſimili tunica ampla & Inſigni cum Armigeris Ordinis, & in pectore ejus apparebit ex catena aurea pendens Corona Regia ex auro confecta; Idem diligenter exſequetur quæcunque ad commoda hujus Ordinis pertinentia Rex ſive Magnus Magiſter ipſi porro injungent.

Omnes Officiales quando admittentur, Juramenta præſtabunt coram Magno Magiſtro, quod dicto Regis & Magni etiam Magiſtri hujus Honoratiſſimi Ordinis de *Balneo*, in rebus ad Ordinem pertinentibus, audientes ſint futuri; quod ſecreta Ordinis non ſint aperturi, quodque Officia ſua peculiaria fideliter ſint exſecuturi.

Hiſce etiam, quo hæc Officia aliquo modo ſuſtineantur, conſtituimus, & injungimus, ut omnis Socius hujus Ordinis quacunque quarta parte anni

Quarter-Day in the Year (the firſt Payment to begin on the Twenty-fourth Day of *June* next) pay unto the Genealogiſt Three Nobles, to the King of Arms, Regiſter, Secretary, and Gentleman-Uſher One Mark, to each of them; and to the Meſſenger One Noble; And that theſe Officers may be encouraged to apply their Studies with the utmoſt Induſtry, We recommend to the ſaid Companions, that in their firſt Chapter, they would ſettle ſome Method, that their annual Penſions may be effectually, and regularly diſcharged, with ſuch other Proviſions, as ſhall be thought convenient.

AND to the End, that the Fees to be paid to the Great Maſter, and the ſeveral Officiers of this Order, upon the Election, or Nomination of any Knight Companion into the ſame, may be particularly aſcertained, and eſtabliſhed in Purſuance of the Declaration contained in our Royal Letters Patents above recidet, We do hereby for Us, Our Heirs, and Succeſſors direct, appoint, and ordain, That the Sum of One hundred and thirty eight Pounds ſhall be paid to the Great Maſtet of the ſaid Order for the Time being, by every Perſon that ſhall be nominated unto, and accept the Honour of a Companion of the ſaid Order; And that the Sum of Twenty two Pounds ſix Shillings and eight Pence ſhall be paid by every ſuch Companion to the Dean of the ſaid Order, out of which ſaid Sum the Prebendaries of *Weſtminſter* ſhall receive, their Part, according the uſual Method of

anni (prima ſolutione incipiente die vigeſimo quarto *Junii* proximi) ſolvat Genealogiſtæ tres *Nobiles* (a), Regi autem Armorum, Regiſtratori, Secretario & Apparitori Generoſo ſingulis unam *Marcam* (b), & Nuncio unum *Nobilem*; Utque hi Officiales excitentur, ad officia ſua ſumma induſtria obeunda, dictos Socios hortamur, ut in primo ſuo Capitulo modum aliquem figant, juxta quem ſtipendia eorum annua, rite & regulariter exſolvantur, aliaque augmenta, qualia congrua judicabuntur, decernant.

Ut vero penſiones, Magno Magiſtro & diverſis hujus Ordinis Officialibus exſolvendæ, facta Electione vel Nominatione alicujus Equitis, ut Socii ejusdem, ſpeciatim certæ fiant & ſtabiliantur, juxta Declarationem in Noſtro Diplomate ſupra factam, Nos hiſce pro Nobis, Heredibus Noſtris & Succeſſoribus injungimus, deſignamus & ordinamus, ut quæcunq; Perſona, quæ nominabitur & accipiet honorem Socii dicti Ordinis, Magno tunc temporis Magiſtro memorati Ordinis ſolvat ſummam centum & triginta octo Librarum Sterlingarum; Et quisque talis Socius Decano dicti Ordinis ſolvet ſummam viginti & duarum Librarum, ſex ſolidorum octoque denariorum, ex qua dicta ſumma Præbendarii Templi *Weſtmonaſterienſis* portionem ſuam accipient, juxta uſitatum

F

(a) *NOBILIS* eſt monetæ genus valore Sterlingorum trientis, cujuſmodi a ducentis annis haud cuſum fuiſſe dicitur. Vid. HENR. SPELM. voce *Nobilis*.

(b) *MARCA*, qualis moneta duas tertias Sterlingorum valet, atque, ut dicitur, a qudringentis annis haud cuſa fuit. Vid. Idem Auctor voce *Marca*.

of Partition obſerved in dividing Profits belonging to that Chapter; and to the King of Arms, Regiſter, Genealogiſt, Secretary, and Uſher, and to each of them the Sum of Twenty two Pounds, to be reſpectively paid to them, by every ſuch Companion; And to the Meſſenger the Sum of Eighteen Pounds thirteen Shillings and four Pence; And that every ſuch Companion, beyond theſe Sums, ſhall alſo pay for the Copy of theſe Statutes, Notice of his Election, Summons for his Inſtallation, and Certificate thereof, the Sum of Ten Marks for each of them reſpectively; And for the Eſcocheon of his Arms, and for thoſe of his Eſquires, which ſhall be fixed to the Back of their reſpective Stalls, the Sum of Twenty Marks for each of them reſpectively: And in caſe there ſhall be a Diſpenſation for the not performing any of the Particularities required by the old Rituals, or theſe Statutes, in conferring the Knighthood of the *Bath*, the Perſon to whom ſuch Diſpenſation ſhall be granted, ſhall pay for the ſame the Sum of Forty Marks; and for the Banner which ſhall be placed over his Stall, fifteen Marks, and alſo for the Helmet, Creſt, Sword and Mantlings, Seven Marks.

tatum partitionis modum, obſervatum in dividendis ſportulis ad Capitulum illud pertinentibus; Porro unusquisq; talis Socius reſpective ſolvet Regi Armorum, Regiſtratori, Genealogiſtæ, Secretario & Apparitori, iisque ſingulis ſummam viginti & duarum Librarum; Nuncio autem ſummam octodecim Librarum, tredecim ſolidorum & quatuor denariorum. Præterea quivis talis Socius ultra has ſummas pro Apographo horum Statutorum, Significatione Electionis ſuæ, Citatione ad Inaugurationem ſuam, & Teſtimonio de ea, proque ſingulis horum reſpective ſolvet ſummam decem Marcarum; Deinde pro Scuto ſuorum Inſignium, ut & pro illis Armigerorum ſuorum, qui in poſtica parte ſedium eorum reſpective affigentur, proque ſingulis eorum reſpective ſummam viginti marcarum: Si vero quis immunitatem obtinuerit, ut liber ſit ab obſervandis nonnullis particularibus circumſtantiis, vi vetuſtorum rituum, aut horum Statutorum requiſitis ad conferendam Dignitatem Equeſtrem Ordinis de Balneo, quilibet, cui talis diſpenſatio conceditur, pro eadem ſummam quadraginta Marcarum pendet, & pro Vexillo ſuper exedra ejus erigendo quindecim Marcas, itemq; pro Galea, Criſta, Gladio & Scuti tegumento.

NINETEENTHLY, Whereas by the Statutes of the moſt Noble Order of the *Garter*, It is ordained, That none ſhall be Elected, and Choſen to be Fellow, and Companion thereof, Except that he be a Knight without Reproach: We do hereby declare, and ordain, for the great

DECIMONONO. Quum in Statutis Nobiliſſimi Ordinis Periſceldis ordinatum ſit, quod nemo eligendus & nominandus ſit ejus Socius & Membrum, niſi ſit Eques absque cenſura; Nos hiſce declaramus & ordinamus, quod, ex Magno Amore, Favore & Fidu-

great Love, Favour, and Confidence, we bear towards the Knights of the moſt Honourable Order of the *Bath*, That from henceforth a ſpecial Regard ſhall be had, in preferring, advancing, and preſenting them, to be Companions of the moſt Noble Order of the *Garter*.

fiducia, quibus Equites Honoratiſſim Ordinis de Balneo complectimur, ipſi dehinc ſpeciatim reſpiciendi ſint, qui præferantur, promoveantur, & ad Societatem Nobiliſſimi *Ordinis Periſcelidis* præſententur.

TWENTIETHLY, That whenever any Companion of this moſt Honourable Order ſhall be Elected into the moſt Noble Order of the *Garter*; It ſhall be entirely in the Power of ſuch Companion to Reſign this Order by an Inſtrument under his Hand, to be entered in the Regiſter of this Order; or if he ſhall deſign to retain this Order, He ſhall make the previous Proteſtations, uſual in Caſes of the Acceptance of another Order.

VIGESIMO: Quandocunque Socius aliquis hujus Honoratiſſimi Ordinis eligetur Membrum Nobiliſſimi Ordinis Periſcelidis, plenam tunc poteſtatem talis Socius habebit, hunc Ordinem inſtrumento propria manu ſubſcripto reſignandi, quod in Regiſtrum hujus Ordinis inferetur; Vel, ſi animus ipſi erit, hunc Ordinem retinendi, prævias proteſtationes, uſitatas in Acceptione alius Ordinis, edet.

LASTLY, We hereby command, and enjoin, that theſe Statutes, and every Article thereof, ſhall for ever be inviolably obſerved within our ſaid Order; Reſerving to our ſelves the Power of adding, and of explaining any Particular therein; Which Additions and Explanations under our Sign Manual ſhall be taken, as Part, and Parcel of theſe our Statutes. *Given under the Seal of Our ſaid Order the Day and Year above written.*

ULTIMO: Hiſce mandamus & injungimus, ut hæc Statuta omnisq; eorum Articulus in poſterum ſemper intra Noſtrum dictum Ordinem inviolabiliter obſerventur; Reſervantes Nobis Poteſtatem addendi, explicandiq; quascunque eorum circumſtantias particulares, quæ Additiones & Explanationes ſub Signo Noſtro Manuali accipientur ut Pars & Portio horum Statutorum Noſtrorum. *Datum & obſignatum Sigillo dicti Noſtri Ordinis, die & anno ſupra memoratis.*

GEORGE R.

GEORGE by the Grace of God, King of *Great-Britain*, *France*, and *Ireland*, Defender of the Faith, &c. and Sovereign of the moſt honourable Order of the *Bath*, To all, to whom theſe Preſents ſhall come, Greeting. Whereas we are reſolved to advance the Honour, and Splendour of the moſt honourable Order of the *Bath*; We by Virtue of our Royal Prerogative, and in Conſequence of the Power reſerved to us in the Statutes, do hereby ordain, and enjoin, That the following Articles and Explanations are, and ſhall be always deemed to be Part and Parcel of the Statutes to be perpetually obſerved.

FIRST, It is our Royal Pleaſure, and we hereby enjoin, That the Maſter of our Jewel-Houſe for the Time being, ſhall upon the Warrant of the Great Maſter of this Order, provide for every Companion, that is, or ſhall be elected into this Order, a Collar of Gold of thirty Ounces Troy Weight, which Collar ſhall be compoſed of ſeveral Imperial Crowns of Gold, tyed or linked with Gold Knots enamelled white repreſenting the white Laces mentioned in the ancient Ceremonials of conferring the Knighthood of the *Bath*; which ſaid Collar having the Badge or Symbol of this Order thereto pendent, the Companions are and ſhall be obliged to wear upon all Feſtivals, Proceſſions, Inſtallations, and other Ceremonies relating to this Order, and alſo in the Preſence of Us, our Heirs, and

GEORGIUS REX.

GEORGIUS Dei Gratia *Magnæ Britanniæ*, *Franciæ* & *Hiberniæ Rex*, Defenſor Fidei &c. & Supremus, Dominus Honoratiſſimi *Ordinis* de *Balneo*, omnibus, quibus Hæcce innotescent, Salutem: Quum conſtituerimus Honorem & Splendorem Honoratiſſimi Ordinis de *Balneo* extollere, Nos, vi Regiæ Noſtræ Prærogativæ, & ex Poteſtate Nobis in Statutis reſervata, hiſce ordinamus & injungimus, ut ſequentes Articuli & Explanationes ſint, ſemperque conſiderentur, ut Pars & Portio Statutorum, atque perpetuo obſerventur.

PRIMO: Regium Noſtrum Beneplacitum eſt, hisque mandamus, ut Noſter tunc temporis Cimeliarcha, literis publicis a Magno Magiſtro hujus Ordinis acceptis, pro omni Socio in hunc Ordinem cooptato aut cooptando procuret Catenam auream, pondere triginta unciarum; quæ Catena ex diverſis Coronis Regiis aureis compoſita erit, connexis & concatenatis nodis aureis albo colore inuſtis, ut repræſententur albæ tæniæ memoratæ in antiquis ceremoniis conferendi dignitatem Equeſtrem de *Balneo*; Quam dictam Catenam cum appendente Memoriali vel Symbolo hujus Ordinis Membra geſtabunt, & ad eam geſtandam obligati erunt, in omnibus Diebus Solemnibus, Proceſſionibus, Conſecrationibus, aliisq; Ceremoniis ad hunc Ordinem pertinentibus, uti & præſentibus Nobis, Heredibus Noſtris

&

and Succeſſors, upon ſuch other Feaſts uſually termed *Collar* Days, when the Knights of our moſt Noble Order of the *Garter* attend Our Royal Perſon, inveſted with their Collars; And that the ſaid Collar may for the future be repreſented upon Pictures, Limnings, Sculptures, and Monuments of theſe Companions; Which Collar ſhall not be alienated for any Cauſe whatever; but the Executors, or Adminiſtrators of every deceaſed Companion, ſhall return the ſame within three Months to te Great Maſter of this Order.

& Succeſſoribus in aliis Diebus Feſtis, communiter diebus Catenariis appellatis, quando Equites Nobiliſſimi Noſtri Ordinis *Periſcelidis* coram Regia Noſtra Perſona Catenis ſuis inſtructi apparent; Præterea dicta Catena in poſterum in Picturis, Tabulis, Sculpturis & Monumentis horum Sociorum repræſentari poterit; Quæ Catena ob nullam omnino cauſam alienabitur, ſed Executores vel Adminiſtratores cujuſcunque Membri fato functi eandem intra ſex Menſium ſpatium Magno hujus Ordinis Magiſtro reddere debent.

SECONDLY, We likewiſe hereby declare it to be our Royal Pleaſure, that the Banner, which ſhall be placed over the Stall of each Companion of this Order, ſhall be two Yards in Length, and one Yard three Quarters in Breadth; fringed about with red and white Silk, and that in the loweſt Margin, the Name and Title of the Companion ſhall be inſcribed with Letres of Gold upon a black Ground; and that the Creſt, Helmet, and Sword, ſhall likewiſe be affixed to the Stall of every Knight, and be removed in like Manner as the Plates, according to the fourteenth Article of the Statutes. And that after the Deaths of the Companions, theſe Banners, Creſts, Helmets, and Swords, (being firſt offered in ſolemn Manner,) ſhall then be hung up about the Pillars, or in ſome other convenient Place, towards the *Weſt* End of the Abdey Church of *Weſtminſter* to remain to Poſterity, for the Memorial of the deceaſed Knights, as a

SECUNDO: Hiſce declaramus ſimiliter Regium Noſtrum Beneplacitum eſſe, ut Vexillum ſuper Exedram ſingulorum Sociorum hujus Ordinis collocandum ſit, longum duabus virgis, (qualis virga tres pedes longa eſt) latum virga una, & tribus quadrantibus, atq; circumcirca rubro alboque ſerico fimbriatum, in extremo autem margine Nomen & Titulus Socii literis aureis areæ nigræ inſcribentur; Et Criſtæ, Galeæ ac Gladii pariter Exedris ſingulorum Equitum affigentur, ſimiliq; modo removebuntur ac Inſignia juxta Articulum Statutorum quartum & decimum. Poſt obitum vero Membrorum hæc Vexilla, Criſtæ, Galeæ & Gladii (ſolemniter prius oblata) circa columnas ſive in alio quodam loco congruo verſus partem *Auſtralem* Eccleſiæ Cathedralis *Weſtmonaſterienſis* ſuſpendendentur, ut ad Poſteros remaneant in memoriam Equitum demortuorum, tamquam publicum Honoris eo-

a publick Teſtimony of their Honour. And we hereby direct, that the Banner of our Roayl Arms, being two Yards and a half long, and two Yards in breadth, ſhall be Embroidered upon Velvet, which with our Creſt, Helmet, and Sword ſhall be hung over our Stall.

rum teſtimonium. Hiſce etiam mandamus, ut Vexillum Regiorum Noſtrorum Inſignium, longum duabus virgis & dimidia, latumque virgis duabus, acu pingatur in ſerico villoſo, quod una cum Noſtra Criſta, Galea & Gladio ſuper Exedram Noſtram erigetur.

THIRDLY, Whereas ſome Perſons may be Elected into this Order, who by Reaſon of their Employments in the Serviee of the Crown, by Sickneſs, or other unforeſean Accidents, may be neceſſarily prevented from attending their Inſtallations in Perſon, within the Time limited; We hereby decree, that ſuch Perſons, having actually received the Honour of Knighthood, and a Diſpenſation for the Non-obſervance of any Rites belonging to the *Bath*, and having alſo obtained Permiſſion under the Seal of the Order, ſhall and may ſubſtitute, and appoint, a Perſon of Honour, being a Knight, to be his Proxy or Deputy, to be inſtalled for him; Which Deputy having the Mantle upon his right Arm, ſhall proceed, from the Door of the Chapterhouſe, unto the Stall of his Principal, and ſhall there be inſtalled in the Manner directed by the Statutes, holding the Mantle on his Arm, and ſhall take the Oath in the Name of the Companion. And ſuch Companion ſhall thereby be as fully inveſted with the ſaid Order, as if he had been inſtalled in Perſon, in the Manner before mentioned in the Eighth Article.

TERTIO: Quum Perſonæ tales in hunc Ordinem cooptari poſſint, quæ officiorum ſuorum ratione ad Miniſterium Regni ſuſceptorum, propter valetudinem adverſam, aliorumve improviſorum caſuum ergo, neceſſario impedientur, quo minus in propria perſona intra tempus limitatum initientur; Nos hiſce decernimus, quod Perſonæ tales, Honore Dignitatis Equeſtris revera accepto, ut & immunitate pro Non-obſervandis nonnullis ritibus, ad Dignitatem Equeſtrem de Balneo pertinentibus, obtenta, ac permiſſione ſub Sigillo Ordinis accepta, ſubſtituere ac deſignare debeant & poſſint Virum Honoratum, Equitem, qui ejus ſit Procurator vel Deputatus, ejus loco inveſtiendus; Qui Procurator pallium dextro ſuo brachio injiciens a porta Conclavis Capituli ad Exedram Principalis ſui procedet, ibiq; modo a Statutis injuncto inveſtietur, & pallium in brachio ſuo tenens juramentum nomine Socii præſtabit; Talisque Socius hac ratione pariter plene hoc Ordine initiabitur, ac ſi in propria Perſona, modo ſupra Articulo decimo octavo memorato, inauguratus eſſet.

FOURTLY,

QUARTO:

FOURTHLY, We hereby ordain, and enjoin, that over and above the Fees determined by theſe our Statutes, every Perſon elected, or to be elected into this moſt Honourable Order, ſhall alſo regularly pay all ſuch other Fees, as have been ſettled by Our Royal Predeceſſors by Grants under the Great Seal, upon the Reception of the Knighthood of the *Bath;* And until all Fees are fully and actually diſcharged, no Banner, Helmet, Sword, or Plate of any Companion of this Order ſhall be ſet up, or permitted to remain in the Chapel of King *Henry* the Seventh. *Given under our Sign Manual this firſt Day of* June, *in the Eleventh Year of our Reign.*

QUARTO: Hiſce ordinamus & injungimus, ut quævis Perſona, Honoratiſſimo Ordini aſſociata vel aſſocianda, ultra Emolumenta in his Statutis Noſtris præſcripta, regulariter quoque omnia ejuſmodi Honoraria alia ſolvat, qualia Conceſſionibus ſub magno Sigillo, ad recipiendam Dignitatem Equeſtrem de Balneo, a Regiis Noſtris Prædeceſſoribus ſancita ſunt; Et, donec cunctæ ſummæ integræ ſolutæ ſint, & numeratæ, nullum Vexillum, Galea, Gladius aut Inſigne ullius Socii hujus Ordinis erigetur aut permittetur, ut in Capella Regis HENRICI Septimi remaneat. *Datum ſub Sigillo Noſtro Manuali, primo hoc Die Junii, Anno Regni Noſtri undecimo.*

GEORGE

GEORGE R.

IT is Our Royal Will and Pleaſure, that the Knights Companions of the moſt Honourable Order of the *Bath* appointed, and hereafter to be appointed by Us, our Heirs, and Succeſſors ſhall for their greater Diſtinction, and Honour, upon all Occaſions whatſoever, bear and uſe Supporters to their Arms. And therefore, We by theſe Preſents, direct, and command our *Garter Principal King of Arms* for the Time being, and his Succeſſors in that Office, to grant Supporters to all Companions of our ſaid Order, who are, or ſhall not be Entituled to bear Supporters by Virtue of their Peerages. *Given under our Sign Manual this ſecond Day of* June, *in the Eleventh Year of our Reign.*

GEORGIUS REX.

Arbitrium Noſtrum Regium & Beneplacitum eſt, ut Equites, in Societatem Honoratiſſimi Ordinis de *Balneo* aſſumti, ac deinceps aſſumendi a Nobis, Heredibus Noſtris & Succeſſoribus, majoris diſtinctionis & Honoris cauſa in omni occaſione, cujuſcunque nominis, Telamones gerant, iisque utantur in Inſignibus ſuis. Quapropter Nos hiſce Præſentibus Noſtro tunc temporis Principali *Regi Armorum Ordinis Periſcelidis* injungimus atque mandamus, ut Telamones Inſignium univerſis SociisNoſtri dicti Ordinis largiatur, qui vi Dignitatis Parium Regni Poteſtatem Telamones gerendi arrogare ſibi non poſſunt, aut poterunt. *Datum ſub Signo Noſtro Manuali, hoc ſecundo Die Junii, Anno Regni Noſtri undecimo.*

FINIS.

RERUM PRÆCIPUARUM INDEX,

in qua
Litera P. *Præfationem*, Litera C. *Commentationem*, Litera S. *Statuta*,
numeri vero *Paginas* indicant.

A.

Absentes Candidati Ordinis de Balneo per Procuratores initiari possunt. - - S. 38
Æthelstanus, Rex Anglorum, Ritibus Ordinis de Balneo Equestri Dignitate inauguratus fuit. - - C. 10.
Anstisii (Johannis) Liber de Ordine de Balneo. - - - P. col. 1.
- - Sententia de Origine Ordinis de Balneo refertur & confirmatur. C. 9, 10.
Apparitor Generosus Ordinis de Balneo, ejusque Officium, Habitus, & Jura. - - - C. 67. S. 30, 31.
Armigeri qui? - - - C. 65.
- - Consultores dicti. - - C. 16.
- - Gubernatores & illorum officium. - - - C. 65. S. 9.
- - Juvenes & illorum officium. S. 13. C. 65.
Armigerorum filii natu maximi titulo Armigerorum utuntur. - - S. 26.
Arthuri, Regis Angliæ, Res gestæ veræ & fabulosæ. - - - C. 6, 7.

B.

Bacalarii Equites unde sic dicantur? C. 71.
Balneationis ritus Hispanis quoq; Gallis & Italis in creandis Equitibus usitatus. - - - C. 77. seqq
- - Ejus ratio mystica. - - C. 88.
Baneretti quomodo differant ab aliis Equitibus. - - C. 70.
Baronettorum Ordo a Jacobo I. institutus. - - - - C. 71.
- - Iidem a Gryphio cum Baerettis confunduntur. - - ibid.
BATH, Rex Armorum Ordinis de Balneo. - - C. 66. S. 29.

C.

Cambdeni Sententia de Origine Ordinis de Balneo. - - C. 10.
Canonicorum Templi Westmonasterienſis in creandis Equitibus officia, Habitus & Jura. C. 65. S. 11, 27, 33.
Carolus I. quos Equites de Balneo creaverit. - - - C. 24.
Carolus II. per Procuratores Equites de Balneo creavit, & quos? C. 24.
- - ab ejus obitu usque ad *Divum* Georgium I. nulli Equites de Balneo creati fuerunt, & cur? C. 25.
Cattorum Ordo Militaris. C. 4, 6.
Ceremoniæ Equites de Balneo creandi antiqvæ. - - C. 71.
- - Hispanis, Gallis & Italis quoq; usitatæ. - - - C. 77.
- - Hodie adhibendæ. C. 82. S. 8. & seq.
- - Illarum Rationes Mysticæ. C. 88.
Clypei Equitum de Balneo olim Leunculis insigniti. - - C. 12.
Coqui Regii Primarii officium in creandis Equitibus de Balneo. C. 65. S. 19.
Creatio Equitum per Colaphum & Ensem. - - - C. 5.

D.

Decanus Ordinis de Balneo quis? - - - C. 66. S. 27.
- - ejus Officia. - - - S. 17, 18.
- - ejus Jura. - - - S. 33.

E.

Eduardus I. quando, quot, & quibus ceremoniis Equites de Balneo creaverit. - - - C. 13.
Eduardus II. quos Equites creaverit. C. 14.
Eduardus III. quos Equites creaverit. - - - - ibid.
Eduardus IV. quos Equites creaverit. - - - - C. 18.
Eduardi V. Coronationis tempore qui Equites creari debuerint. - C. 19.
- - Ejus cædes ante coronationem. ibid.
Eduardus VI. quos Equites de Balneo creaverit. - - - C. 21.

Elisabeth

RERUM PRÆCIPUARUM INDEX.

Eliſabetha, Regina Angliæ, quos per Procuratorem ſuum Equites creari juſſerit. - - - C. 22.
Equites Duces, Comites, Baneretti, Bacalarii, quomodo differant? - C. 70.
Eques duorum Ordinum an quis eſſe posſit? - - - - C. 87.
Equitum de Balneo locus vacuus quomodo ſuppleatur? - S. 19. C. 69.
- - Solenne Feſtum. - - S. 19. C. 86.
- - Jura & Honores. - - C. 86. S. 22.
- - Ordo Sedendi in Templo Weſtmonaſterienſi. - - - S. 24.
- - Veſtitus ſumptibus Regiis comparandus. - - - S. 36.
- - Index ac Nomina, Tituli, Inſignia. - - - C. 27. & ſeqq.
- - Inaugurationis Ceremoniæ hodie adhibendæ. S. 8. & ſeqq.
- - Requiſita reſpectu Ætatis, Morum, Generis, Bonorum. - S. 4. C. 67.
- - Officia. - - - C. 85.
- - Jusjurandum antiquum. C. 12,
- - Jusjurandum hodie præſtari ſolitum. - - C. 85. S. 17.

G.

GARTER, Rex Armorum Principalis Ordinis Periſcelidis. - - C. 66.
Gentleman, Anglis quis? S. col.
Genealogiſtæ Ordinis de Balneo Officium, Habitus, inſigne & Jura. - - C. 66. S. 28, 34.
Georgius I. Rex M. Britanniæ Ordinem de Balneo reſtauravit. C. 25.
Germanorum Ritus Juventutem ſuam ætate Virili initiandi. - C. 4.
Gothorum ſimilis Ritus. - C. 5.

H.

Henricus I. Godefredum C. Andegavenſem, Generum ſuum, Equitem de Balneo creavit. - - C. 11.
Henricus IV. non inſtituit Ordinem de Balneo. - - C. 8.
- - Quos Equites creaverit. - C. 15.
Henricus V. ſæpius Equites de Balneo creavit, & quibus Ceremoniis. C. 16, 17.
Henricus VI. Eques de Balneo creatus. - - - C. 17.
- - Ipſe tales Equites creavit. ibid.
- - Privilegium Tonſoribus conceſſum. - - ibid.
Henricus VII. quos Equites de Balneo creaverit. - - C. 19.
Henricus VIII. quos Equites ejusmodi creaverit. - - C. 20.
Heraldorum Collegium a Richardo III. inſtitutum. - - C. 66.

I.

Jacobus I. ſæpius Equites de Balneo creavit. - - - C. 22.
- - Ordo Baronettorum ab illo inſtitutus. - - C. 71.
Immunitas a Ceremoniis Ordinis de Balneo, quibus & quomodo concedatur. - - S. 38.
Ingulfi error. - - C. 11.
Inſignia Equitum de Balneo æri inciſa variis Tabulis. - C. 27. & ſeqq.
- - Exedris illorum affigenda. S. 25, 26.
Jusjurandum Equitum de Balneo antiquum, & hodie uſitatum. C. 12. 81. S. 17.
- - Simile Equitum apud Populos Septentrionales. - - C. 86.

L.

Longobardorum Juventntem ſuam militia initiandi Ritus. - C. 5.
Lord, Anglis quid denotet. P. col. 2.

M.

Magnus Magiſter Ordinis de Balneo Primus. - - C. 26. S. 7.
- - ejus munus, Poteſtas, & Honorarium. - - S. 7, 23.
Mandata, ad Ordinis de Balneo Honores capiendos, duplicis generis. - - C. 69.
Marca, monetæ genus. - - S. 33.
Maria, Regina Angliæ, per Procuratorem Equites de Balneo creavit. C. 21.
- - Ejus Mandatum. - - ibid.
Mendonis (Andreæ) de Origine Ordinis de Balneo ſententia rejecta. C. 9, 10

Milita

RERUM PRÆCIPUARUM INDEX.

Militares Ordines an Religiosi dici possint? - - - C. 26.
Musicorum in Equitibus de Balneo creandis Officium. - - C. 66

N.

Nobilis, quis Anglis. P. col. 2. & C. 23.
Nobilis, monetæ genus. S. 30.

O.

Officiales Ordinis de Balneo, eorumq; Officia, Habitus, Insignia, Stipendia, Privilegia. C. 66. S. 27. seqq. & 30, 31, 32, 33.
- - Qui nunc illi sint? C. 67.
Ordines Militares à Germanis fuerunt orti. - - C. 8.
Ordinis de Balneo Restaurati Diploma. - - S. 3. seqq.
- - Sigillum. - - S. 5.
- - Supremus Dominus quis? S. 3.
- - Origo a Regibus Angliæ Saxonicis arcessita. - - C. 9, 10.
- Progressus sub Regibus Plantagenetis. - - C. 12. seqq.
- Sub Regibus Lancastricis. C. 15. seq.
- Sub Regibus Eboracensibus. C. 17.
- Sub Regibus Tudorensibus. C. 19.
- Sub Regibus Stuarticis. C. 22.
- - Regularis Forma. - C. 25.
- - Statuta ejus. - ibid.
- - Nomen Fraternitatis. - ibid.
- - Equites, qui nunc illum constituant. - - C. 27. seqq.
- - Eques perpetuo esse debet Princeps Regius. - - C. 26. S. 6.
Ordinis Equestris apud Romanos quæ ratio fuerit. - - C. 3.
Ordinum Militarium Præstantia ibid.
- - Origo varia. - - ibid.

P.

Periscelidis Ordinem qui descripserint. - - - C. 8.
Pœna Equitum de Balneo, qui vocati ad Capitulum, non comparent. - - S. 26, 27.
Præbendarii Templi Westmonasteriensis. Vide *Canonici.*
Princeps aliquis Regius perpetuo Ordinis de Balneo Eques esse debet. S. 3.

R.

Reges Armorum qui sint, & cur ita dicantur? - - C. 66
Regis Armorum Ordinis de Balneo Nomen, Officium, Habitus, Insigne, Stipendium. - S. 30. & 34.
Registrator Ordinis de Balneo, ejusque Officium, Habitus &c. C. 67.
Rex Armorum Principalis. C. 66.
Richardus II. quibus Ceremoniis Equites de Balneo creaverit. C. 14. 15.
Richardus III. Solium Regium invadit. - - C. 19.
- - Quos Equites de Balneo creaverit. - - ibid.

S.

Saxonum Veterum Societas Militaris C. 5.
Secretarius Ordinis de Balneo ejusque Officium, Habitus, Insigne C. 67. S. 30
- - Ejus Stipendium. - S. 34.
Seldeni de Origine Ordinis de Balneo Sententia. - - C. 10.
- - Opera a Reverendissimo Viro, Davide Wilkins, edita. - C. 70.
Servos per Vindictam manumittendi ratio. - - C. 4.
Sigillum Ordinis de Balneo. S. Dipl. V.
Symbolum Ordinis de Balneo. S. 12.
- - Quomodo gestetur? S. 23.

T.

Tabulæ Rotundæ Ordo ab aliis assertus, ab aliis rejectus. - C. 6, 7.
- - Quid occasionem illi dederit. ibid.
Tabellarius sive Nuncius Ordinis de Balneo ejusque Officium & stipendium. - - C. 67. S. 32. 34.
Tænia alba serica in Humero Equitum de Balneo Sinistro. - - C. 76.
- - a Virgine tollenda quid denotet? - - - C. 88.

Tela-

Telamones, quid ſint? C. 86. S. 40.
Theatri Europæi error. - C. 25.
Tonſoris in creandis Equitibus de Balneo Officium - C. 65. S. 10.
- - Privilegium Antiquum C. ibid.
Torques Equitum de Balneo S. 36
- - Quomodo geſtetur ibid.
- - Non debet alienari. ibid.
- - Defuncto Equite, reddi debet Magno Magiſtro. - S. 37.
Tutela M. Britanniæ Regum in Vaſallos Pupillos & Minores C. 68, 69.

V.

Vexilla Equitum de Balneo, eorumque Forma - - S. 37.
- - Supra Exedras illorum ſuſpendenda - - ibid.
- - Defunctis Equitibus alio loco in Templo Weſtmonaſterienſi cuſtodienda - - ibid.
Vexilli Regii Forma - S. 38.
Vexillorum Uſus maxime ſemper honorificus fuit - C. 70.

W.

Wilhelmus II., Rex Angliæ, Eques de Balneo creatus. - - C. 11.

Emendanda & Monenda.

I. Menda Typographica ſic corrigas.

In Commentatione pag. 15. lin. 6. *eum* leg. *cum* pag. 17. lin. 2. *novo* leg. *nono* lin. 7. *Barbitonſor* leg. *tonſor* pag. 24. lin. 2. *tamtum* leg. *tantum* pag. 26. lin. 8. *pretarea* leg. *preterea.* pag. 58. initio col. 2. leg. *THOMAS WATSON WENTWORTH.* pag. 66. lin. 3. *Rigiam* leg. *Regiam.* pag. 67. Not. (q) lege *Art.* XVIII. pag. 69. lin. 4. *cauſſa* leg. *cauſa* lin. 17. poſt vocem *ſignificari*, adde *debet.* pag. 71. lin. 14. *peculiari* leg. *peculiare.*

In Statutorum Contextu Anglico pag. 7. lin. 9. *conſtitudet* leg. *conſtituted.* pag. 12. lin. 35. *Growns* lege *Crowns* pag. 13. lin. 11. *Miniſtrels* leg. *Minſtrels.* pag. 14. lin. 24. *ang hon* leg. *hang on.* pag. 15. lin. 8. *te* leg. *the.* pag. 15. lin. 32. *Knght* leg. *Knight.* pag. 19. lin. 8. *the* leg. *by the.* pag. 22. lin. 29. *andand.* leg. *and.* pag. 23. in f. *dilivered* leg. *delivred.* pag. 25. in f. *withe* leg. *with.* pag. 31. lin. 26. *tbis* leg. *this.*

In Statutorum Verſione Latina pag. V. Diplomatis Reſtaurati Ord. lin. 29. poſt v. *Ordinis* adde *Militaris.* In ipſis vero Statutis pag. 5. lin. 30. *paret* leg. *parte* p. 6. lin. 37. *vana* leg. *nulla.* pag. 7. lin. 12. *autiqui* leg. *antiqui.* pag. 8. lin. 1. *injungimur* leg. *injungimus.* lin. 19. *Statuorum,* leg. *Statutorum.* pag. 17. lin. 1. *tutam* leg. *tutum.* pag. 19. lin. 5. *Sicut* leg. *Sic.*

II. Qui velit, in Verſione Statutorum pasſim legat loco Literæ Patentes, *Diplomata*; loco Principes ex Sanguine Regio prognati, *Principes Regii*; loco Abſolutus Dominus, *Supremus Dominus*; loco Tabellarius Ordinis, *Nuncius Ordinis*; loco Tunica ampla, *Paludamentum*; loco Scutum inuſtum, *encauſtice pictum.*

III. Librorum Compactores monentur, Tabulas Inſignium juxta numerorum minorum, quibus in ſuperiori parte notatæ ſunt, Ordinem Indici Equitum inde a pag. 26. usque ad pag. 65. inſerendas eſſe.

* * * * * * * * *

Die Buchbinder werden erinnert daß die Wappen-Tafeln denen Bogen D. E. F. G. & H. nach Ordnung der kleinern Zahlen womit ſelbige oben bezeichnet ſeyn, von pag. 26. bis 65. müſſen eingebunden werden.

SCHEMA.

SCHEMA

Splendidi Operis, quod in Anglia paratur, atque INAUGURATIONIS Equitum Honoratisſimi Ordinis de BALNEO, Londini 17. Junii, 1725. celebratæ PROCESSIONES & CEREMONIAS, Figuris æri inciſis, repræſentabit, eorum gratia, qui, ad illius Solemnitatis Magnificentiam penitius cognoſcendam, ejus operis exempla ſibi comparare velint, Anglice & Latine huc adpoſitum.

PROPOSALS

FOR ENGRAVING and PRINTING by SUBSRIPTION Twenty Large Prints, on Imperial Paper, Repreſenting the *PROCESSION* and *CEREMONIES* obſerv'd at the Time of the INSTALLATION of the KNIGHTS COMPANIONS of the MOST HONOURABLE MILITARY ORDER of the BATH:

Upon Thursday, June 17. 1725. with the Arms, Names, Titles, &c. of the *Knights-Companions*, and of their *Esquires*.

As they are fix'd up in HENRY VIIth's Chapel *in Weſtminſter-Abbey*.

BY JOHN PINE

The Plates to be diſpoſ'd in following Manner.

I. And II. The Habits, Enſigns, Banners, Collars, Caps &c. at large.

III. A Geometrical Plan of the Chapel, Shewing the ſituation of each *Knight's* Stall.

IV. A View of King Henry VIIth's Chapel, in Which to be repreſented PRINCE WILLIAM offering his Sword to the DEAN: The *KNIGHTS* ſtanding under their Banners.

V. The Drums of His Majeſty's Houshold, the Drum-Major attending; the Kettle-Drum; His Majeſty's Trumpets, the Serjeant-Trumpeter attending.

VI. Twelve Alms Men of the Curch of *Weſtminſter*.

VII. VIII. IX. X. XI. XII. The *MESSENGER* of the *ORDER*, and the *ESQUIRES* of the Knights Companions, with their Arms, Names, Titles, &c.

XIII. The *PREBENDARIES* of the Curch of *Weſtminſter*.

XIV. The

PROPOSITIONES

Per Subſcriptiones Sculpendi & Imprimendi Viginti Tabulas in Charta Regia,

Repræſentantes Proceſſionem & Ceremonias INAUGURATIONIS EQUITUM Honoratisſimi Militaris.

ORDINIS de BALNEO, die Jovis, 17. Junii, 1725. factæ, una cum Inſignibus, Nominibus, Titulis &c. EQUITUM & ipſorum ARMIGERORUM.

Quemadmodum affixa ſunt in *HENRICI VII.* Sacello Abbatiæ Weſtmonaſterienſis.

PER JOHN PINE

Tabulæ diſponentur hac ratione.

I. & II. Habitus, Inſignia, Vexilla, Torques, Galeri &c.

III. Ichnographia Sacelli *HENRICI VII.* delineans Situm Exedræ cujusque Equitis.

IV. Conſpectus Sacelli *HENRICI VII*, quo repræſentabitur PRINCEPS WILHELMUS, gladium ſuum Decano offerens, reliquis Equitibus ſub Vexillis ſuis ſtantibus.

V. Chalco- & Argyro-Tympaniſtæ, ut & Buccinatores Regii ſub Præfectis illorum.

VI. Duodecim Alumni Templi Weſtmonaſterienſis.

VII. VIII. IX. X. XI. XII. *NUNCIUS* Ordinis, & *ARMIGERI* Equitum una cum Inſignibus, Nominibus & Titulis illorum.

XIII. Præbendarii Templi Weſtmonaſterienſis.

XIV. Pro-

PROPOSALS	PROPOSITIONES

XIV. The *PURSUIVANTS* of Arms, *HERALDS*, with the *PROVINCIAL KINGS* of *ARMS*.

XV. XVI. XVII. The Knights Companions with their Arms, Names, Titles, &c.

XVIII. Edmund Sawyer, *Esq.* Gentleman-Usher. *EDWARD MONTAGUE Esq.* Secretary of the *ORDER*. *EDWARD YOUNGE*, *Esq.* Register of the Order. *GREY LONGUEVILLE, Esq.* Bath, King of Arms. *JOHN ANSTIS, jun.* Genealogist of the Order. *JOHN ANSTIS Esq.* Garter Principal King of Arms. The Right Reverend the Lord Bishop of *ROCHESTER*, Dean of Westminster, and DEAN of the ORDER.

The GREAT MASTER.

Sir *ANDREW FOUNTAINE*, Proxy for

PRINCE WILLIAM.

XIX. The *KNIGHTS* at Dinner with the *ESQUIRES* attending.

XX. A plan of the Table with the Course of the whole Entertainment.

To which will be prefixed an ACCOUNT, in English *and* French, of the *PROCESSION* and *CEREMONIES*.

By GREY LONGUEVILLE, Esq. BATH King of Arms.

The Portraits of the GREAT MASTER, KNIGHTS COMPANIONS and the Principal Officers to be Engraved from Original Paintings, after the Life.

The Prints are so contrived, that they may be cither bound up with the ACCOUNT, or Framed.

The ACCOUNT will be Printed with a LARGE SETT of TYPES, adorned with proper Head and Tail-Pieces, and Initial letters engraved upon Copper-Plates.

The Price to Subscribers will be *Four Guineas*; one Half to be paid on subscribing, the other on the Delivery of a *Compleat Sett in Sheets*, which will be finish'd all speed, the work being in great Forwardness.

XIV. Prosecutores Armorum, Heraldi cum Regibus Armorum Provincialibus.

XV. XVI. XVII. EQUITES cum Insignibus, Nominibus, Titulis &c.

XVIII. *EDMUND SAWYER, Armig.* Generosus Apparitor. *EDWARD MONTAGUE, Armig.* Secretarius Ordinis. *EDWARD YOUNGE, Armig.* Registrator Ordinis. *GREY LONGUEVILLE, Armig.* Rex Armorum Ordinis. *JOHN ANSTIS, Junior*, Genealogista Ordinis. *JOHN ANSTIS, Armig.* Rex Armorum Principalis. Reverendissimus Dominus Episcopus *ROFFENSIS*, Decanus Westmonasterienſis & *DECANUS ORDINIS*.

MAGNUS MAGISTER.

ANDREAS FOUNTAINE Eq. Aur. Procurator

PRINCIPIS WILHELMI.

XIX. Equites ad Prandium, Armigeris adstantibus.

XX. Figura Mensæ cum Apparatu totius Convivii.

His præmissa est Lingua Anglica & Gallica *EXPOSITIO PROCESSIONIS & CEREMONIARUM.*

Per *GREY LONGUEVILLE, Armig.* Regem Armorum Ordinis de Balneo.

Effigies MAGNI MAGISTRI, Equitum & Principalium Officialium sculpentur juxta Authenticas Effigies illorum.

Figuræ ita disponentur, ut possint compingi vel aliter disponi, cum vel sine Expositione.

Expositio Typis magnis imprimetur, adornata Figuris Initialibus & finalibus, ut & Literis Initialibus, æri incisis.

Pretium Subscribentium erit *Quatuor Guinearum*, ejusque dimidium juxta Subscriptionem solvetur, alterum quando opus consummatum tradetur, quod omni studio maturabitur, & multum jam promotum est.

PROPOSALS

XIV. The *PURSUIVANTS* of Arms, *HERALDS*, with the *PROVINCIAL KINGS* of *ARMS*.

XV. XVI. XVII. The Knights Companions with their Arms, Names, Titles, &c.

XVIII. Edmund Sawyer, *Esq.* Gentleman-Usher. *EDWARD MONTAGUE Esq.* Secretary of the *ORDER*. *EDWARD YOUNGE, Esq.* Register of the Order. *GREY LONGUEVILLE, Esq.* Bath, King of Arms. *JOHN ANSTIS, jun.* Genealogist of the Order. *JOHN ANSTIS Esq.* Garter Principal King of Arms. The Right Reverend the Lord Bishop of *ROCHESTER*, Dean of Westminster, and DEAN of the ORDER.

The GREAT MASTER.

Sir *ANDREW FOUNTAINE*, Proxy for

PRINCE WILLIAM.

XIX. The *KNIGHTS* at Dinner with the *ESQUIRES* attending.

XX. A plan of the Table with the Course of the whole Entertainment.

To which will be prefixed an ACCOUNT, in English *and* French, of the *PROCESSION* and *CEREMONIES*.

By GREY LONGUEVILLE, Esq. BATH King of Arms.

The Portraits of the GREAT MASTER, KNIGHTS COMPANIONS and the Principal Officers to be Engraved from Original Paintings, after the Life.

The Prints are so contrived, that they may be cither bound up with the ACCOUNT, or Framed.

The ACCOUNT will be Printed with a LARGE SETT of TYPES, adorned with proper Head and Tail-Pieces, and Initial letters engraved upon Copper-Plates.

The Price to Subscribers will be *Four Guineas*; one Half to be paid on subscribing, the other on the Delivery of a *Compleat Sett in Sheets*, which will be finish'd all speed, the work being in great Forwardness.

PROPOSITIONES

XIV. Prosecutores Armorum, Heraldi cum Regibus Armorum Provincialibus.

XV. XVI. XVII. EQUITES cum Insignibus, Nominibus, Titulis &c.

XVIII. *EDMUND SAWYER, Armig.* Generosus Apparitor. *EDWARD MONTAGUE, Armig.* Secretarius Ordinis. *EDWARD YOUNGE, Armig.* Registrator Ordinis. *GREY LONGUEVILLE, Armig.* Rex Armorum Ordinis. *JOHN ANSTIS, Junior*, Genealogista Ordinis. *JOHN ANSTIS, Armig.* Rex Armorum Principalis. Reverendissimus Dominus Episcopus *ROFFENSIS*, Decanus Westmonasterienſis & *DECANUS ORDINIS*.

MAGNUS MAGISTER.

ANDREAS FOUNTAINE Eq. Aur. Procurator

PRINCIPIS WILHELMI.

XIX. Equites ad Prandium, Armigeris adstantibus.

XX. Figura Mensæ cum Apparatu totius Convivii.

His præmissa est Lingua Anglica & Gallica *EXPOSITIO PROCESSIONIS & CEREMONIARUM.*

Per *GREY LONGUEVILLE, Armig.* Regem Armorum Ordinis de Balneo.

Effigies MAGNI MAGISTRI, Equitum & Principalium Officialium sculpentur juxta Authenticas Effigies illorum.

Figuræ ita disponentur, ut possint compingi vel aliter disponi, cum vel sine Expositione.

Expositio Typis magnis imprimetur, adornata Figuris Initialibus & finalibus, ut & Literis Initialibus, æri incisis.

Pretium Subscribentium erit *Quatuor Guinearum*, ejusque dimidium juxta Subscriptionem solvetur, alterum quando opus consummatum tradetur, quod omni studio maturabitur, & multum jam promotum est.

BSB Bayerische StaatsBibliothek
MDZ Münchener DigitalisierungsZentrum Digitale Bibliothek

Dithmar, Justus Christoph

Commentatio de honoratissimo ordine militari de Balneo cuius origo, progressus, restauratio, regularis forma, summaque dignitas exponuntur, ut et honoratissimorum equitum, variis illorum indici adpositis tabulis, nomina, tituli, et insignia, aeri incisa, exhibentur ; accedunt statuta,

Francofurtum ad Viadrum 1729

Res/2 Herald. 15
urn:nbn:de:bvb:12-bsb10868109-5
VD18 14440520-001